Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer User's Guide

www.dell.com | support.dell.com

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Contents

Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer User's Guide 1
Before Beginning 25

A Notes, Notices, and Cautions 27

1 Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer User's Guide 29

2 Finding Information 31

3 Product Features 35

4 About the Printer 39

Front and Rear View 40
Front View 40
Rear View 41

Space Requirements 41

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) 42

Operator Panel 43

Securing the Printer 43

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ordering Supplies 43

Setting up the Printer (Printer Setup) 47

5 Preparing Printer Hardware 49

Removing Tape 49

Removing the Print Head Device (PHD) Ribbons 50

Installing the Toner Cartridges. 50

6 Installing Optional Accessories 53

Installing the Optional Memory Module 53

Printing System Settings Report 56

Updating Your Driver to Detect Memory Module 58

Installing the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder 59

Printing System Settings Report 61

Updating Your Driver to Detect 250-Sheet Feeder 63

Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter 64

Verifying the Contents of the Box 65

Installing the Wireless Adapter Using Video Instructions (Recommended) 65

Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter 66

Printing System Settings Report 67

Determining the Wireless Network Settings . . . 68

Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter 69

Using Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter 70

Using Advanced Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter 72

Constructing a New Wireless Network Environment for Your Computer 79

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Connecting Your Printer 91

Connecting Printer to Computer or Network 92
Direct Connection 92
Network Connection 94

Connecting the Telephone Line 94

Turning on the Printer 97

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel 97

8 Setting the IP Address 103

Assigning an IP Address 103
When Using the Easy Setup Navigator 103
When Using the Operator Panel 104
When Using the Tool Box 105

Verifying the IP Settings 106
Verifying the Settings Using System Settings Report 106
Verifying the Settings Using Ping Command . . 107

9 Loading Paper 109

10 Installing Printer Drivers on the Windows Computers 113

Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status 113
When Using the Operator Panel 113
When Using the Tool Box 113
Disabling Firewall Before Installing Printer Software 114

Inserting the Drivers and Utility CD 114

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Direct Connection Setup 115

Network Connection Setup 118
Network Printer Setup on a Local Network . . . 118
Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network . . 124

Setting Up for Shared Printing 131
Point and Print 133
Peer-to-Peer 136

11 Installing Printer Drivers on the Macintosh Computers 141

Installing the Drivers and Software 141
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5 or 10.6 . . . 142
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11 143
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.3.9 145
Configuring Settings 146

12 Installing Printer Drivers on the Linux Computers (CUPS) 147

Operation on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 WS/5 Client 147
Setup Overview 147
Installing the Printer Driver 147
Setting Up the Queue 148
Setting the Default Queue 149
Specifying the Printing Options 149
Uninstalling the Printer Driver 149

Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 . . 150
Setup Overview 150
Installing the Printer Driver 150

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting Up the Queue 151
Setting the Default Queue 152
Specifying the Printing Options 152
Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator 153
Uninstalling the Printer Driver 153

Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 . . 154
Setup Overview 154
Installing the Printer Driver 154
Setting Up the Queue 154
Setting the Default Queue 156
Specifying the Printing Options 156
Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator 157
Uninstalling the Printer Driver 157

Using Your Printer 159

13 Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool . 161

Overview 161
When Using the Operator Panel 162
When Using the Tool Box 162

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool 163
Printer Status 163
Printer Jobs 163
Printer Settings 164
Print Server Settings 164
Copy Printer Settings 164
Print Volume 164
Address Book 164
Printer Information 164
Tray Settings 164

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E-Mail Alert 165
Set Password 165
Online Help 165
Order Supplies at: 165
Contact Dell Support at: 165

Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool0 . 165
Setting Up From Web Browser 165
Setting Up From Operator Panel 168

Page Display Format 168
Top Frame 168
Left Frame 170
Right Frame 171

Changing the Settings of the Menu Items 172
Details of the Menu Items 173
Printer Status 176
Printer Jobs 178
Printer Settings 179
Print Server Settings 215
Copy Printer Settings 245
Print Volume 245
Address Book 248
Tray Settings 259

14 Print Media Guidelines 261

Paper 261
Paper Characteristics 261
Recommended Paper 262
Unacceptable Paper 263
Selecting Paper 263
Selecting Pre-Printed Media and Letterheads . . 264

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting Pre-Punched Paper 264
Printing on a Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper) 265

Envelopes. 267

Labels. 268

Storing Print Media 269

Identifying Print Media and Specifications 270
Supported Paper Sizes 270
Supported Paper Types 271
Paper Type Specifications 271

15 Loading Print Media 273

Capacity 273

Print Media Dimensions 273

Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder 273
Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder 276
Loading Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper) 278

Loading Print Media in the SSF 280
Loading an Envelope in the SSF 281
Using the SSF 283

Linking Trays 284

16 Operator Panel 285

Using the Operator Panel Buttons 285

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing a Panel Settings Page 287
When Using the Operator Panel 287
When Using the Tool Box 287
Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing 289

17 Printing 291

Tips for Successful Printing 291
Tips on Storing Print Media 291
Avoiding Paper Jams 291

Sending a Job to Print 292

Canceling a Print Job 292
Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel 292
Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows 293

Duplex Printing 293
Duplex Printing With Duplexer (Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer Only) 294
Duplex Printing Without Duplexer (Dell 2155cn Multifunction Color Printer Only) 294
Using Booklet Print (Dell 2155cn and 2155cdn Models) 296

Using the Stored Print Function 297
Secure Print 298
Private MailBox Print 298
Public MailBox Print 298
Proof Print 298
Storing Print Jobs 299
Printing the Stored Jobs 299
Specifying Your Password on the Operator Panel (Secure Print/Private MailBox Print) 299
Deleting Stored Jobs 300

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing from USB Memory 300
Supported File Formats 301
PDF Port Direct Printing 301
Printing a Report Page 302
Printing System Settings Report 302
Printing Font Sample List 303
Printer Settings 304
Printing System Settings Report 304
Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings 305
Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change the Printer Settings 306
Resetting Defaults 308
Adjusting the Language 309

18 Copying 311

Loading Paper for Copying 311
Selecting Paper Tray 311
Preparing a Document 311
Making Copies From the Document Glass 312
Making Copies From the ADF 313
Setting Copy Options 314
Number of Copies 315
Color 316
Select Tray 316
SSF Paper Size 317
SSF Paper Type 318
Collated 319
Reduce/Enlarge 320

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Document Size 322
Original Type 323
Lighter/Darker 323
Sharpness 324
Color Saturation 325
Auto Exposure 326
2 Sided 326
Multiple-Up 328
Margin Top/Bottom 329
Margin Left/Right 330
Margin Middle 331

Changing the Default Settings 331

Setting the Power Saver Timer Option 332

19 Scanning 335

Scanning Overview 335
Scanning - With scanner driver 335
Scanning - Without scanner driver 336

Scanning From the Operator Panel 337

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver 339

Scan Setting Tool 342
IP Address Settings 343
Password Setting 345

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver 346

Scanning to Network 348
Overview 349
Procedures 350
Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only) 350

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only) 352
Setting a Destination Using an Address Book . . 359
Sending the Scanned File on the Network 368

Scanning to a USB Memory 368
Types of a USB Memory 369
Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image . 369
Inserting and Removing a USB Memory 370

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image 370
Setting an E-Mail Alert 370
Registering a New User 371
Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File 372

20 Faxing 375

Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Easy Setup Navigator 375

Setting Your Country 376

Setting the Printer ID 376

Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters 377
Keypad Letters and Numbers 378
Changing Numbers or Names 379
Inserting a Pause 379

Setting the Time and Date 379

Changing the Clock Mode 380

Setting Sounds 380
Speaker Volume 380
Ringer Volume 381

Specifying the Fax Settings Options 381

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the Fax Settings Options 381
Available Fax Settings Options 382
Advanced Fax Settings 386

Sending a Fax 389
Loading an Original Document 389
Adjusting the Document Resolution 391
Adjusting the Document Contrast 392
Sending a Fax Automatically 393
Sending a Fax Manually 394
Confirming Transmissions 395
Automatic Redialing 395

Sending a Delayed Fax 395

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax) 396
Example 397

Receiving a Fax 404
About Receiving Modes 404
Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes 404
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode 404
Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode 404
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone/Fax or Ans Machine/Fax 405
Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone 405
Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD 406
Receiving Faxes in the Memory 406
Polling Receive 407

Automatic Dialing 407
Speed Dialing 407
Setting Speed Dial 407
Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial 408
Group Dialing 409

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting Group Dial 409
Editing Group Dial 410
Sending a Fax Using Group Dial (Multi-address Transmission) 411
Printing a Speed Dial List 412

Phone Book 412

Other Ways to Fax 413
Using the Secure Receiving Mode 413
Using an Answering Machine 415
Using a Computer Modem 416

Printing a Report 416
Speed Dial 417
Address Book 417
Server Address 417
Fax Activity 417
Fax Pending 417
Print Meter 417

Changing Setting Options 418

Know Your Printer 419

21 Understanding the Tool Box Menus . . 421

Printer Settings Report. 421
Printer Information 421
Menu Settings 422
Reports 426
TCP/IP Settings 427
Defaults Settings 427
Fax Settings 431

Printer Maintenance. 433

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System Settings 433
Date & Time 439
Paper Density 440
Color Registration Adjustment 440
Adjust Altitude 442
Reset Defaults 442
Non-Dell Toner 443
Initialize Print Meter 443
Tray Settings 443
TCP/IP Settings 446
Network Settings 447
Copy Defaults 447
Scan Defaults 453
Fax Defaults 456
Print from USB Defaults 458
Fax Settings 460

Diagnosis 463
Chart Print 463
Machine Check 464
Paper Wrinkle Check Mode 465
Environment Sensor Info 466
Clean Developer 467
Refresh Mode 467

Resetting Defaults 467
When Using the Tool Box 467

22 Understanding the Printer Menus . . . 469

Report / List 469
System Settings 469
Panel Settings 469
PCL Fonts List 469

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PCL Macro List 469
PDF Fonts List 470
Job History 470
Error History 470
Print Meter 470
Color Test Page 470
Protocol Monitor 470
Speed Dial 470
Address Book 470
Server Address 471
Fax Activity 471
Fax Pending 471
Stored Documents 471

Admin Menu 471
Phone Book 471
Print Language 472
Network 482
Fax Settings 490
System Settings 501
Maintenance 513
Secure Settings 519
USB Settings 521

Defaults Settings 522
Copy Defaults 522
Scan Defaults 524
Fax Defaults 525
Print from USB Defaults 526

Tray Settings 526

Panel Language 530

Print Menu 530

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Secure Print 530
Private Mail Box 531
Public Mail Box 532
Proof Print 533
Secure Receive 534

Copy Menu 534
Select Tray 534
SSF Paper Size 535
SSF Paper Type 536
Collated 537
Reduce/Enlarge 537
Document Size 538
Original Type 539
Lighter/Darker 539
Sharpness 540
Color Saturation 540
Auto Exposure 540
2Sided 540
Multiple-Up 541
Margin Top/Bottom 541
Margin Left/Right 541
Margin Middle 542

Scan Menu 542
Scan to USB Memory 542
Scan to E-Mail 542
Scan to Network 543
Scan to Application 543
File Format 544
Color Mode 544
Resolution 544
Document Size 545
Lighter/Darker 546

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sharpness 546
Contrast 546
Auto Exposure 547
Margin Top/Bottom 547
Margin Left/Right 547
Margin Middle 547

Fax Menu 548
Fax to 548
Resolution 548
Lighter/Darker 549
OnHook 549
Delayed Start 549
Polling Receive 550
Fax Cover Page 550

Print from USB Menu 550
Document 550
Select Tray 551
SSF Paper Size 551
SSF Paper Type 552
2Sided 552
Layout 553
PDF Password 553

Panel Lock 553
Enabling the Panel Lock 553
Disabling the Panel Lock 554

Resetting Defaults 555
When Using the Operator Panel 555

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

23 Understanding Your Printer Software . 557

Printer Settings Utility 559
Status Window 560
Tool Box 560
Updater 560
Troubleshooting 560
Address Book Editor 560
ScanButton Manager 560
Dell ScanCenter 560

Address Books 561
Types of Address Books 561
Adding and Editing Entries to the Address Books 562

Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh 565
Status Monitor Widget Feature 566
Before Installing the Status Monitor Widget . . . 566
Installing the Status Monitor Widget 566
Opening and Closing the Status Monitor Widget 567
Printer Status Window 568
Order Window 569
Preferences 570

Status Monitor Console for Linux 571
Status Monitor Console Feature 572
Before Installing the Status Monitor Console . . 572
Installing the Status Monitor Console 572
Starting the Status Monitor Console 573
Printer Selection Window 573
Printer Status Window 574
Dell Supplies Management System Window . . . 575
Service Tag Window 577
Settings Window 577

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

24 Understanding Fonts 581

Typefaces and Fonts 581

Weight and Style 581

Pitch and Point Size 582

Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts 583

Resident Fonts 585

Symbol Sets 586

Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6 586

25 Understanding Printer Messages 589

26 Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD) 601

Adding Roles of Printer Services 601

Printer Setup 602

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard 602

27 Specifications 605

Operating System Compatibility 605

Power Supply 605

Dimensions 605

Memory 605

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface 606

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MIB Compatibility 606

Environment 606
Operation 606
Print Quality Guarantee 606
Storage 607
Altitude 607

Cables 607

Copier Specifications 608

Scanner Specifications 609

Facsimile Specifications 609

Maintaining Your Printer 611

28 Maintaining Your Printer 613

Determining the Status of Supplies 613

Conserving Supplies 613

Ordering Supplies 614

Storing Print Media 614

Storing Consumables 615

Replacing the Toner Cartridges 615
Removing the Toner Cartridge 616
Installing a Toner Cartridge 617

Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit 619
Removing the PHD Unit 619
Installing a PHD Unit 622

Replacing the Retard Roller 627

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Retard Roller in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray 628
Installing a Retard Roller in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray 629
Cleaning Inside the Printer 631
Cleaning the Feed Roller 631
Cleaning the CTD Sensor 637
Cleaning the Scanner 640
Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller 642
Adjusting Color Registration 643
Printing the Color Registration Chart 643
Determining Values 644
Entering Values 646
29 Removing Options 649
Removing the Optional Memory Module 649
Removing the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder 652
Removing the Optional Wireless Adapter 654
30 Clearing Jams 659
Avoiding Jams 659
Identifying the Location of Paper Jams 660
Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF 661
Clearing Paper Jams From the SSF 664
Clearing Paper Jams From the Standard 250-Sheet Tray 668

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Clearing Paper Jams From the Fuser 672

Clearing Paper Jams From the Duplexer 676

Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder 677

Troubleshooting 683

31 Troubleshooting Guide 685

Basic Printer Problems 685

Display Problems 685

Printing Problems 686

Print Quality Problems 688

The output is too light 689

Toner smears or print comes off 692

Random spots/Blurred images 693

The entire output is blank 694

Streaks appear on the output 696

Part or the entire output is black 697

Pitched color dots 698

Vertical blanks 699

Ghosting 701

Light-induced fatigue 702

Fog 703

Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) 704

Jagged characters 705

Banding 706

Auger mark 706

Wrinkled/Stained paper 707

Damage on the leading edge of paper 709

Jam/Alignment Problems 710

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The top and side margins are incorrect 710
Color registration is out of alignment 710
Images are skewed 712
Standard 250-Sheet Tray Misfeed Jam 712
SSF Misfeed Jam 714
Optional 250-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam 716
Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM) 717
Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM) 717
Standard 250-Sheet Tray/Optional 250-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam 718
SSF Multi-feed Jam 718

Noise 719

Copy Problem 720

Fax Problems 720

Scanning Problems 723

Problems With Installed Optional Accessories 727

Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems 728

Other Problems 730

Contacting Service 732

Appendix 737

B Appendix 739

Dell™ Technical Support Policy 739
Online Services 739

Warranty and Return Policy. 740
Recycling Information 740

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Contacting Dell 740

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before Beginning

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notes, Notices, and Cautions

NOTE: A **NOTE** indicates important information that helps you make better use of your printer.

NOTICE: A **NOTICE** indicates either potential damage to hardware or loss of data and tells you how to avoid the problem.

CAUTION: A **CAUTION** indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2010 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction of these materials in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of Dell Inc. is strictly forbidden.

Trademarks used in this text: *Dell*, the *DELL* logo are trademarks of Dell Inc.; *Microsoft*, *Windows*, *Windows Server*, *Windows Vista, and Active Directory* are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries; *Adobe* and *Photoshop* are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries; *Wi-Fi* is a registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance; *Red Hat* and *Red Hat Enterprise Linux* are registered trademarks of Red Hat. Inc. in the U.S. and other countries; *SUSE* is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc., in the United States and other countries.

XML Paper Specification (XPS): This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369; *DES*: This product includes software developed by Eric Young (eay@mincom.oz.au); *AES*: Copyright (c) 2003, Dr Brian Gladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved. This product uses published AES software provided by Dr Brian Gladman under BSD licensing terms; *TIFF (libtiff)*: Copyright (c) 1988-1997 Sam Leffler and Copyright (c) 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.; *ICC Profile (Little cms)*: Copyright (c) 1998-2004 Marti Maria.

Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

The printer software uses some of the codes defined by the Independent JPEG Group.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As for RSA BSAFE

RSA BSAFE software, produced by RSA Security Inc., has been installed on this printer.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS

This software and documentation are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and in applicable FAR provisions: Dell Inc., One Dell Way, Round Rock, Texas, 78682, USA.

September 2010 Rev. A01

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1

Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer User's Guide

Click the links to the left for information on the features, options, and operation of your printer. For information on other documentation included with your printer, see "Finding Information."

To order replacement toner cartridges or supplies from Dell:

NOTE: For Macintosh, start the Status Monitor Widget, and then select **Order Supplies** button to open **Order** window.

1 Double-click the icon on your desktop.

If you cannot find the icon on your desktop, follow the procedure below.

a Click **DLRMM.EXE** under `x:\abc\Dell Printers\Additional Color Laser Software\Reorder`, where `x:\abc` is the location where the printer software is installed.

b Click **File** on the toolbar, and click **Create Shortcut** on the drop-down menu.

c Right-click the shortcut icon.

d Choose **Send To** from the drop-down menu, and then click **Desktop (create shortcut)** on the submenu.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

You can also launch the Dell Supplies Management System by clicking **Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Additional Color Laser Software → Dell Supplies Management System**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** link (**www.dell.com/supplies**), or order Dell printer supplies by phone.

To ensure that you get the best service, have your Dell printer Service Tag ready.

For information regarding locating your Service Tag number, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

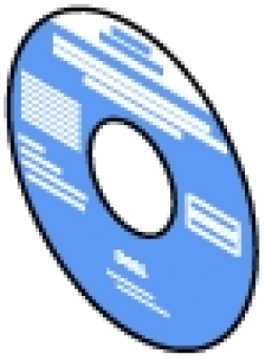
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2

Finding Information

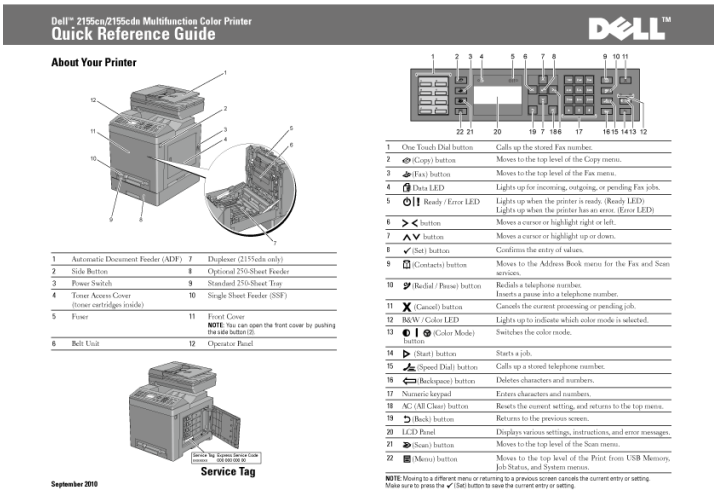
NOTE: The following are the optional accessories that you can buy separately.

- Additional memory (512 MB)
- 250-sheet feeder
- Wireless adapter
- USB cable
- Ethernet cable

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Drivers for my printer • My *User's Guide*	*Drivers and Utilities* CD  The *Drivers and Utilities* CD contains setup video, documentation, and drivers for your printer. You can use the CD to install drivers or access your setup video and documentation. Readme files may be included on your CD to provide last-minute updates about technical changes to your printer or advanced technical reference material for experienced users or technicians.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• How to use my printer	*Quick Reference Guide*



Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer
Quick Reference Guide

About Your Printer

1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	7	Duplexer (2155cdn only)
2	Side Button	8	Optional 250-Sheet Feeder
3	Power Switch	9	Standard 250-Sheet Tray
4	Toner Access Cover (toner cartridges inside)	10	Single Sheet Feeder (SSF)
5	Fuser	11	Front Cover NOTE: You can open the front cover by pushing the side button (2).
6	Belt Unit	12	Operator Panel

Service Tag

September 2010

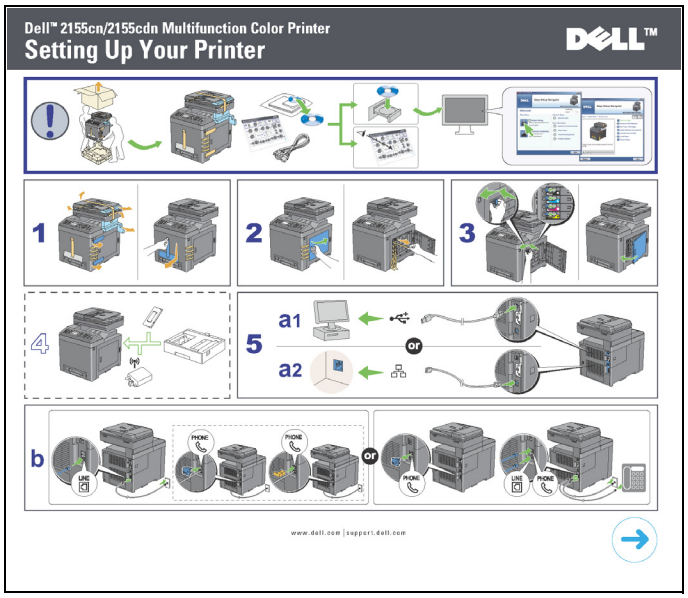
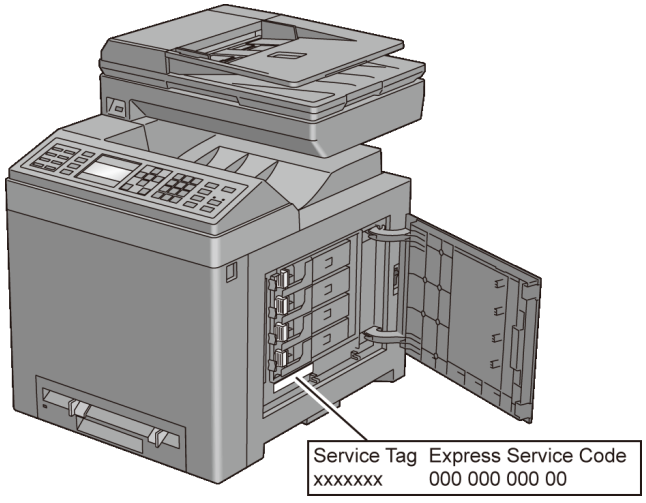
1	One Touch Dial button	Calls up the stored Fax number.
2	(Copy) button	Moves to the top level of the Copy menu.
3	(Fax) button	Moves to the top level of the Fax menu.
4	Data LED	Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending Fax jobs.
5	Ready / Error LED	Lights up when the printer is ready. (Ready LED) Lights up when the printer has an error. (Error LED)
6	button	Moves a cursor or highlight right or left.
7	button	Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.
8	(Set) button	Confirms the entry of values.
9	(Contacts) button	Moves to the Address Book menu for the Fax and Scan services.
10	(Redial / Pause) button	Redials a telephone number. Inserts a pause into a telephone number.
11	(Cancel) button	Cancels the current processing or pending job.
12	B&W / Color LED	Lights up to indicate which color mode is selected.
13	(Color Mode) button	Switches the color mode.
14	(Start) button	Starts a job.
15	(Speed Dial) button	Calls up a stored telephone number.
16	(Backspace) button	Deletes characters and numbers.
17	Numeric keypad	Enters characters and numbers.
18	AC (All Clear) button	Resets the current setting, and returns to the top menu.
19	(Back) button	Returns to the previous screen.
20	LCD Panel	Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
21	(Scan) button	Moves to the top level of the Scan menu.
22	(Menu) button	Moves to the top level of the Print from USB Memory, Job Status, and System menus.

NOTE: Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the (Set) button to save the current entry or setting.

• Safety information • Warranty information	*Product Information Guide*

CAUTION: Read and follow all safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide* prior to setting up and operating your printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• How to set up my printer	*Setup diagram* 
• Express Service Code and Service Tag	 The Express Service Code and Service Tag are located inside the toner access cover of your printer.
• Latest drivers for my printer • Documentation for my printer	Go to **support.dell.com**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Answers to technical service and support questions	**support.dell.com** provides several online tools, including: • Solutions — Troubleshooting hints and tips, articles from technicians, and online courses • Upgrades — Upgrade information for components, such as the printer drivers • Customer Care — Contact information, order status, warranty, and repair information • Downloads — Drivers • Manuals— Printer documentation and product specifications Go to **support.dell.com**. Select your region, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

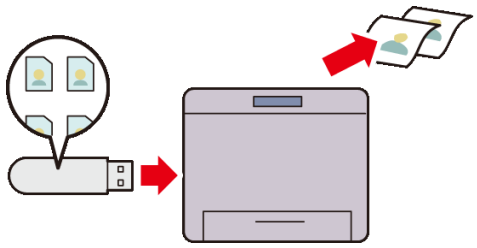
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3

Product Features

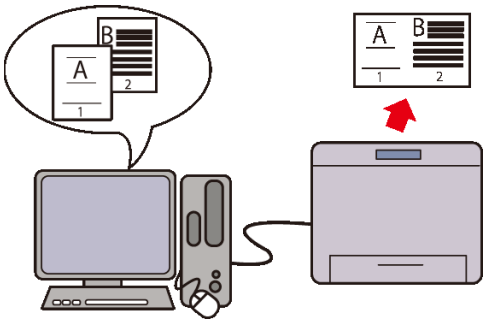
This chapter describes the product features and indicates their links.

Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)



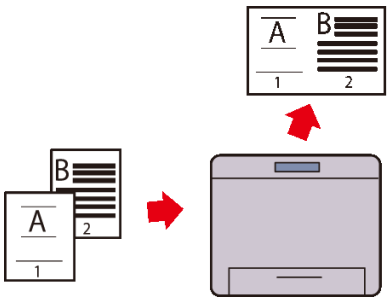
The Print from USB Memory feature enables you to print files directly from a USB memory without requiring you to start your computer and an application.

Multiple Up in the Layout tab (N-up Print)



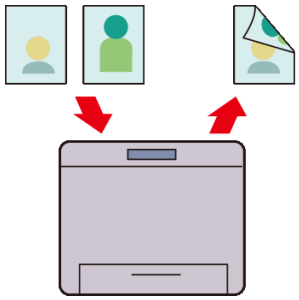
The Multiple Up feature enables you to print documents as reduced-size documents containing 2, 4, 8, 16, or 32 pages on a single sheet of paper by setting from the printer driver. This feature helps save paper.

Multiple-Up (2-in-1 Copy)



You can copy documents as reduced-size two-page documents on one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting `Multiple-Up` on the operator panel. This feature helps save paper.

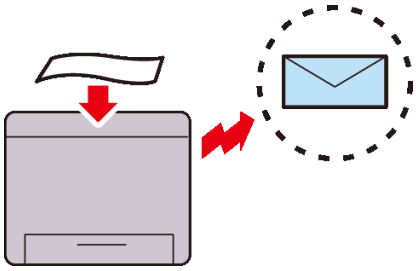
2 Sided (Duplex Copy)



You can copy documents on both sides of a sheet of paper by selecting `2Sided` on the operator panel when you make a copy. This feature helps save paper.

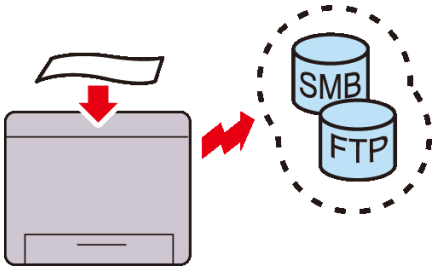
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (Scan to E-mail)



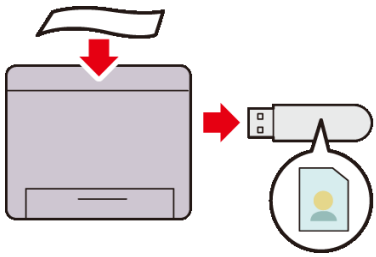
When you want to send scanned data by e-mail, use the Scan to E-mail feature. You can directly send the data scanned as an e-mail attachment. You can choose destination e-mail addresses from the address book on the printer or server. Or, you can enter the address from the printer's operator panel using the numeric keypad.

Scanning to Network (Scan to SMB/FTP)



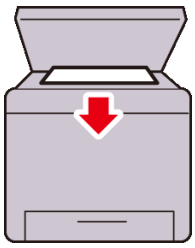
You can transfer data scanned to a PC or a server via SMB or FTP without service software. Although prior registration of the destination FTP server or PC on the address book is required, it helps save your time.

Scanning to a USB Memory (Scan to USB Memory)



With the Scan to USB Memory feature, you don't need a PC to connect a USB memory. You can specify the USB memory inserted into the printer's port as a data saving location when you scan data.

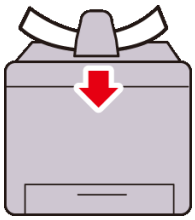
Making Copies From the Document Glass (Scan From Document Glass)



You can scan the pages of a book or a brochure from the document glass. When you scan documents using the document glass, place them facing down.

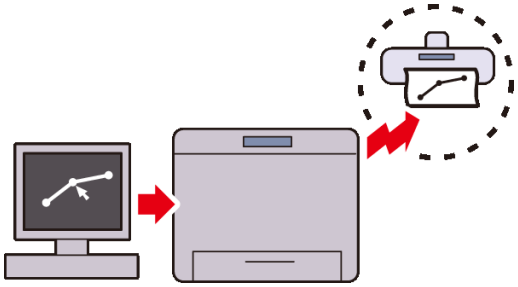
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Making Copies From the ADF (Scan From ADF)



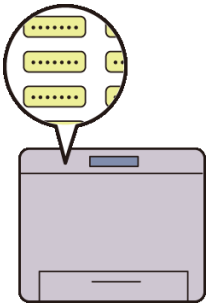
You can scan pieces of unbound paper using the ADF. When you scan documents using the ADF, load them facing up.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax) (Direct Fax from PC)



You can directly send faxes from your PC using the fax driver. You can specify the fax settings like the normal fax. Also, you can specify the recipient's fax number from the numeric keypad, or the address book or phone book.

Address Books (Address Book)



Address Book simplifies the recipient specification. You can use the address book on the printer as well as on the server. Select the desired address or fax number from the address book when using the **Scan to E-mail** or **Scan to SMB/FTP** feature, or sending faxes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4

About the Printer

This chapter provides an overview of your Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

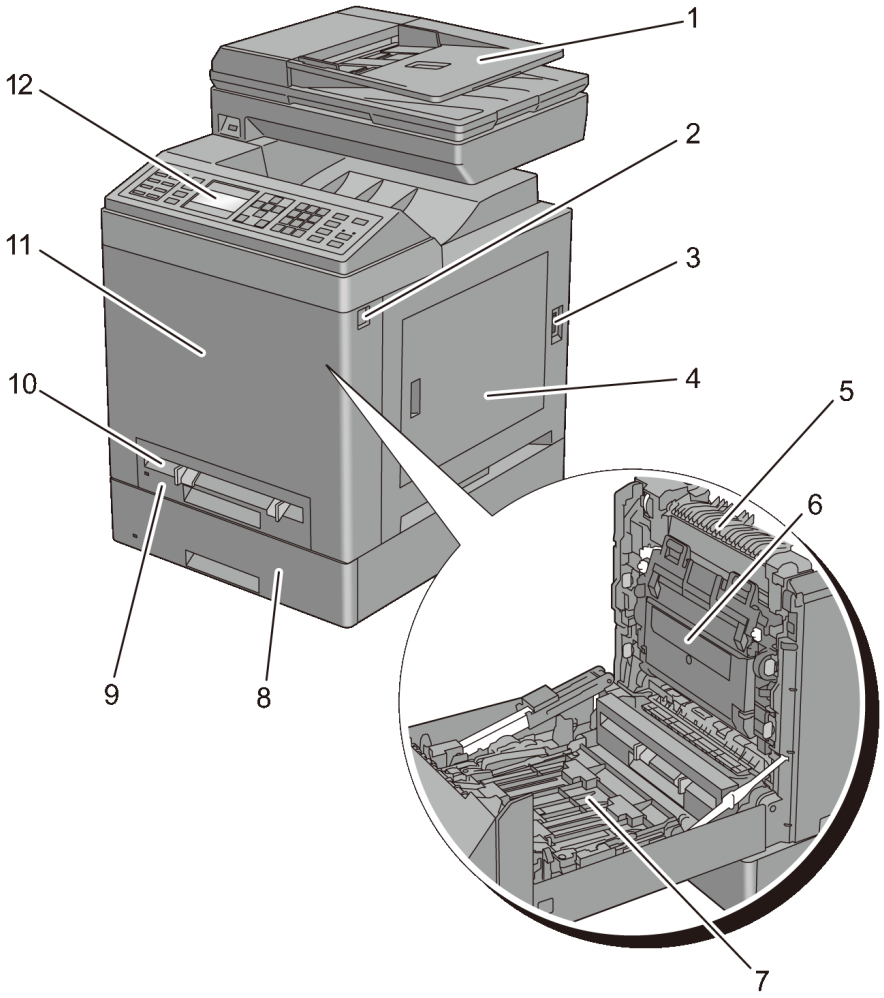
NOTE: In this manual, Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer is referred to as the "printer".

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front and Rear View

Front View



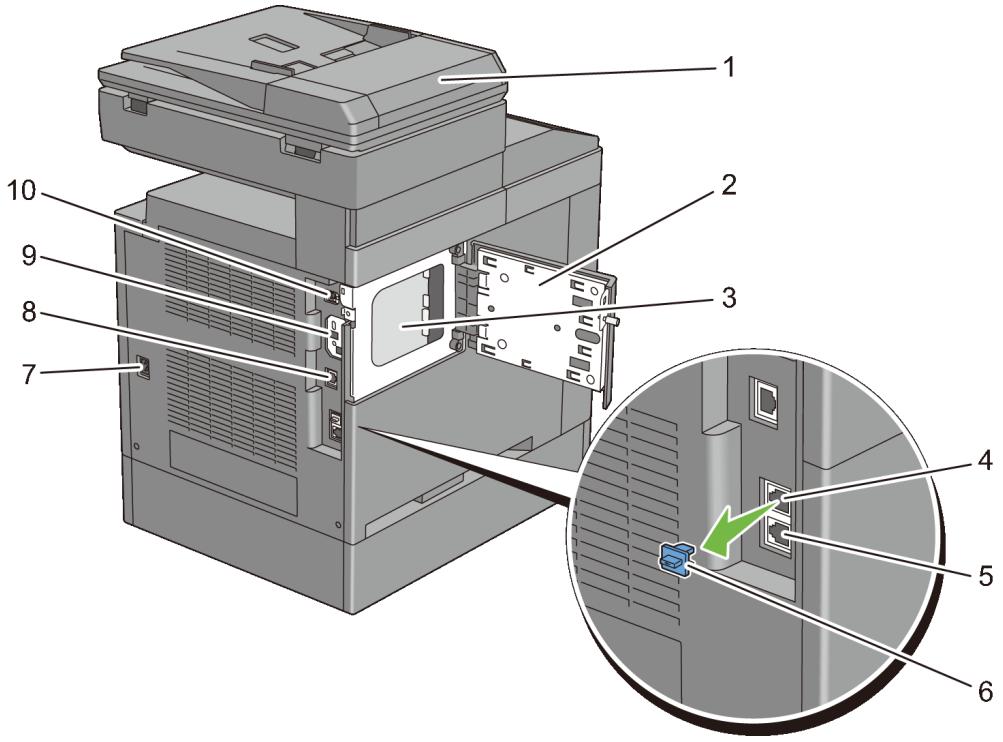
1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	7	Duplexer (2155cdn only)
2	Side Button	8	Optional 250-Sheet Feeder
3	Power Switch	9	Standard 250-Sheet Tray
4	Toner Access Cover (toner cartridges inside)	10	Single Sheet Feeder (SSF)
5	Fuser	11	Front Cover NOTE: You can open the front cover by pushing the side button (2).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6	Belt Unit	12	Operator Panel

NOTICE: To avoid irregular screen image or malfunctioning of your printer, avoid placing the printer in direct sunlight with the single sheet feeder opened.

Rear View

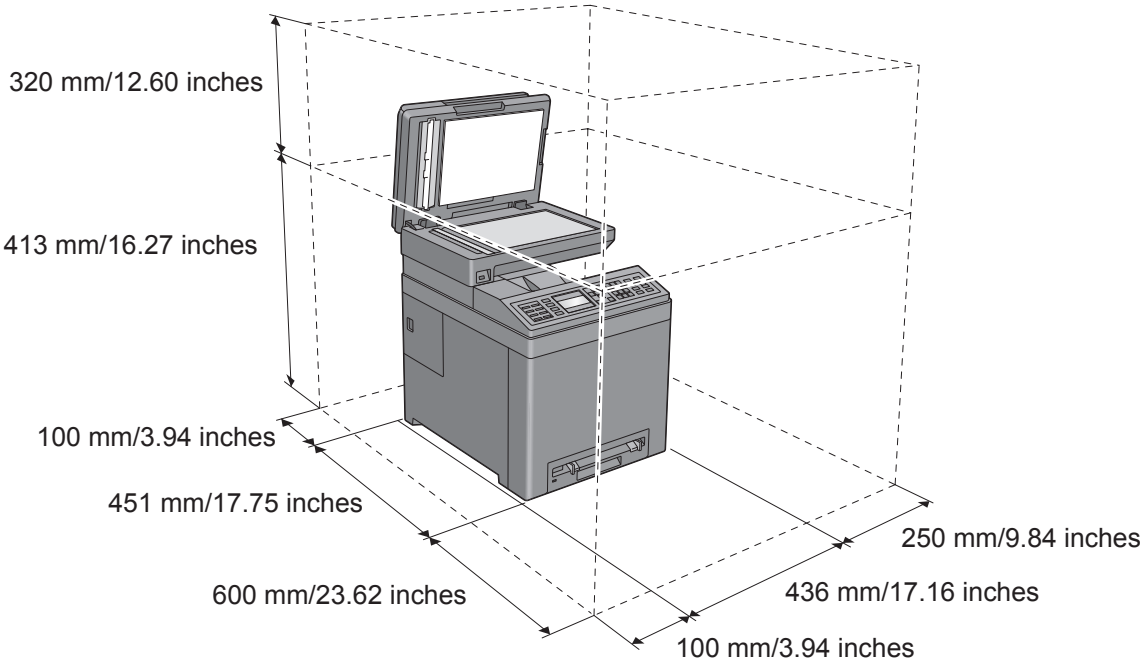


1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	6	"Blue" Plug
2	Control Board Cover	7	Power Connector
3	Control Board	8	Ethernet Port
4	Phone Connector	9	Wireless Adapter Socket
5	Wall Jack Connector	10	USB Port

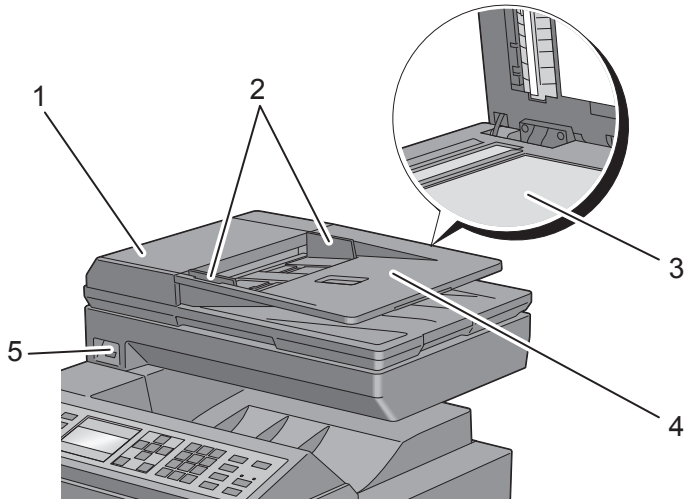
Space Requirements

Provide enough room to open the printer trays, covers, and optional accessories, and for proper ventilation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



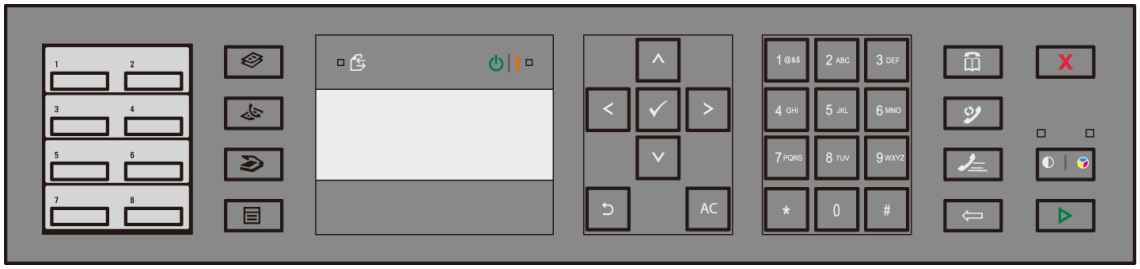
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)



1	ADF Cover
2	Document Guides
3	Document Glass
4	Document Feeder Tray
5	Front USB Port

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operator Panel

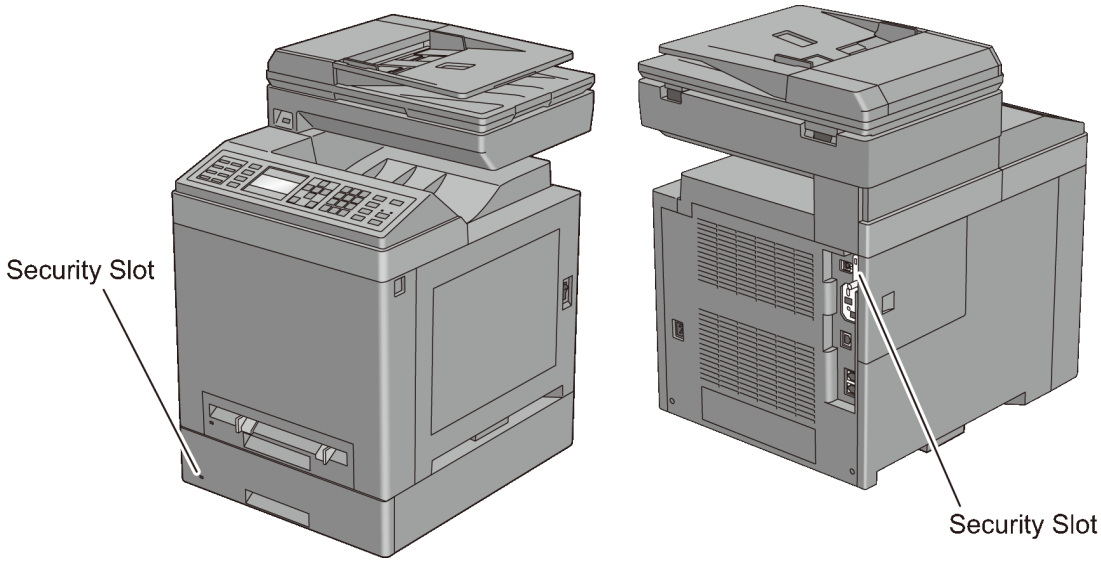


For more information on the operator panel, see "Using the Operator Panel Buttons."

Securing the Printer

To protect your printer from theft, you can use the optional Kensington lock.

Attach the Kensington lock to the security slot on your printer.



For details, see the operating instructions supplied with the Kensington lock.

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell online when using a networked printer. Enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, and click the web address under **Order Supplies at:** to order toner or supplies for your printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can also order replacement toner cartridges or supplies from Dell:

NOTE: For Macintosh, start the Status Monitor Widget, and then select **Order Supplies** button to open **Order** window.

1 Double-click the icon on your desktop.

If you cannot find the icon on your desktop:

a Click **DLRMM.EXE** under `x:\abc\Dell Printers\Additional Color Laser Software\Reorder`, where `x:\abc` is the location where the printer software is installed.

b Click **File** on the toolbar, and then **Create Shortcut** on the drop-down menu.

c Right-click on the shortcut icon.

d Choose **Send To** from the drop-down menu, and then click **Desktop (create shortcut)** on the submenu.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

You can also launch the Dell Supplies Management System by clicking **Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Additional Color Laser Software → Dell Supplies Management System**.

2 Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** link (**www.dell.com/supplies**), or order Dell printer supplies by phone.

To ensure that you get the best service, have your Dell printer's Service Tag ready.

For information regarding locating your Service Tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting up the Printer (Printer Setup)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

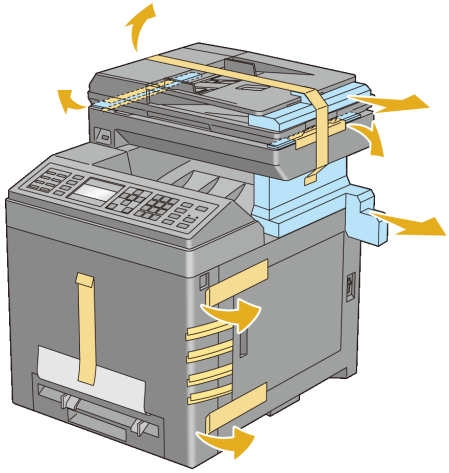
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5

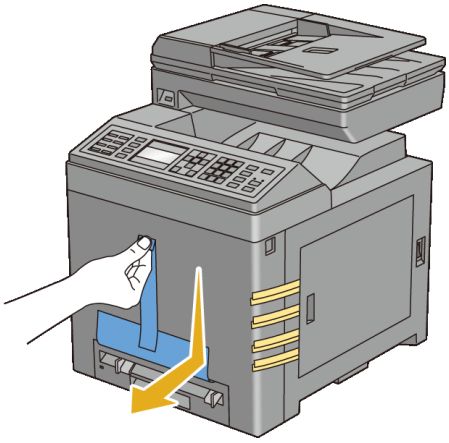
Preparing Printer Hardware

Removing Tape

1 Remove tapes and packaging material from the printer.



2 Pull the protective sheet out of the printer.

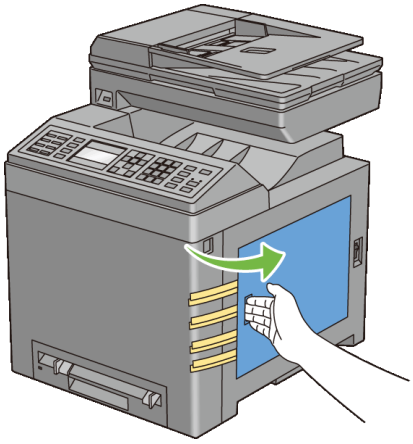


CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide*.

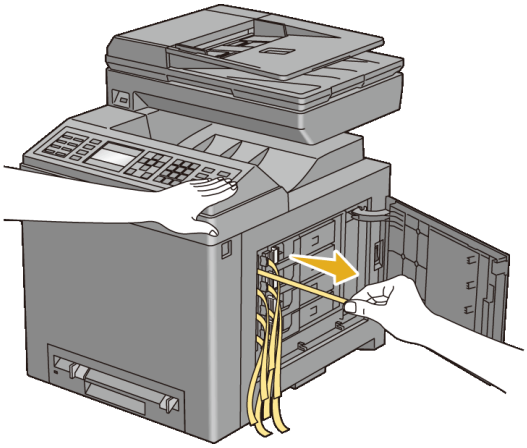
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Print Head Device (PHD) Ribbons

1 Open the toner access cover.



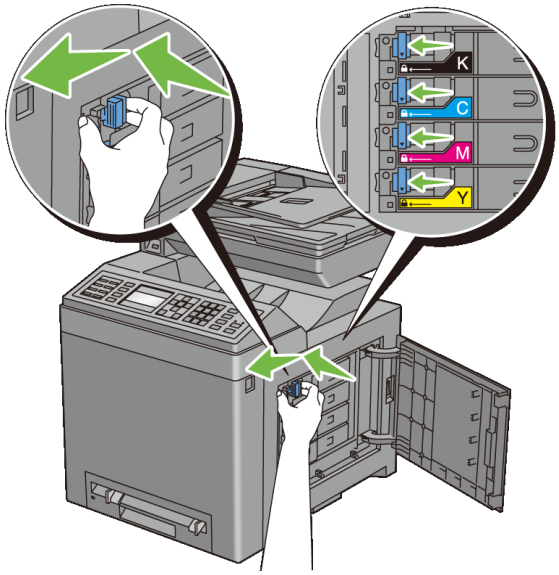
2 Completely pull out the eight yellow ribbons.



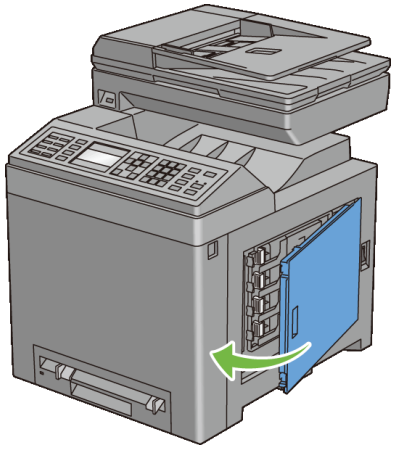
Installing the Toner Cartridges

1 Press and slide the blue latches of the four toner cartridges to the locked position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2 Close the toner access cover.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6

Installing Optional Accessories

You can make the printer more functional by installing the optional accessories. This chapter describes how to install the printer's options such as the memory module and optional 250-sheet feeder.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

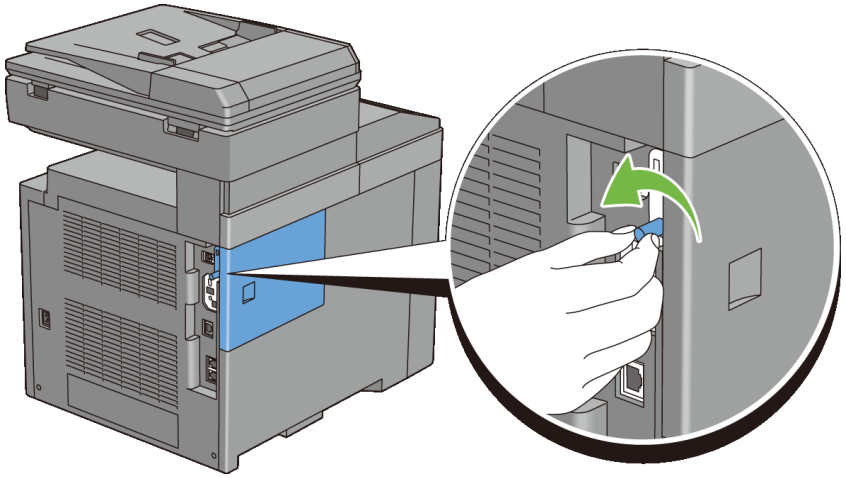
Installing the Optional Memory Module

NOTE: Your printer supports additional 512 MB memory module.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

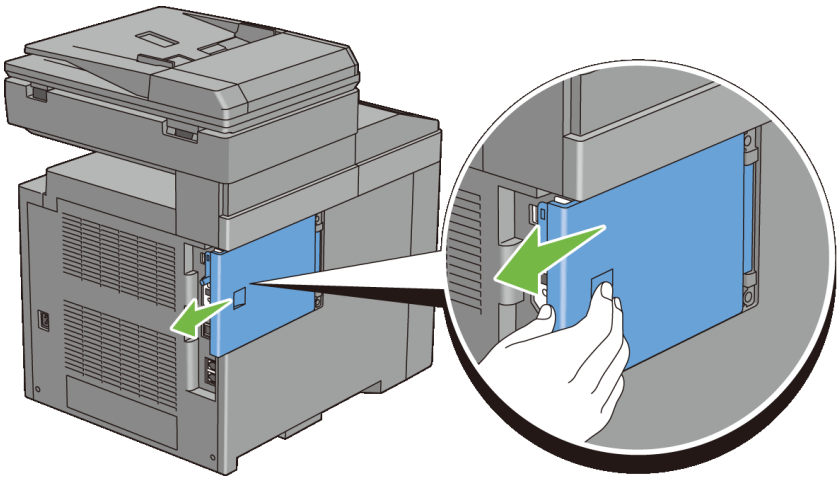
2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

NOTE: Loosen the screw. You do not need to remove the screw.

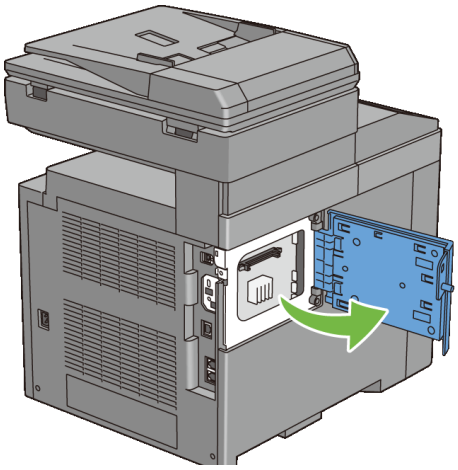


3 Slide the control board cover towards the back of the printer.

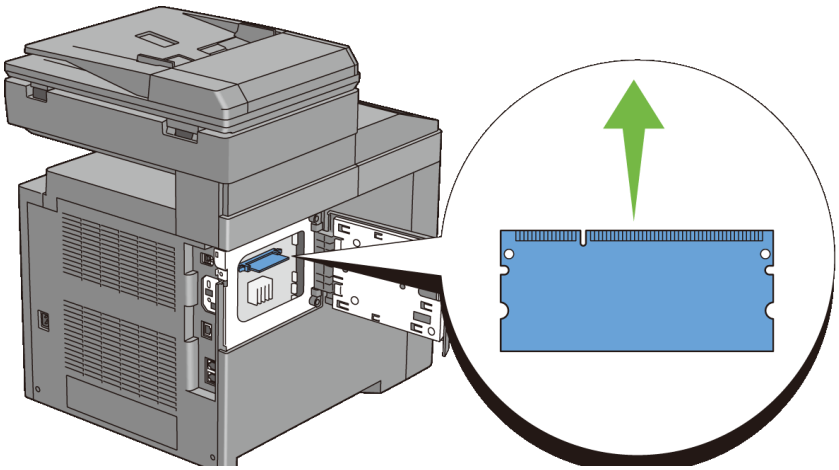
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4 Open the control board cover completely.

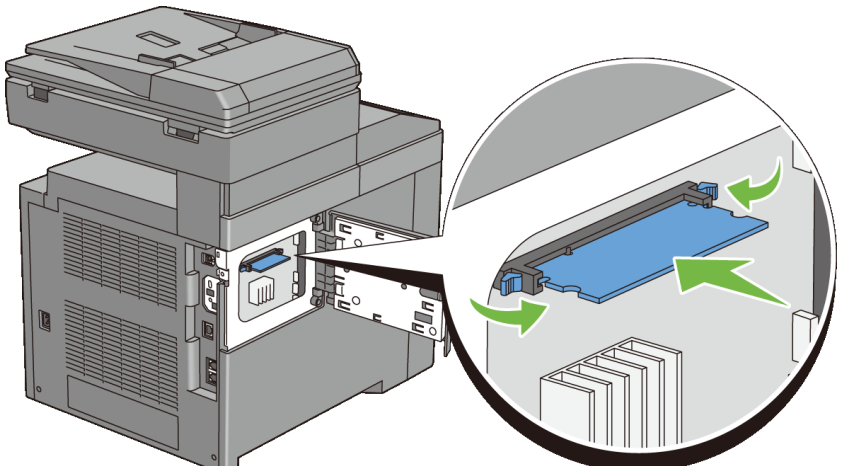


5 Align the connector of the memory module with the slot and insert the memory module into the slot.



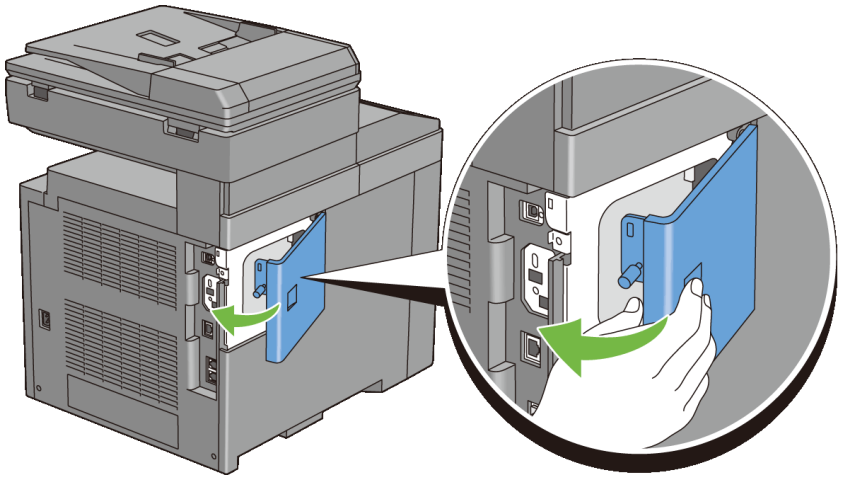
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6 Push the memory module firmly into the slot.

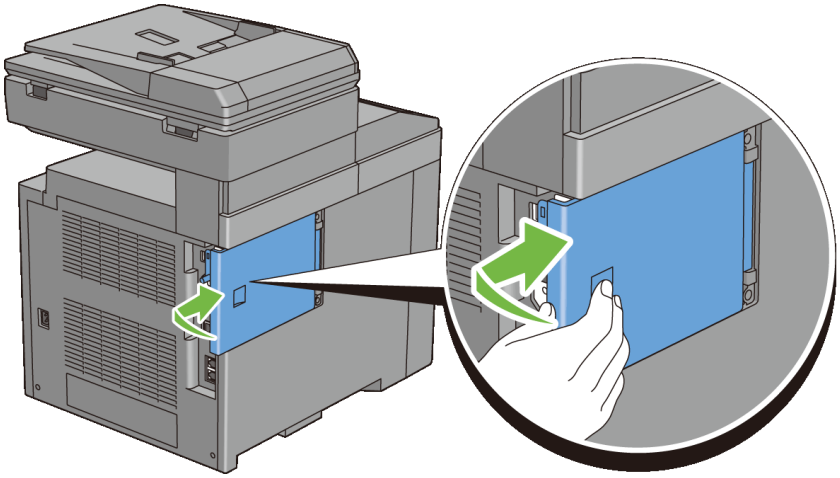


NOTE: Ensure that the memory module is firmly fixed in the slot and does not move easily.

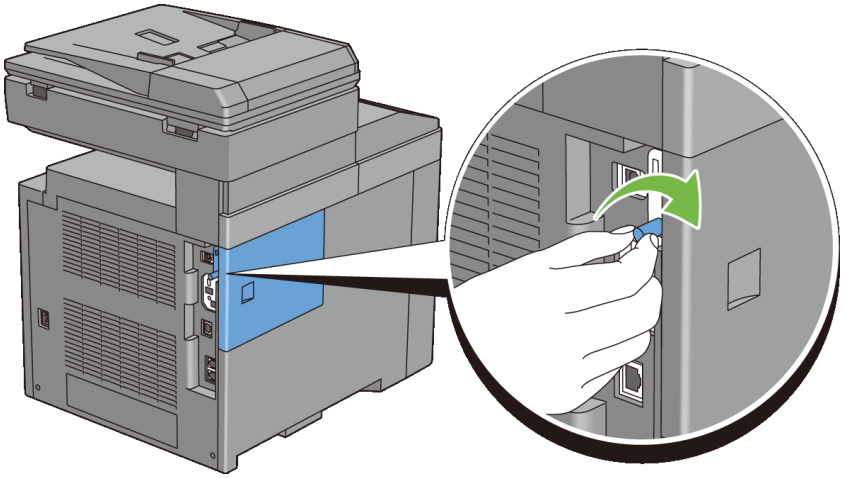
7 Close the control board cover, and slide it towards the front of the printer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



8 Turn the screw clockwise.



9 Turn on the printer.

10 Print the system settings report to confirm that the newly installed memory is detected by the printer.

Printing System Settings Report

When Using the Operator Panel

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

d Ensure that `System Setting` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

a Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

b Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

c Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

d Click the **System Settings** button.

The system settings report is printed.

11 Confirm the amount of **Memory Capacity** listed in the system settings report under **General**.

If the memory capacity has not increased, turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and re-install the memory module.

12 If you installed the optional memory module after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Updating Your Driver to Detect Memory Module

Microsoft® Windows® 7/Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64	1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Printer properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista®/ Vista x64	1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Memory Capacity** in the **Items** list box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Select the total amount of the installed printer memory for the memory capacity setting.

3 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

4 Close the **Printers and Faxes**(, **Printers**, or **Devices and Printers**) dialog box.

Installing the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder

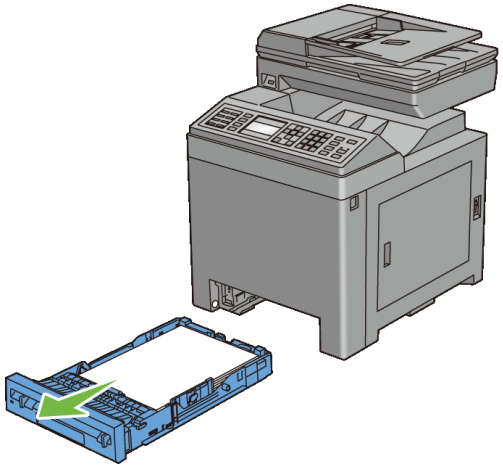
CAUTION: If you install the optional 250-sheet feeder after setting up the printer, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting this task.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off, and then disconnect all cables from the back of the printer.

2 Remove all packaging from the optional 250-sheet feeder.

3 Place the optional 250-sheet feeder in the location that the printer is located.

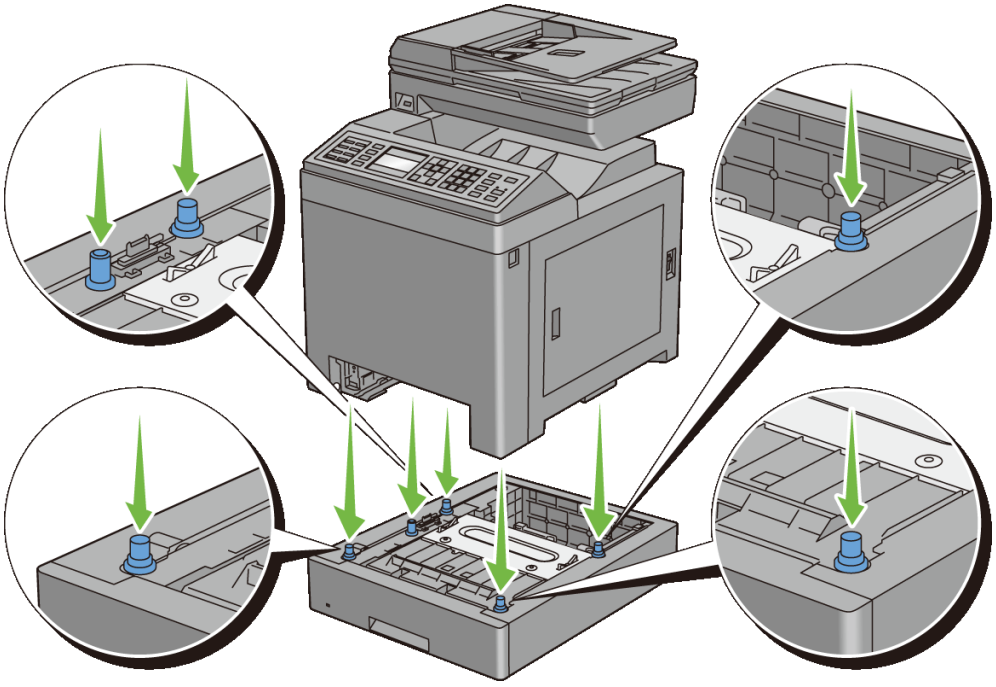
4 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 250-sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



5 Lift the printer and align the five guide pins of the optional 250-sheet feeder with the holes at the bottom of the printer. Gently lower the printer onto the optional 250-sheet feeder.

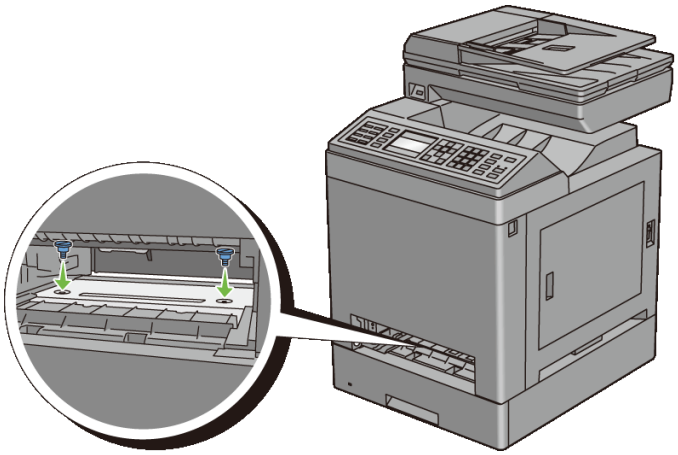
CAUTION: Two people are required to lift the printer. The printer should be lifted holding the front and back. Never lift the printer from its sides.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



CAUTION: Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the printer onto the optional 250-sheet feeder.

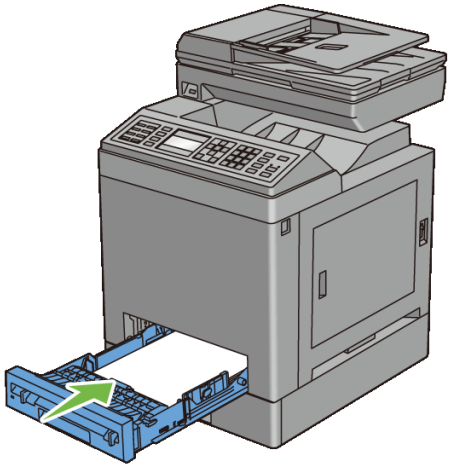
6 Secure the optional 250-sheet feeder to the printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder, with a coin or similar object.



NOTE: The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

7 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



8 Re-connect all cables into the back of the printer, and turn on the printer.

NOTE: The printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.

9 Print the system settings report to confirm the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed correctly.

Printing System Settings Report

When Using the Operator Panel

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

d Ensure that `System Setting` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

a Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

b Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

c Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

d Click the **System Settings** button.

The system settings report is printed.

10 Confirm **Tray 2 (250 Sheet Feeder)** is listed in the system settings report under **Printer Options**.

If the feeder is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and re-install the optional 250-sheet feeder.

11 After loading paper in the optional 250-sheet feeder, specify the paper type from the printer operator panel.

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Press button until `Tray Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

d Press button until `Tray 2` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

e Press button until `Paper Type` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

f Press button until the paper type for the optional 250-sheet feeder is displayed, and then press the **(Set)** button.

g Confirm that the selected paper type is highlighted, and then press the **(Menu)** button.

12 If you installed the optional 250-sheet feeder after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Updating Your Driver to Detect 250-Sheet Feeder

Microsoft Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server 2008 R2 x64	1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Printer properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista/Vista x64	1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes**. 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer and select **Properties**. 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**. 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. 5 Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **250 Sheet Feeder** on the **Items** list box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Select **Available** for the optional 250-sheet feeder setting.

3 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

4 Close the **Printers and Faxes**(, **Printers**, or **Devices and Printers**) dialog box.

Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

The wireless adapter allows you to use the printer with wireless network connection.

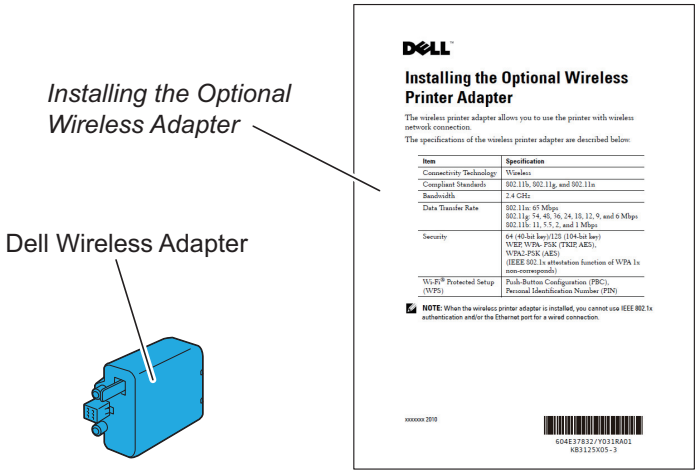
The specifications of the wireless adapter are described below.

Item	Specification
Connectivity Technology	Wireless
Compliant Standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES) (IEEE 802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds)
Wi-Fi® Protected Setup (WPS)	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

NOTE: When the wireless adapter is installed, you cannot use IEEE 802.1x authentication and/or the Ethernet port for a wired connection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Verifying the Contents of the Box


Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter
Dell Wireless Adapter
DELL
Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter
The wireless printer adapter allows you to use the printer with wireless network connection.
The specifications of the wireless printer adapter are described below:
Item
Specification
Connectivity Technology
Wireless
Compliant Standards
802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth
2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate
802.11n: 65 Mbps
802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps
802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security
64 (40-bit key/128 (104-bit key)
WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES),
WPA2-PSK (AES)
(IEEE 802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds)
Wi-Fi® Protected Setup (WPS)
Push-Button Configuration (PBC),
Personal Identification Number (PIN)
NOTE: When the wireless printer adapter is installed, you cannot use IEEE 802.1x authentication and/or the Ethernet port for a wired connection.
xxxxxxx 2010
604E37B32/Y031RA01
KB3125X05-3

NOTE: To complete wireless installation, you require the corresponding *Drivers and Utilities* CD that comes with your printer, which can also be downloaded from **support.dell.com**.

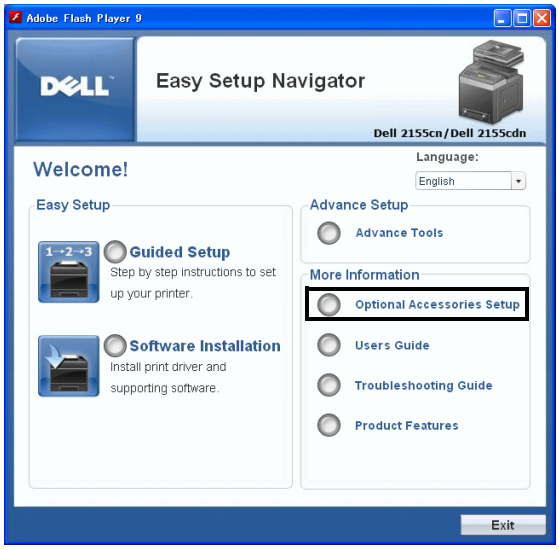
Installing the Wireless Adapter Using Video Instructions (Recommended)

To install the Dell wireless adapter, perform the following method.

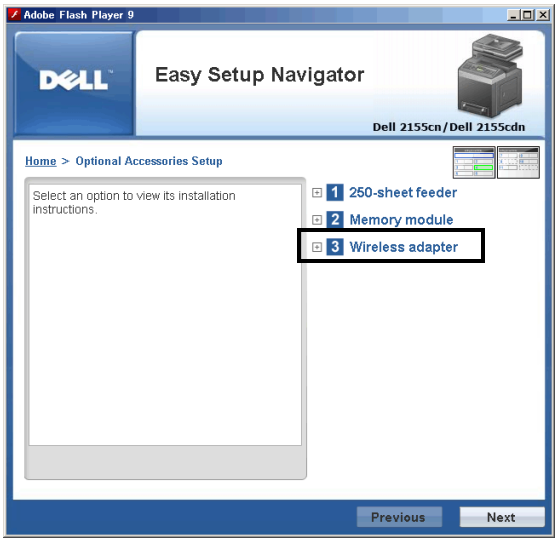
1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities CD* in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

2 Select **Optional Accessories Setup** on the **Easy Setup Navigator** window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Click **Wireless adapter**.



The instruction video starts.

Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

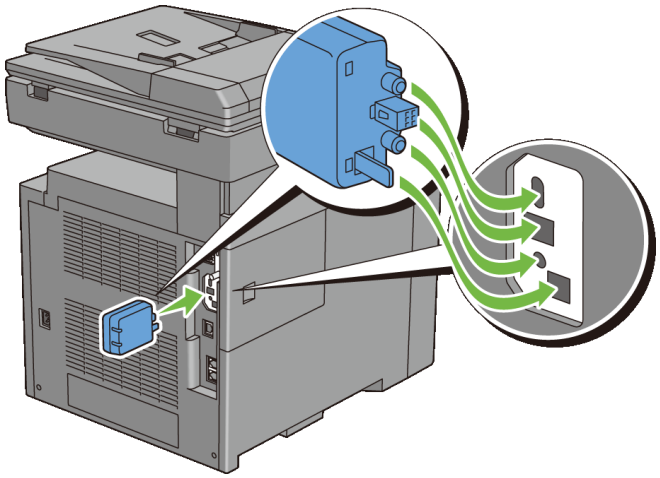
Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

NOTE: You can also install the Dell wireless adapter by following the instructions described in *Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter* provided with the wireless adapter.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Align the connector and the three protrusions of the wireless adapter with the four holes and insert the adapter.



NOTE: Ensure that the adapter is fully inserted and secured.

3 Turn on the printer.

NOTE: If a message displays telling you to make initial setup on the operator panel, always do as instructed.

4 Print the system settings report to confirm that the wireless adapter is installed correctly.

Printing System Settings Report

When Using the Operator panel

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

d Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

b Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

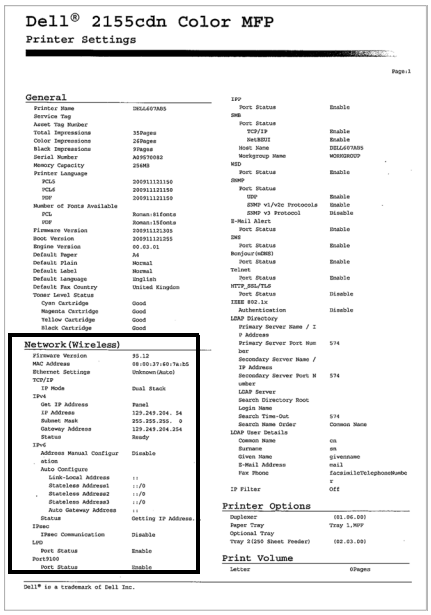
c Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

d Click the **System Settings** button.

The system settings report is printed.

5 Confirm that the **Network (Wireless)** section exists.


Dell® 2155cdn Color MFP
Printer Settings
General
Network(Wireless)
Printer Options
Print Volume

NOTE: For more information on configuring the wireless adapter, see "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."

Determining the Wireless Network Settings

You need to know the settings for the wireless network to set up the wireless printer. For details of the settings, contact your network administrator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wireless Settings	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Type	Specifies the network type from Ad-hoc or Infrastructure.
Security Settings	Security	Selects the security method from No security, WEP, WPA-PSK TKIP, and WPA2-PSK-AES/WPA-PSK-AES.
	Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from the list.
	WEP Key	Specifies the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when WEP is selected for Security.
	Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 bytes long only when WPA-PSK is selected for Encryption.

Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter

This section describes how to configure a wireless adapter through Easy Setup Navigator.

You can select a method to configure a wireless adapter from the following:

Wizard Setup through USB connection

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Advanced Setup through	Network (Ethernet) connection
	WPS-PIN*1
	WPS-PBC*2
	Operator Panel
	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

*1 WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

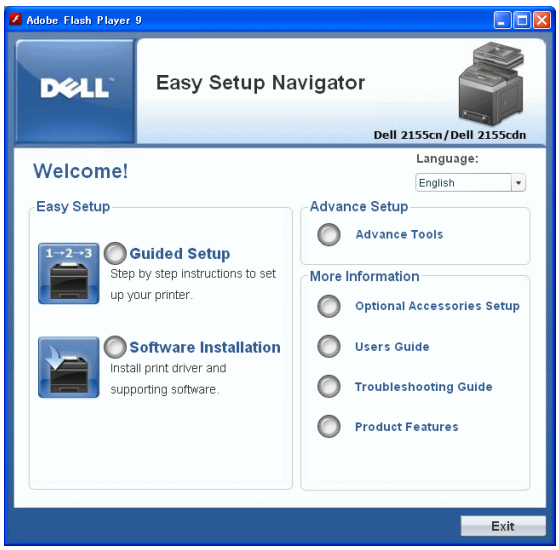
*2 WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

NOTE: The optional wireless adapter must be installed on the printer.

NOTE: For information on how to install a wireless adapter, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter."

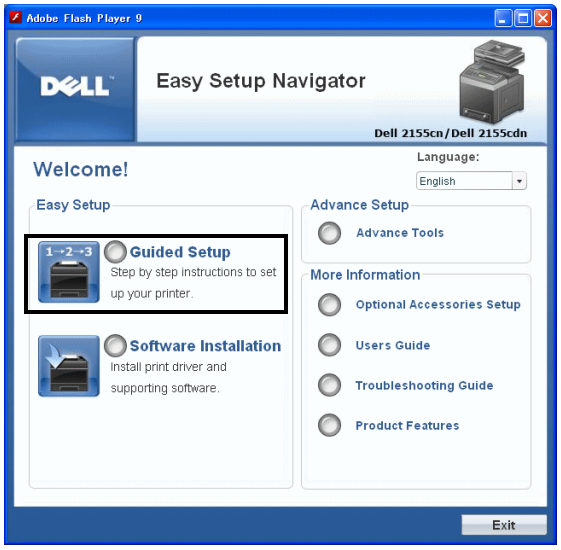
Using Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

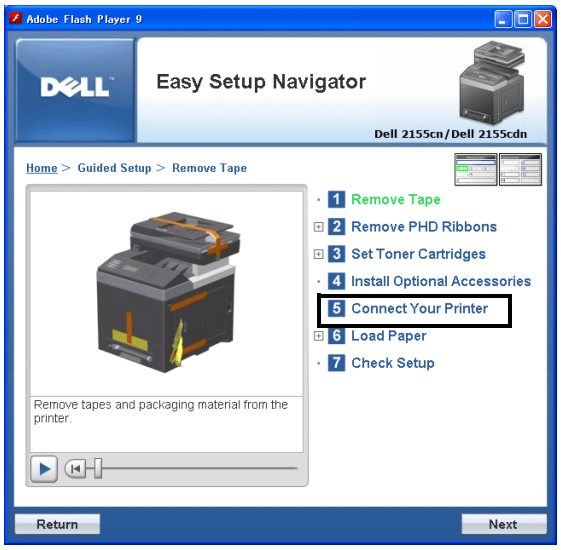


2 Click **Guided Setup**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

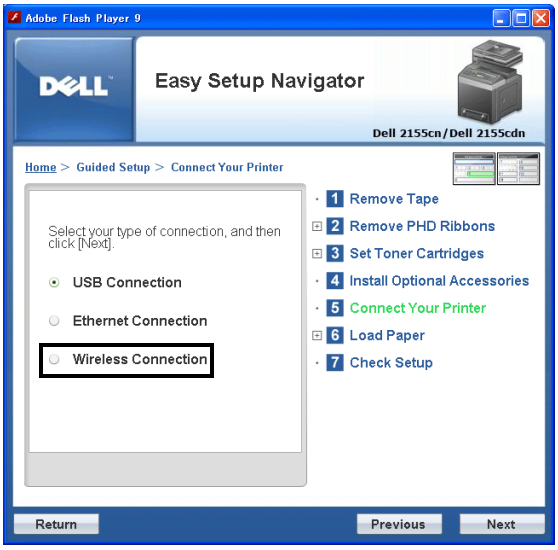


3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.



4 Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click the **Next** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The **Wireless Connection** window appears.

5 Select **Wizard**, and then click the **Next** button.

The instruction video starts.

Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

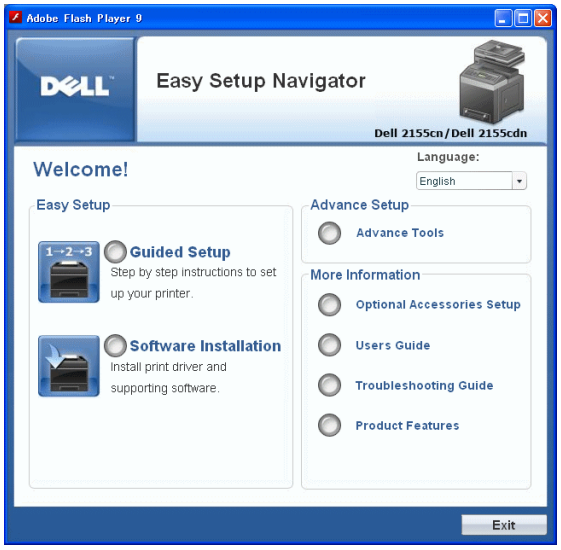
Using Advanced Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter

You can configure the wireless adapter with the following connection methods:

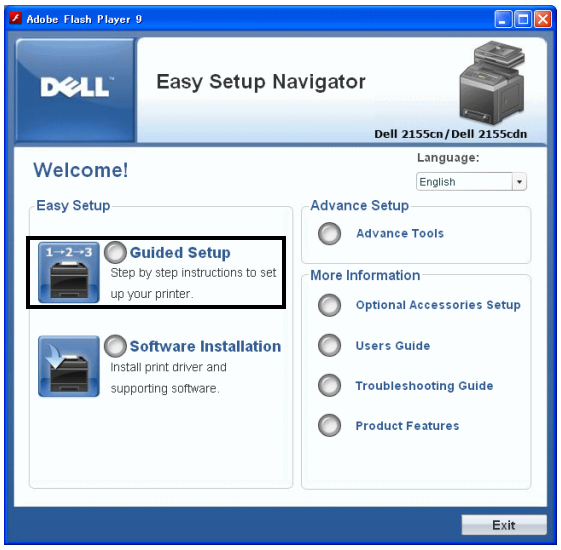
- Network Cable
- WPS-PIN
- WPS-PBC
- Operator Panel
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

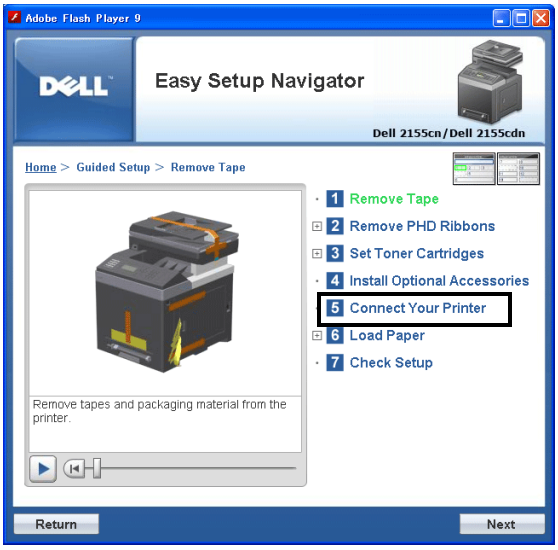


2 Click **Guided Setup**.

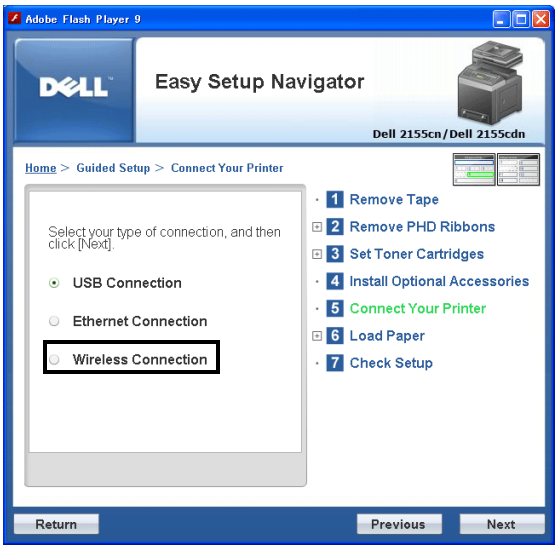


3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4 Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click the **Next** button.



The **Wireless Connection** window appears.

For **Network**, follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

1 Select **Network Cable**, and then click the **Next** button.

The instruction video starts.

Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings, and then click the **Next** button.

The **Advanced Configuration Tool** starts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Select the printer, and then click the **Next** button.

Wireless Network Settings screen appears.

NOTE: If the printer cannot detect your printer and your printer is not listed, click **Enter IP Address** button and enter the IP address of your printer, and then click the **OK** button.

3 Set the wireless network settings, and then click the **Next** button.

IP Address Settings screen appears.

NOTE: For details on each item, see "Assigning an IP Address."

4 Set the IP address of the printer, and then click the **Next** button.

Confirm the settings screen appears.

5 Confirm the settings, and then click the **Apply** button.

Complete configuration screen appears.

6 Click the **Next** button.

For **WPS-PIN**, **WPS-PBC**, **Operator Panel**, and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

To configure wireless settings without using the video instructions, follow the following instructions.

WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

NOTE: WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the (Set) button.

4 Press button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Press ⌄ button until `Wireless Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until `WPS` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Press ⌄ button until `PIN Code` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Write down the 8-digit PIN code displayed on the first line of the panel display or press ⌄ button until `Print PIN Code` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The PIN code is printed.

9 Ensure that `Start Configuration` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

10 Ensure that the message `Please wait Wireless Setting` is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on the step 7 into the wireless LAN access point (Registrar).

NOTE: For WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

11 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

WPS-PBC

You can start Push Button Control only from the operator panel.

NOTE: WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

1 Press the ☰ **(Menu)** button.

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ⌄ button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Press ⌄ button until `Wireless Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until `WPS` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Ensure that `Push Button Control` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Press ⌄ button until `Start` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

9 Ensure that the message `Please wait Wireless Setting` is displayed, and start the WPS-PBC on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar), within two minutes of the step 7 operation.

NOTE: For WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

10 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Operator Panel

1 Press the ☰ **(Menu)** button.

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ⌄ button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until `Wireless Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Ensure that `Manual Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Enter the SSID, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Select the network mode from `Infrastructure` and `Ad-hoc` depending on your environment.
When you select `Infrastructure`, proceed to step 9.
When you select `Ad-hoc`, proceed to step 10.

9 Select the encryption type from `No Security`, `WEP (64Bit)`, and `WEP (128Bit)`.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you do not set security for your wireless network:

a Ensure that `No Security` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

To use 64 bit or 128 bit WEP encryption:

a Press ⌄ button until `WEP (64Bit)` or `WEP (128Bit)` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

b Enter the WEP key, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

c Select the transmit key from `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`.

To use WPA-PSK-TKIP or WPA-PSK-AES encryption:

a Press ⌄ button until `WPA-PSK-TKIP` or `WPA-PSK-AES` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

b Enter the passphrase, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

10 Select the encryption type from `No Security`, `WEP (64Bit)`, and `WEP (128Bit)`.

When you do not set security for your wireless network:

a Ensure that `No Security` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

To use 64 bit or 128 bit WEP encryption:

a Press ⌄ button until `WEP (64Bit)` or `WEP (128Bit)` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

b Enter the WEP key, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

c Select the transmit key from `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`.

11 When the operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.

2 Click **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click **Print Server Settings** tab.

4 Click **Wireless LAN**, and then enter the SSID.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Select the network type from **Infrastructure** and **Ad-Hoc**.

6 Select the encryption type from **No Security**, **WEP**, **WPA-PSK-AES**, and **WPA-PSK-TKIP**, and then set each item for the encryption type selected.

NOTE: For details on each item, see "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."

7 Click the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the settings.

8 When the operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Constructing a New Wireless Network Environment for Your Computer

When you setup your wireless connection first time, the following settings are required on your computer.

For DHCP network:

1 Setting up your computer for wireless connectivity:

NOTE: If your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using this tool. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Select **Network Connections** from Control Panel.

b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d Ensure the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Be sure to write down the current wireless computer settings in step e and step g so that you can restore them later.

e Click the **Advanced** button.

f Select **Computer to Computer** (ad hoc) networks only and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h Under the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

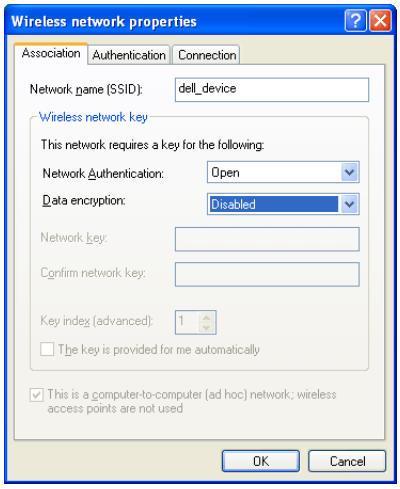
Network name (SSID): dell_device

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Network Authentication: Open

Data encryption: Disabled

Ad hoc network: checked



i Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

2 Check the IP address assigned by AutoIP on the printer.

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

d Press button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

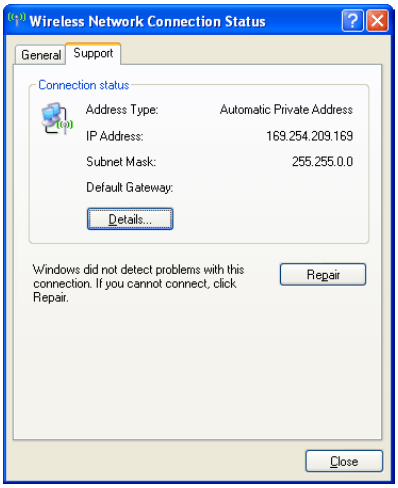
e Press button until `TCP/IP` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

f Press button until `IPv4` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

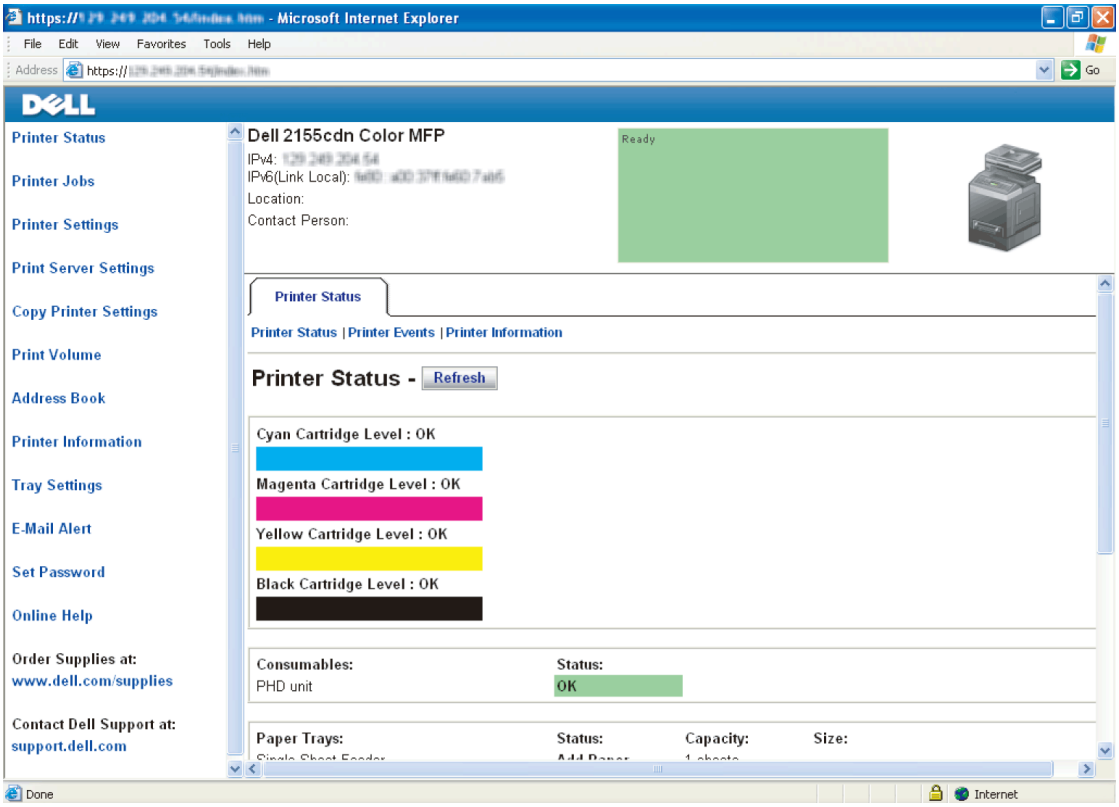
Check the IP address displayed on the operator panel.

3 Check that the IP address on your computer is assigned by DHCP.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4 Open **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** using the WEB browser.



5 Create wireless setting of the printer on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

6 Reboot the printer.

7 Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using this tool. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Select Network Connections from Control Panel.

b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c Select **Wireless Network** tab.

d Ensure the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

e Click **Advanced**.

f Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the printer:

Select **Computer to Computer** (ad hoc) networks only and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the printer:

Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

h Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

i Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

f Enter the **Security key** and click **OK**, if necessary.

For Fixed IP networks:

1 Setting up your computer for wireless connectivity:

NOTE: If your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using this tool. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Select **Network Connections** from Control Panel.

b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

d Ensure the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Be sure to write down the current wireless computer settings in step d and step f so that you can restore them later.

e Click the **Advanced** button.

f Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

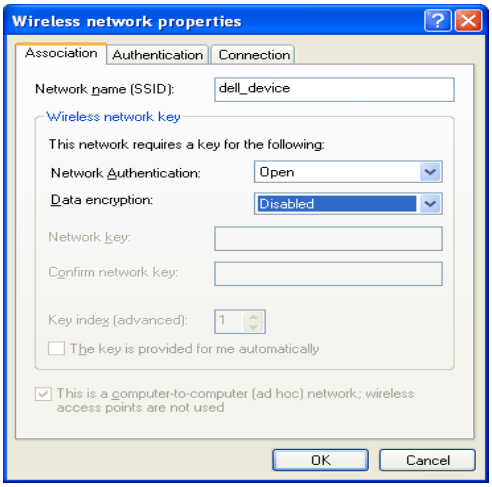
h Under the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): dell_device

Network Authentication: Open

Data encryption: Disabled

Ad hoc network: checked



i Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open Control Panel.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

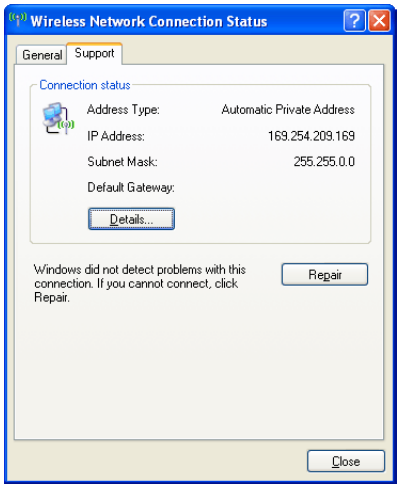
c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

2 Check the IP address on your computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Set the IP address on the printer.

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Press button until `Admin menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

d Press button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

e Press button until `TCP/IP` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

f Press button until `IPv4` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

g Ensure that `Get IP Address` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

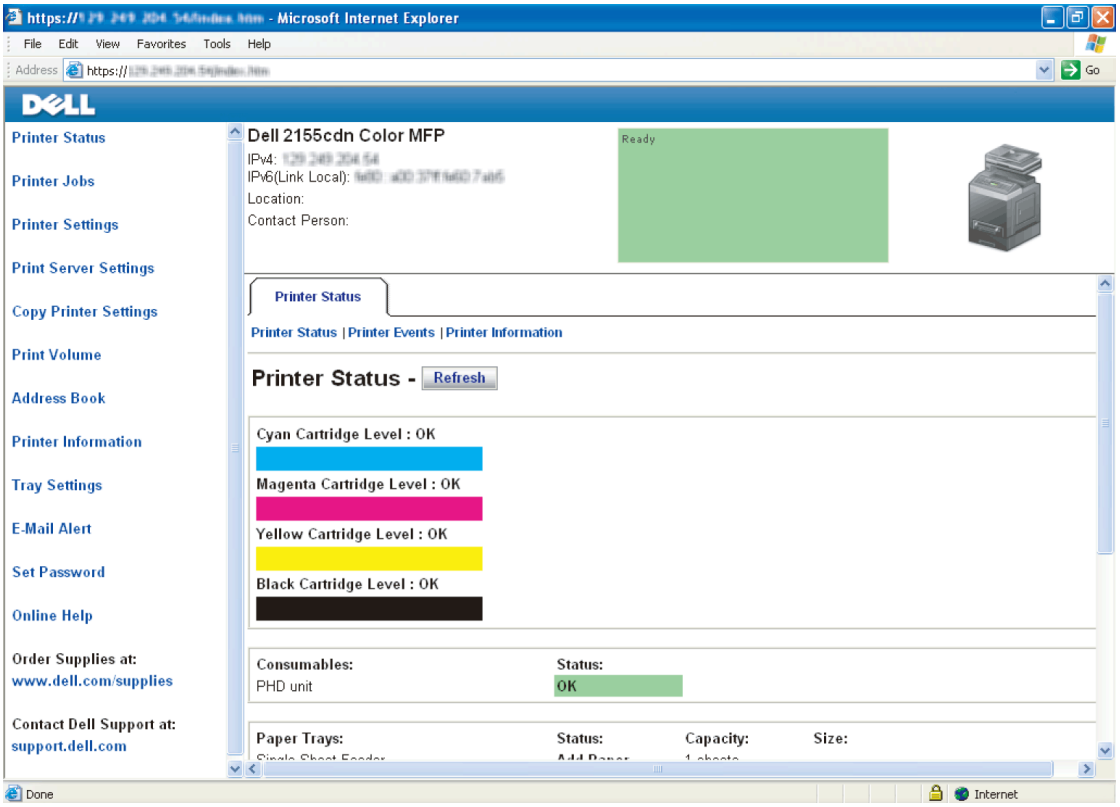
h Press button until `Panel` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

i Press button until `IP Address` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

j Manually enter the IP address using the numeric keypad, , , and button on the operator panel, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Open **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** using the WEB browser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5 Change the wireless setting of the printer on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

6 Reboot the printer.

7 Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

NOTE: If your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using this tool. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

a For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

b Select **Network Connections** from Control Panel.

c Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

d Select **Wireless Network** tab.

e Ensure the check box for Use **Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

f Click **Advanced**.

g Do either of the following:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the printer:

Select Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only and close the Advanced dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the printer:

Select Access point (Infrastructure) networks only and close the Advanced dialog box.

h Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

i Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

j Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

k Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

f Enter the **Security key** and click **OK**, if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

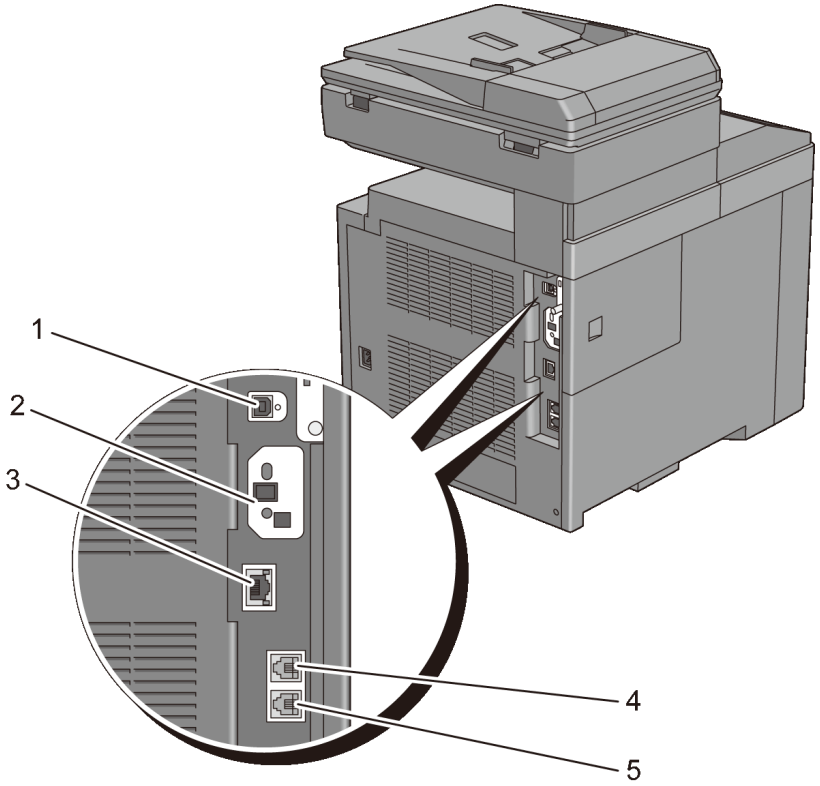
7

Connecting Your Printer

Your Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Connection type	Connection specifications
USB	USB 2.0
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T
Wireless (optional)	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n
Wall jack connector	RJ11
Phone connector	RJ11



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1	USB port	
2	Wireless adapter socket	
3	Ethernet port	
4	Phone connector	
5	Wall jack connector	

Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Direct Connection

A local printer is a printer which is directly connected to your computer using the USB cable. If your printer is connected to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "Network Connection."

The following operating systems support USB connection:

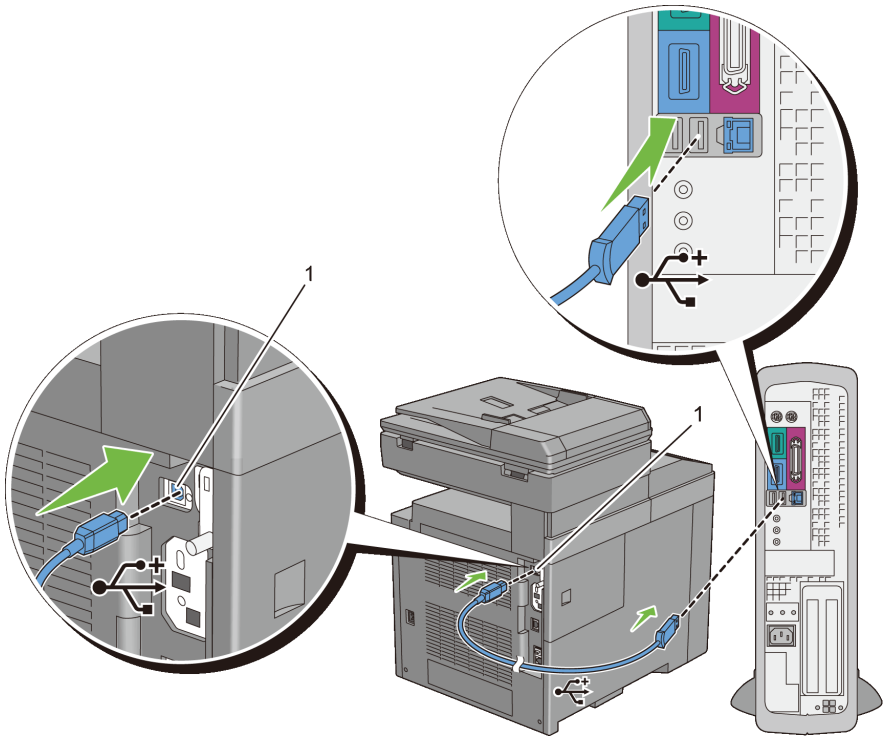
- Microsoft® Windows® XP
- Windows XP 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server® 2003
- Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition
- Windows Vista®
- Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Windows 7
- Windows 7 64-bit Edition
- Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6
- Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 4 WS/5 Client (x86)
- SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

To connect the printer to a computer:

1 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the back of the printer.



1 USB port

NOTE: Ensure that you match the USB symbol on the cable to the USB symbol on the printer.

2 Connect the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.

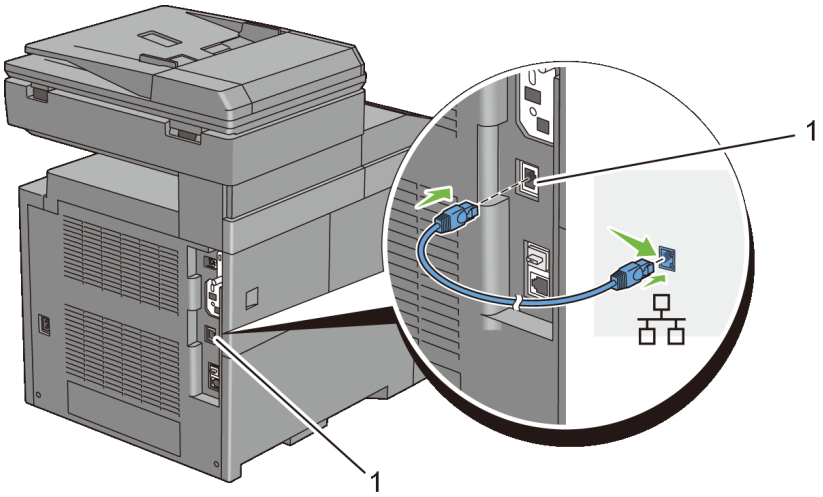
NOTICE: Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB port available on the keyboard.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Network Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

1 Connect the network cable.



1	Ethernet port

To connect the printer to the network, connect one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub. To setup a wireless connection, insert the wireless adapter into the wireless adapter socket on the back of the printer.

For a wireless connection, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter."

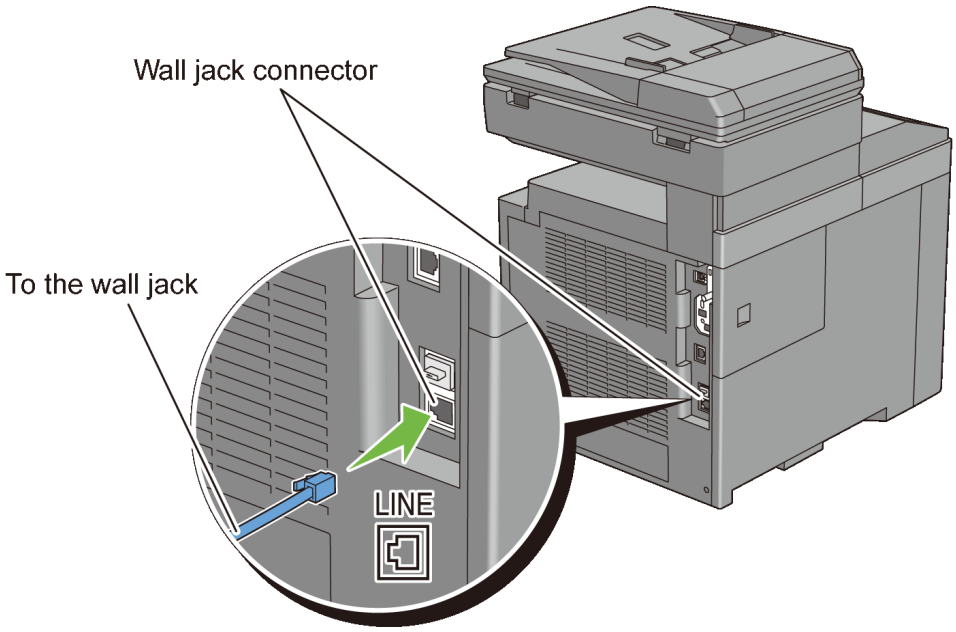
NOTE: To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the network cable.

Connecting the Telephone Line

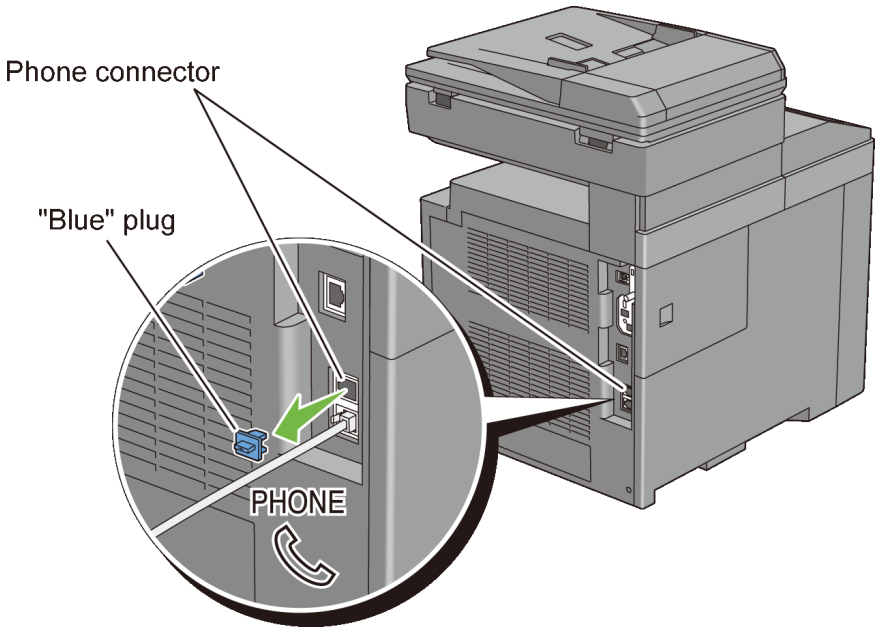
NOTE: Do not connect your printer directly to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord into the wall jack connector and the other end into an active wall jack.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

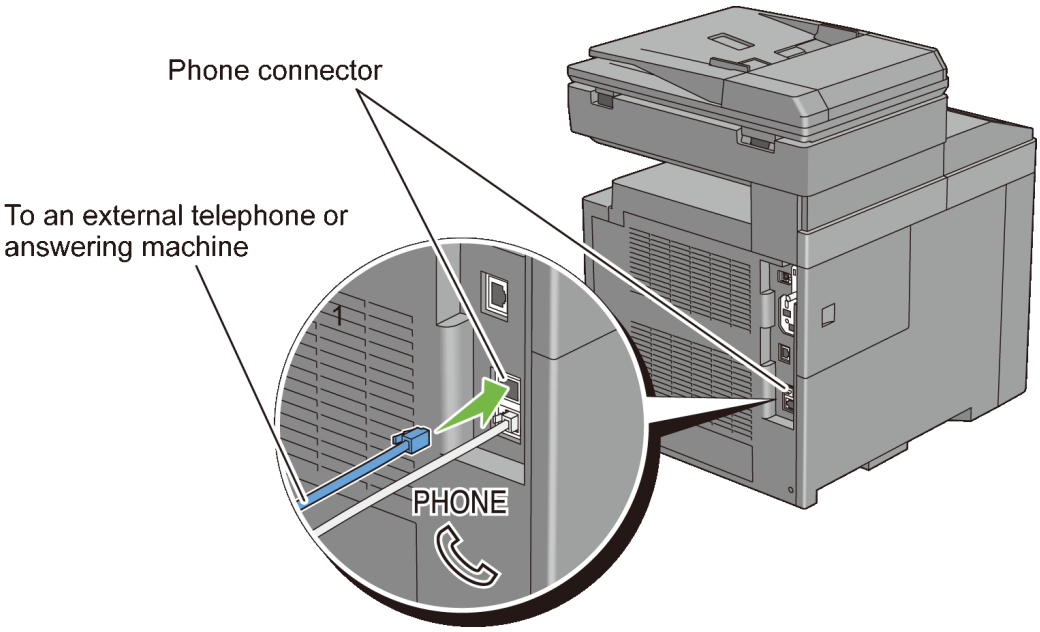


2 Remove the "Blue" plug from the phone connector.

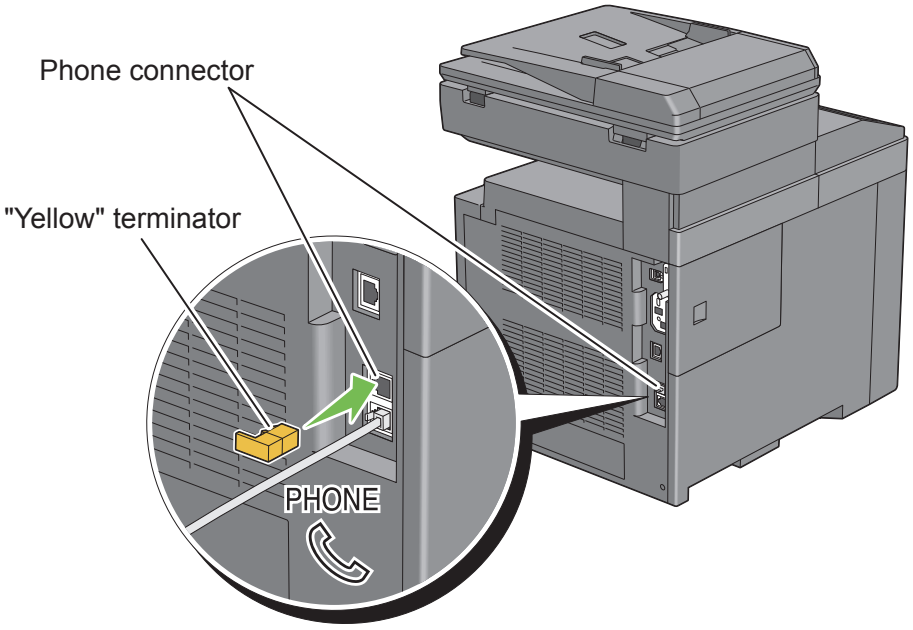


3 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector ( ).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If the phone communication is serial in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), and that you are supplied with a "Yellow" terminator, insert the "Yellow" terminator into the phone connector ( ).



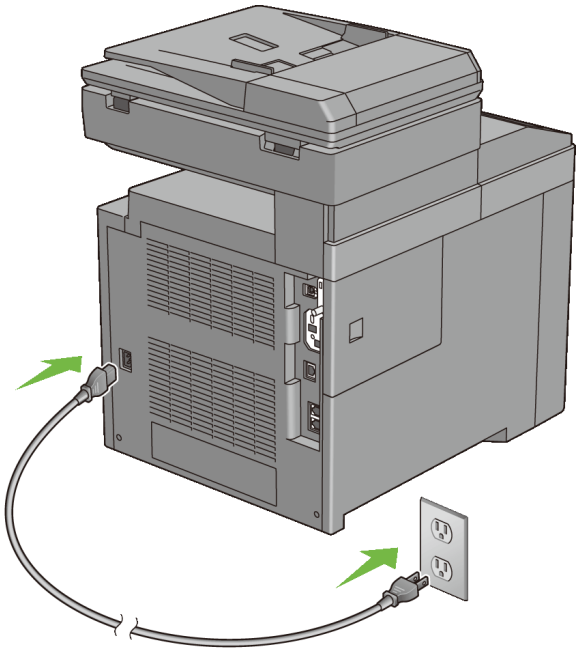
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turning on the Printer

CAUTION: Do not use extension cords or power strips.

CAUTION: The printer should not be connected to a UPS system.

1 Connect the power cable to the power connector on the rear of the printer, and then to a power source.



2 Turn on the printer. When the printer is connected via a USB (Uninterruptible Power Supply) cable, the USB driver is automatically installed.

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, country, clock date, and time when you turn on printer for the first time.

When you turn the printer on, the wizard screen to perform the initial setup appears on the operator panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

NOTE: If you do not start configuring the initial settings, Ready to Print appears on the operator panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling Power on Wizard on the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool if needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For more information on operator panel, see "Understanding the Printer Menus."

For more information on Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, see "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."

1 `Please Select Language` appears. Press ⌄ button until the desired language is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

English
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

2 `Please Select Country` appears. Press ⌄ button until the desired country is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
The default time zone, paper size, and display format are automatically set when you select a country.

Country	Default Time Zone Setting	Default Paper Size	Display Format
Algeria	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Australia	+10:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Austria	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Belgium	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Bulgaria	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Canada	-5:00	Letter	MM/DD/YY
Colombia	-5:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Costa Rica	-6:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Cyprus	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Czech Republic	+1:00	A4	YY/MM/DD
Denmark	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Dominican Republic	-4:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Egypt	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Estonia	+3:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Finland	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
France	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Germany	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Greece	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Guatemala	-6:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Hungary	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Iceland	-9:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Ireland	00:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Italy	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Jamaica	-5:00	Letter	MM/DD//YY
Jordan	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Latvia	+3:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Liechtenstein	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Lithuania	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Luxembourg	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Malta	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Mexico	-6:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Netherlands	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
New Zealand	+12:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Nicaragua	-6:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Norway	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Panama	-5:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY
Poland	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Portugal	00:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Puerto Rico	-4:00	Letter	MM/DD/YY
Romania	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Russia	+3:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Saudi Arabia	+3:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Slovakia	+1:00	A4	YY/MM/DD
Slovenia	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
South Africa	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Spain	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Sweden	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Switzerland	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Tunisia	+1:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
Turkey	+2:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
United Arab Emirates	+4:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
United Kingdom	00:00	A4	DD/MM/YY
United States	-5:00	Letter	MM/DD/YY
Unknown	00:00	Letter	DD/MM/YY

3 `Please Select Time Zone` appears. Press ^ or v button until the desired time zone is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

UTC -12:00
UTC -11:00
UTC -10:00
UTC -09:00
UTC -08:00
UTC -07:00
UTC -06:00
UTC -05:00
UTC -04:00
UTC -03:30
UTC -03:00
UTC -02:00
UTC -01:00

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UTC 00:00
UTC +01:00
UTC +02:00
UTC +03:00
UTC +03:30
UTC +04:00
UTC +04:30
UTC +05:00
UTC +05:30
UTC +05:45
UTC +06:00
UTC +06:30
UTC +07:00
UTC +08:00
UTC +09:00
UTC +09:30
UTC +10:00
UTC +11:00
UTC +12:00
UTC +13:00

4 `Please Enter Date` appears. Specify the date, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 `Please Enter Time` appears. Specify the time, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

This ends the basic printer settings. Press the ✓ **(Set)** button to set Fax settings or press the ▷ **(Start)** button to end the initial setup.

6 `Please Enter Fax Number` appears. Enter the fax number of the printer, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 `Please Enter Name` appears. Enter the sender name, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The printer automatically restarts after resetting your regional clock and registering the fax information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8

Setting the IP Address

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Assigning an IP Address

An IP address is a unique number that consists of four sections that are delimited by a period and can include up to three digits in each section, for example, `111.222.33.44`.

You can select the IP mode from Dual Stack, IPv4, and IPv6. If your network supports both IPv4 and IPv6, select Dual Stack.

Select the IP mode of your environment, and then set IP address, subnet mask (for IPv4 only), and gateway address.

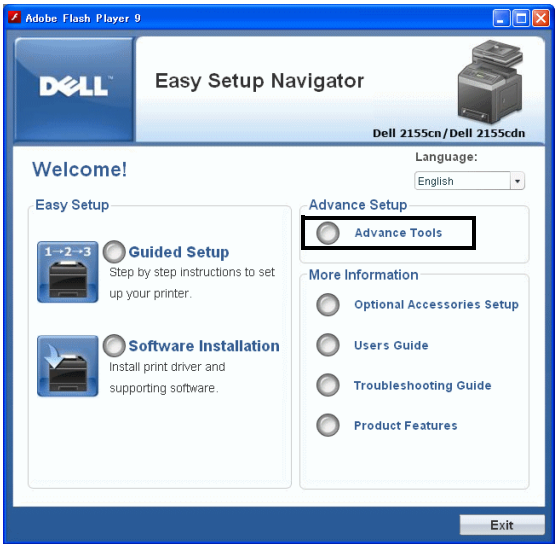
NOTICE: Assigning an IP address that is already in use can cause network performance issues.

NOTE: Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.

When Using the Easy Setup Navigator

1. Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.
2. Click **Advanced Tools** on the **Easy Setup Navigator** window. The **Advanced Tools** window opens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Click **IP Configuration**.

4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

When Using the Operator Panel

For more information on using the operator panel, see "Operator Panel."

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Press the **(Menu)** button.

3 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press button until `TCP/IP` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Press button until `IPv4` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

8 Ensure that `Get IP Address` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

9 Press button until `Panel` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

10 Press the **(Back)** button.

11 Press button until `IP Address` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The cursor is located at the first octet of the IP address.

12 Use the ten keys to enter the first octet of the IP address, and then press button.

The cursor moves to the next digit.

NOTE: You can only enter one octet at a time and must press button after entering each octet.

13 Enter the rest of the octets, and then press the **(Set)** button.

14 Press the **(Back)** button.

15 Press button until `Subnet Mask` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

16 Repeat steps 12 and 13 to set Subnet Mask, and then press the **(Set)** button.

17 Press the **(Back)** button.

18 Press button until `Gateway Address` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

19 Repeat steps 12 and 13 to set the Gateway Address, and then press the **(Set)** button.

20 Turn off the printer, and then turn it on again.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

4 Select the mode from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway Address.

5 Press the **Apply New Settings** button to take effect.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the printer drivers with the installer. When you use the **Network Installation** feature, and the `Get IP Address` is set to `AutoIP` or `DHCP` on the operator panel menu, you can set the IP address from 0.0.0.0 to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by printing the system settings report or using the ping command.

Verifying the Settings Using System Settings Report

1 Print the system settings report.

When Using the Operator Panel

a Press the **(Menu)** button.

b Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

c Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

d Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

a Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

b Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

c Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

d Click the **System Settings** button.

The system settings report is printed

2 Verify the correct IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are listed in the system settings report under **Network (Wired)**.

Verifying the Settings Using Ping Command

Ping the printer and verify that it responds. For example, at a command prompt on a network computer, type ping followed by the new IP address (for example, 192.168.0.11):

```
ping 192.168.0.11
```

If the printer is active on the network, you will receive a reply.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

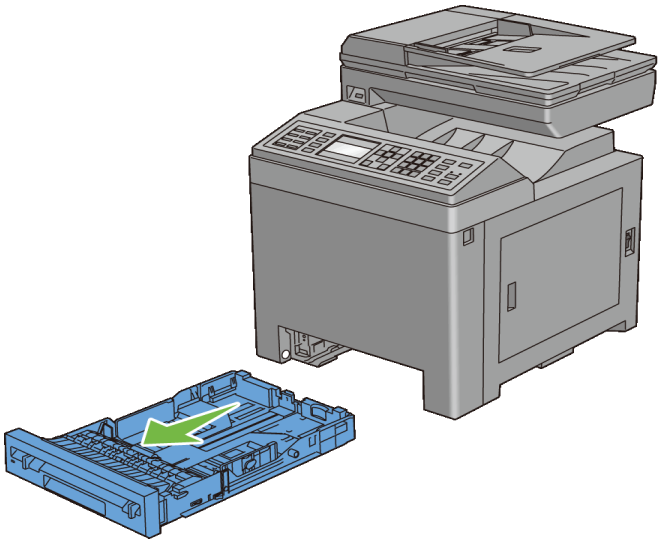
9

Loading Paper

NOTE: To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.

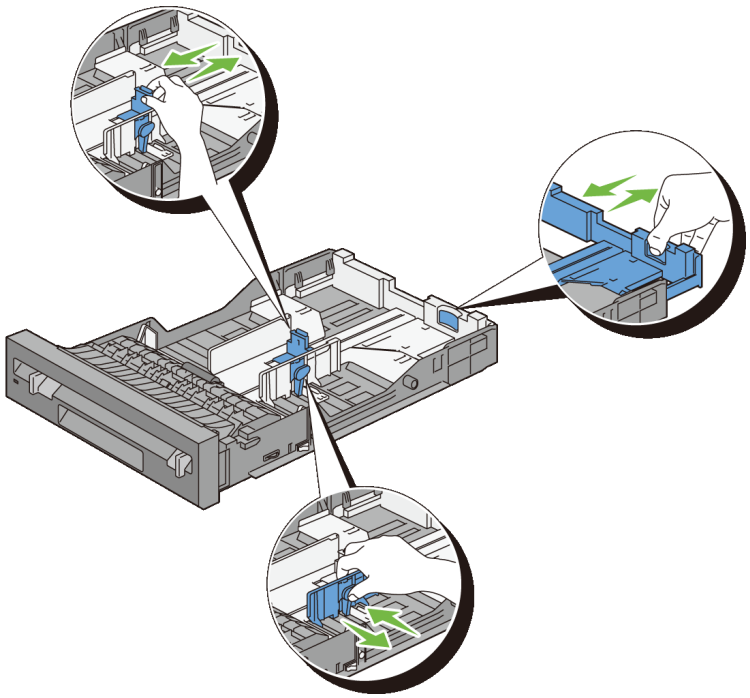
NOTE: Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in your printer.

1 Pull the tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



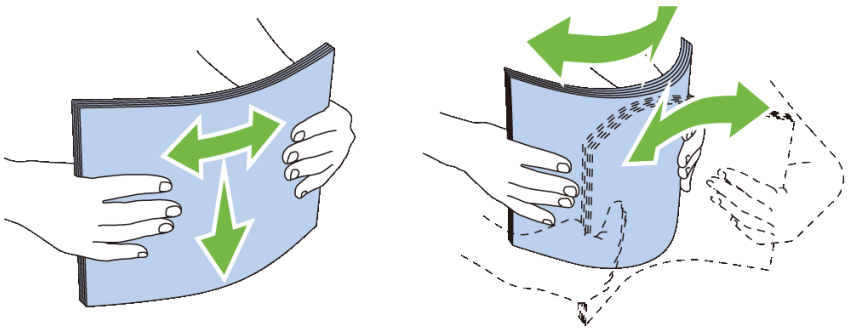
2 Adjust the paper guides.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTE: Extend the rear side of the tray when you load Legal size paper.

3 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.

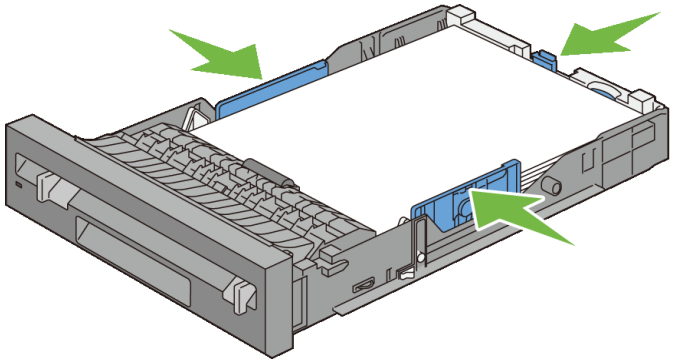


4 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

NOTE: Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.

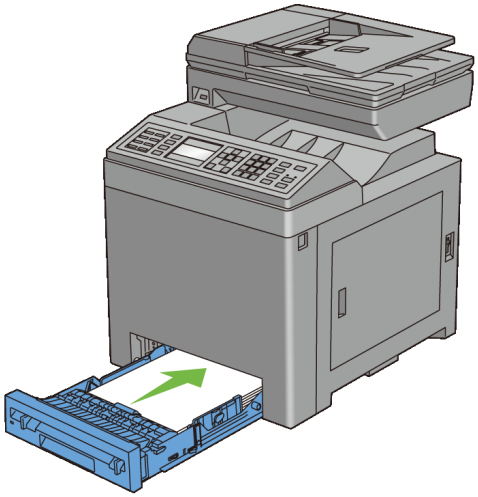
5 Align the width guides against the edges of the paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTE: When loading user-specified print media, adjust the width guides and slide the extendable part of the tray by pinching the length guide and sliding it until it rests lightly against the edge of the paper.

6 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.



NOTE: Select the paper type from the operator panel if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

10

Installing Printer Drivers on the Windows Computers

Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status

Before installing the printer driver on your computer, check the IP address of your printer by performing one of the following procedures.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

- When Using the Operator Panel
- When Using the Tool Box

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the (**Menu**) button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

5 Look under the **TCP/IP** heading on the system settings report.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address."

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address."

Disabling Firewall Before Installing Printer Software

NOTE: This step is necessary if you have Windows XP Service Pack 2 or 3 installed.

If your printer is connected directly to a network, and the Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows 7 firewall is enabled, you cannot view your networked printer(s) when you run the Dell printer installation software. To prevent this situation, disable this firewall before you install the Dell printer software. To disable or enable your Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows 7 firewall, perform the following steps.

1 Click **Start** and click **Help and Support**.

NOTE: For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7, if you use **Online Help**, switch to **Offline Help** on **Windows Help and Support** window.

2 In the **Search** box, type `firewall`, and then press the **Enter** key.

In the list, click **Turn Windows Firewall on or off**, and then follow the instructions on the screen.

Inserting the Drivers and Utility CD

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into your computer and click **setup_assist.exe** to start **Easy Setup Navigator**.

NOTE: If the CD does not launch automatically, follow the procedure below.

For Windows XP, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2

Click **start**→ **Run**, enter `D:/setup_assist.exe` (where D is the CD drive letter) in the Run dialog box, and then click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**, enter `D:/setup_assist.exe` (where D is the CD drive letter) in the Run dialog box, and then click **OK**.

Direct Connection Setup

For installing PCL printer driver

1. In the **Easy Setup Navigator** window, click **Software Installation** to launch the installation software.
2. Select **Personal Installation**, and then click **Next**.
3. Select the model name of your printer, and then click **Next**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable, and then turn the printer on.

   The Plug and Play installation starts and the installation software proceeds to the next page automatically.

   NOTE: If the installation software does not automatically proceed to the next page, click **Install**.
5. Select either **Typical Installation** or **Custom Installation** from the installation wizard, and then click **Install**. If you select **Custom Installation**, you can select the specific software you want to install.
6. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears.

   To print a test page, click **Print Test Page**.

USB Printing

A personal printer is a printer connected to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is connected to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup."

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

NOTE: XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. To use this printer as the default printer, select the check box displayed under the **Printer name**, and then click **Next**.

Installation starts.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

11 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

12 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator.

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

When you use Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Add a local or network printer as an administrator**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Network Connection Setup

NOTE: To use this printer in a Linux environment, you need to install a Linux driver. For more information on how to install and use these, see "Installing Printer Drivers on the Linux Computers (CUPS)."

NOTE: When using a CD drive in a Linux environment, you need to mount the CD according to your system environment. The command strings are mount/media/CD-ROM.

Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

For installing PCL printer driver

1 In the **Easy Setup Navigator** window, click **Software Installation** to launch the installation software.

2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.

3 Select the model name of your printer, and then click **Next**.

4 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select the **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.

NOTE: When using AutoIP, 0.0.0.0 is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

NOTE: In some cases, **Windows Security Alert** is displayed in this step when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, or Windows 7 64-bit Edition. In this case, select **Unblock** (Allow access for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7), and then continue the procedure.

6 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.

a Enter the printer name.

b If you want other users on the network to access the printer, select **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.

c If you want to set the printer as the default printer, select the **Set this printer as default** check box.

d If you want to restrict color printing, select the appropriate **Dell ColorTrack** option. Enter the password when **Color-Password Enabled** is selected for **Dell ColorTrack**.

e If you want to install the Fax Driver, select the **Fax Driver** check box.

7 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**. If you want to change the installation destination, click **Browse** and specify a new location.

8 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears.

To print a test page, click **Print Test Page**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

NOTE: XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1. Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

   `D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2. Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.
3. Click **Add a printer**.
4. Click **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
5. Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
6. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
7. Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

   If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

   NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
8. Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
9. Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Select your printer name and click **Next**.
12. To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

    To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

    Installation starts.
13. As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator.

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 8.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

14 Click **Next**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installation starts.

15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

16 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

NOTE: When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed, Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 or Windows 7 64-bit Edition

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS_2155.zip` (where D is the CD drive letter)

2 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 8.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

14 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

16 Click **Finish**.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click the Dell supplies link for ordering supplies.

NOTE: The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To set up e-mail alerts:

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

2 Click **E-Mail Alert** link.

3 Under **E-Mail Server Settings**, enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Reply Address**, and your or key operator's e-mail address in the e-mail list box.

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

NOTE: **Connection pending until printer sends an alert** is displayed on the SMTP server until an error occurs.

Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network

Before Installation

Before you start remote installation, perform the following procedures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Allow Print Spooler to Accept Client Connections

NOTE: This procedure is required for Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, and Windows Server 2008:

1. Open the Run dialog box.

   For Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, click **start→ All Programs → Accessories → Run**.

   For Windows Vista, click **Start→ Run**.

2. Type `gpedit.msc`, and then click **OK**.
3. Click **Computer Configuration→ Administrative Templates→ Printers**.
4. Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Properties**.
5. On the **Setting** tab, select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.
6. Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

1. Open the Run dialog box.

   For Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start→ Run**.

   For Windows 7, click **Start→ All Programs→ Accessories→ Run**.

2. Type `gpedit.msc`, and then click **OK**.
3. Click **Computer Configuration→ Administrative Templates→ Printers**.
4. Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Edit**.
5. Select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.
6. Restart the computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Share the Firewall File and Printer

NOTE: This procedure is required for Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows XP:

1. Click **start→ Control Panel**.
2. Select **Security Center**.
3. Click **Windows Firewall**.
4. On the **Exceptions** tab, select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Vista:

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel**.
2. Select **Security**.
3. Click **Windows Firewall**.
4. Click **Change settings**.
5. Click **Continue**.
6. On the **Exceptions** tab, select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008:

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel**.
2. Double-click **Windows Firewall**.
3. Click **Change settings**.
4. On the **Exceptions** tab, select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel**.
2. Select **System and Security**.
3. Click **Windows Firewall**.
4. Click **Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 If the check boxes under **Allowed programs and features**: are dimmed, click **Change settings**.

6 Check the **File and Printer Sharing** check box. **Home/Work (Private)** or **Public** check box is automatically selected according to your settings.

If the **File and Printer Sharing Properties** dialog box appears, click **OK**.

7 Click **OK**.

Start Remote Registry

NOTE: This procedure is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Select **System and Maintenance** (System and Security for Windows 7).

3 Click **Administrative Tools**.

4 Double-click **Services**.

5 Click **Continue** (for Windows Vista only).

6 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Start**.

7 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Properties**.

8 Change **Startup type** to `Automatic`, and then click **OK**.

Disable User Account Control

NOTICE: Disabling the User Account Control might leave the system vulnerable to virus attacks.

NOTE: This procedure is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows Vista:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Turn User Account Control on** or **off**.

5 Click **Continue**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.

7 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Double-click **User Accounts**.

3 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.

4 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.

5 Click **OK**.

6 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts**.

3 Click **Change User Account Control Settings**.

4 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.

5 Restart the computer.

For Windows 7:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Change User Account Control Settings**.

5 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.

6 Click **Yes** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.

7 Restart the computer.

Enable Network Discovery and File Sharing for all Public Networks

NOTE: This procedure is required when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition for the server computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1 Click **Start**→ **Network** (**Start**→ your user name→ **Network** for Windows 7).

2 Click **Network discovery and file sharing are turned off**. Network computers and devices are not visible. Click to change.

3 Click **Turn on network discovery and file sharing**.

4 Click **Yes, turn on network discovery and file sharing for all public networks**.

Disable Simple File Sharing

NOTE: This procedure is required for Windows XP, and Windows XP 64-bit Edition.

1 Click **start**→ **Control Panel**.

2 Select **Appearance and Themes**.

3 Select **Folder Options**.

4 On the **View** tab, clear the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box, and then click **OK**.

5 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.

6 Select **Performance and Maintenance**.

7 Select **Administrative Tools**.

8 Click **Local Security Policy**.

9 Click **Local Policies**→ **Security Options**.

10 Right-click **Network access: Sharing and security model for local accounts** and select **Properties**.

11 Ensure **Classic - local users authenticate as themselves** is selected.

Installing the Printer Driver

NOTE: Installation is not supported on Windows XP Home Edition, Windows Vista Home Basic, Windows Vista Home Premium, Windows Vista Home Basic 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista Home Premium 64-bit Edition, Windows 7 Starter, Windows 7 Home Basic, Windows 7 Home Premium, Windows 7 Home Basic 64-bit Edition, and Windows 7 Home Premium 64-bit Edition.

1 In the **Easy Setup Navigator** window, click **Software Installation** to launch the installation software.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.

3 Select the model name of your printer, and then click **Next**.

4 Select **Remote Installation**, and then click **Next**.

   a Enter the computer name, user ID, and password, and then click **Add**.

   b Click **Next**.

   NOTE: **Windows Security Alert** may appear on Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, or Windows 7 64-bit Edition. In this case, select **Unblock** (Allow access for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7), and then continue the procedure.

5 Select a printer from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

   NOTE: When using AutoIP, `0.0.0.0` is displayed in the installer. Before you continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

6 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.

   a Enter the printer name.

   b If you want other users on the network to access this printer, select the **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.

   c If you want to set the printer as default, select the **Set this printer as default** check box.

   d If you want to restrict color printing, select the appropriate **Dell ColorTrack** option. Enter the password when **Color-Password Enabled** is selected for **Dell ColorTrack**.

   e If you want to install the Fax Driver, select the **Fax Driver** check box.

7 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**.

   If you want to change the installation destination, click **Input** and specify new location.

8 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click the Dell supplies link for ordering supplies.

NOTE: The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To set up e-mail alerts:

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

2 Click **E-Mail Alert** link.

3 Under **E-Mail Server Settings**, enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Reply Address**, and your or key operator's e-mail address in the e-mail list box.

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

NOTE: **Connection pending until printer sends an alert** is displayed on the SMTP server until an error occurs.

Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that comes with your printer, or using Microsoft® point-and-print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use one of the Microsoft methods, some features, such as the status monitor and other printer utilities, installed with the *Drivers and Utilities* CD, may not be available.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

NOTE: You need to purchase an Ethernet cable for shared printing.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Properties**.

3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

5 Click **OK**.

If you are missing files, you are prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3 Click **Change sharing options**.

The message **Windows needs your permission to continue** appears.

4 Click **Continue**.

5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

6 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

7 Click **OK**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3 Click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.

4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

6 Click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1. Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.
2. Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.

   Check the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
4. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
5. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To confirm that the printer is properly shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers**, **Printers and Faxes**, or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The shared icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the point and print method or the peer-to-peer method.

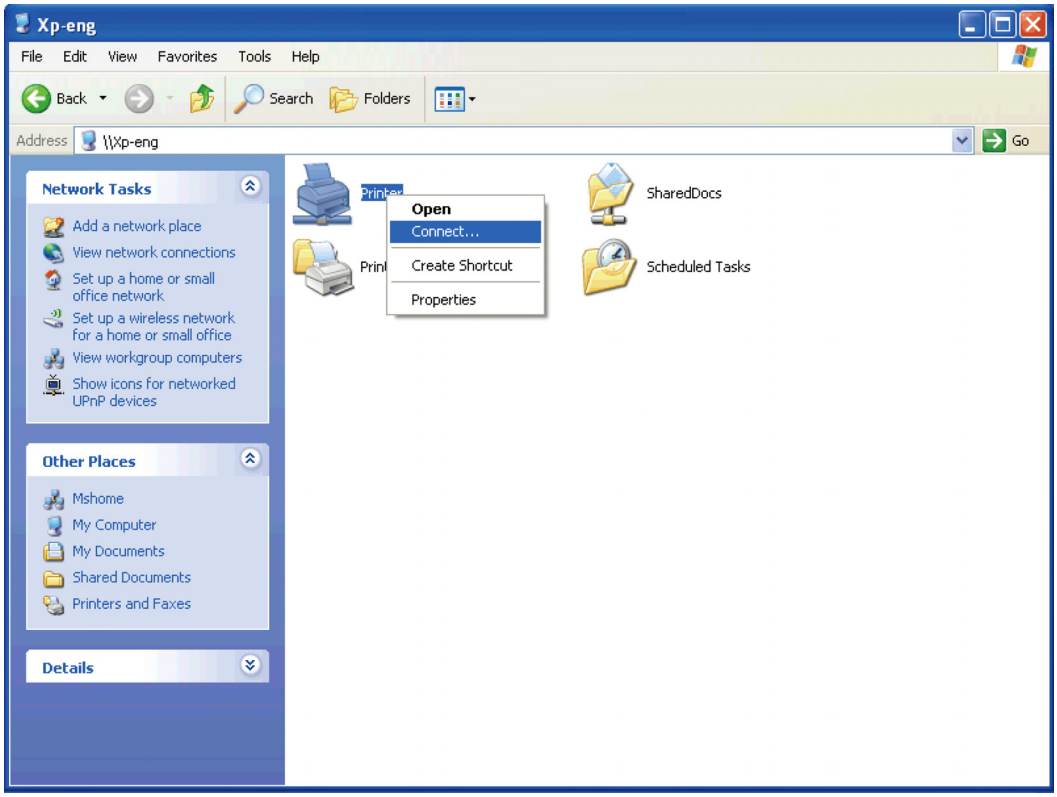
Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the printer driver.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1. On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
2. Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The copy time varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

4 Close **My Network Places**.

5 Print a test page to verify installation.

a Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

b Select the printer you just created.

c Click **File→ Properties**.

d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start→ Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.

6 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the Printers folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

7 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**.

   b Select **Printers**.

   c Right-click the printer you just created and click **Properties**.

   d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

   When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ **Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.

   b Select **Printers**.

   c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.

   d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

   When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ your user name→ **Network** (**Start**→ **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

   b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

   c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

   When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the printer driver is fully installed on each client computer. Network clients retain control of driver modifications. The client computer handles the print job processing.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

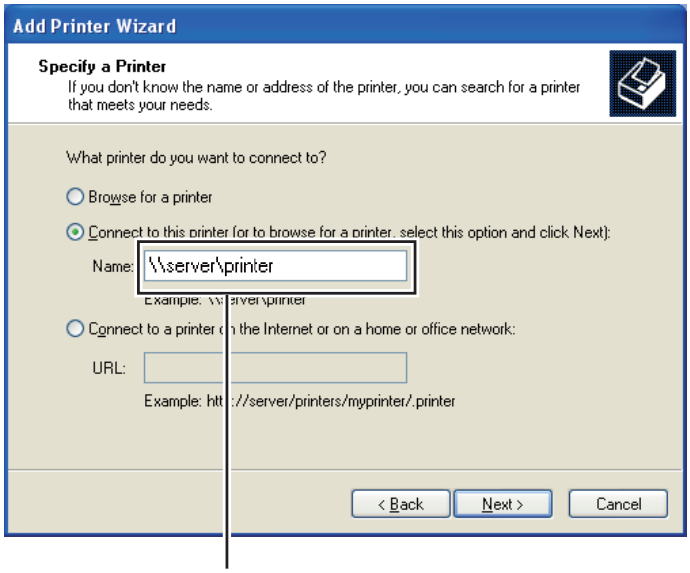
1 Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

2 Click **Add a Printer**.

3 Click **Next**.

4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, type the path to the printer in the text box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


Add Printer Wizard
Specify a Printer
If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer that meets your needs.
What printer do you want to connect to?
Browse for a printer
Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):
Name:
\\server\printer
Example:
Connect to a printer
the Internet or on a home or office network:
URL:
Example: htt
://server/printers/myprinter/.printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

If you want to verify installation, click **Yes** to print a test page.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

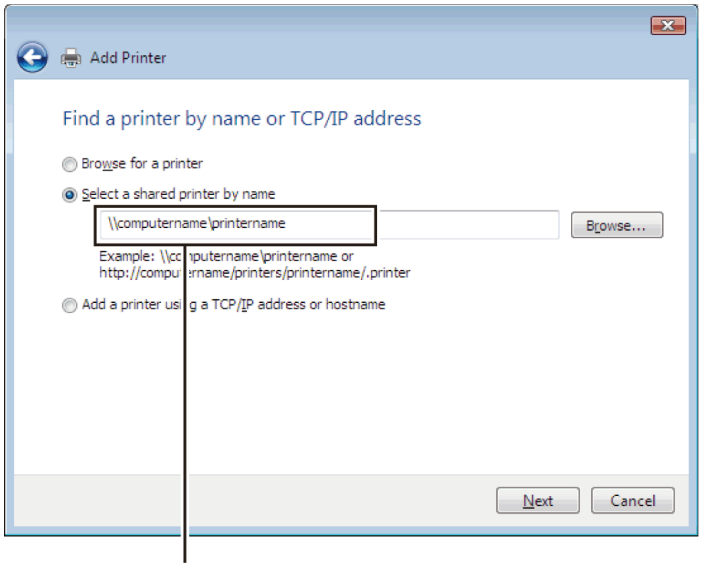
Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

4 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

5 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

6 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer**.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type the path to the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example: `\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>`

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide a path to available drivers.

4 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

5 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.

6 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer**.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: `\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>`

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

11

Installing Printer Drivers on the Macintosh Computers

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Installing the Drivers and Software

1 Run the *Drivers and Utilities* CD on the Macintosh computer.

2 Double-click the **Dell 2155 Installer** icon, and then click **Continue**.

3 When the popup dialog box prompts you for confirming the program included in the installation package, click **Continue**.

4 Click **Continue** on the **Welcome** screen.

5 Select a language for the Software License Agreement.

6 After reading the Software License Agreement, click **Continue**.

7 If you agree to the terms of the Software License Agreement, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.

8 Confirm the installation location, and then click **Continue**.

9 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.

If you want to select a custom installation, click **Customize** to select items that you want to install.

- Dell 2155 Color MFP Printer Driver
- Dell 2155 Color MFP Fax Driver
- Dell 2155 Color MFP Scan Driver
- Dell Printer Status Monitor

10 Type the administrator's name and password, and then click **OK**.

11 Click **Continue Installation** to continue the installation.

12 When the **Install Succeeded** screen appears, click **Logout** to complete installation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5 or 10.6

When Using a USB connection

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.

The printer is automatically added to your Macintosh computer.

When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Open the **System Preferences,** and click **Print & Fax**.

4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **IP**.

5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

6 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

7 Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP** for **Print Using**.

NOTE: When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

8 Click **Add**.

9 Specify the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Continue**.

10 Confirm that the printer is displayed in the **Print & Fax** dialog box.

When Using Bonjour

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Open the **System Preferences,** and click **Print & Fax**.

4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default**.

5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

6 **Name** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

7 Click **Add**.

8 Specify the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Continue**.

9 Confirm that the printer is displayed in the **Print & Fax** dialog box.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11

When Using a USB Connection

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE: You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select the printer connected via USB from the Printer list.

7 **Name** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

8 Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE: You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

7 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

8 Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP** for **Print Using**.

NOTE: When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

NOTE: Entry of Location is optional.

9 Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Start the **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE: You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

7 **Name** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

8 Click **Add**.

9 Specify the options installed to the printer, and then click **Continue**.

10 Confirm that the printer is displayed on the **Printer** list dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.3.9

When Using a USB connection

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE: You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Select **USB** from the menu.

The **Printer Model** is automatically selected.

6 Click **Add.**

When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE: You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add** in the **Printer List** dialog box.

5 Select **IP Printing** from the menu.

6 Select **LPD/LPR** for **Printer Type**.

7 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

8 Select **Dell** for **Printer Model,** and select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP**.

NOTE: When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

9 Click **Add**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using Rendezvous (Bonjour)

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE: You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add** in the **Printer List** dialog box.

5 Select **Rendezvous** from the menu.

6 Select **Dell** for **Printer Model**, and select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP**.

7 Click **Add**.

Configuring Settings

All the optional accessories are verified as installed.

Mac OS X 10.5 or 10.6

1 Open the **System Preferences,** and click **Print & Fax**.

2 Select the printer in the **Printer Name** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.

3 Select **Driver,** and select the options that have been installed in the printer, and then click **OK**.

Mac OS X 10.3.9 or 10.4.11

1 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

2 Select the printer in the **Printer List** dialog box, and click **Show Info**.

3 Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed in the printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

12

Installing Printer Drivers on the Linux Computers (CUPS)

This section provides information for installing or setting up the printer driver with CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) on Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 4 WS/5 Client or SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Operation on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 WS/5 Client

Setup Overview

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 WS/5 Client:

1. Install the printer driver.
2. Set up the print queue.
3. Specify the default queue.
4. Specify the printing options.

Installing the Printer Driver

NOTICE: Before you install the printer driver on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, confirm that Update 5 or higher is applied to your operating system. Consult your Linux distributor for the upgrade of your system.

1. Double-click **Dell-2155-Color-MFP-x.x-x.i686.rpm** in the *Drivers and Utilities* CD.
2. Type the administrator's password.
3. Click **Continue** in the **Completed System Preparation** window.

   Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2 Click **Administration**.

3 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.

4 Click **Add Printer.**

Type the name of the printer in the **Name** box in the **Add New Printer** window, and click **Continue**.

You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.

For network connections:

a Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Device** menu, and click **Continue**.

b Type the IP address of the printer in **Device URI.**

c Format: `lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx` (the IP address of the printer)

For USB connections with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 WS:

a Select **USB Printer #1** from the **Device** menu.

For USB connections with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Client:

a Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP USB #1** or **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP** from the **Device** menu.

5 Select **Dell** from the **Make** menu, and click **Continue**.

6 Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP** from the **Model** menu, and click **Continue**.

The message **Printer xxx has been added successfully.** appears.

The setup is complete.

Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue, you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

Setting the Default Queue

1 Select **Applications→ System Tools→ Terminal**.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lpadmin -d (Type the queue name)
```

Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode or double-sided printing.

1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2 Click **Manage Printers**.

3 Click **Configure Printer** of the queue for which you want to specify the printing options.

4 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.

5 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.

The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete.

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

1 Select **Applications→ System Tools→ Terminal**.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Type the print queue name)
```

3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.

4 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -e Dell-2155cdn-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10

Setup Overview

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10:

1 Install the printer driver.

2 Set up the print queue.

3 Specify the default queue.

4 Specify the printing options.

Installing the Printer Driver

1 Double-click **Dell-2155-Color-MFP-x.x-x.i686.rpm** in the *Drivers and Utilities* CD.

2 Type the administrator password, and click **Install**.

Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

1 Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the administrator password.

YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

4 **Printer setup: Autodetected printers** is activated.

For network connections:

a Click **Add**.

b Select **Network Printers** as **Printer Type**, and click **Next**.

c Select the **Print via LPD-Style Network Server** as **Printer Type**, and click **Next**.

d Type the IP address of the printer in **Host name of the printer server**.

e Type the name of the printer queue in **Name of the remote queue**, and click **Next**.

f Type the printer name in **Name for printing**.

NOTE: The **Description of Printer** and **Location of Printer** do not have to be specified.

g Select the **Do Local Filtering** check box, and click **Next**.

h Select **DELL** as **Select manufacturer**. Select **2155cdn Color MFP** as **Select Model**, and click **Next**.

i Confirm the settings in **Edit configuration**, and click **OK**.

For USB connections:

a Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP on USB (//Dell/2155cdn%20Color%20MFP or /dev/usblp*)** as **Available are**, and click **Configure…**.

b Confirm the settings in **Edit configuration**, and click **OK**.

5 Click **Finish**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

Setting the Default Queue

1 To activate the **Printer setup: Autodetected printers**, do the following.

   a Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

   b Type the administrator password.

   YaST Control Center is activated.

   c Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

2 Select the printer you want to set to default on the **Printer Configuration**, and select **Set default** in **Other button menu**.

3 Click **Finish**.

Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode or double-sided printing.

1 Open a web browser.

2 Type **http://localhost:631/admin** in **Location**, and press the <Enter> key.

3 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.

   The **CUPS** window appears.

NOTE: Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator."

4 Click **Manage Printers**.

5 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

You must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

1. Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **Konsole** on the Application Browser.
2. Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lppasswd -g sys -a root
(Type the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password prompt.)
(Retype the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password again prompt.)
```

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

1. Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **Konsole** on the Application Browser.
2. Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Type the printer queue name)
```

3. Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
4. Type the following command in the terminal window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -e Dell-2155cdn-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

Setup Overview

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11:

1 Install the printer driver.

2 Set up the print queue.

3 Specify the default queue.

4 Specify the printing options.

Installing the Printer Driver

1 Double-click **Dell-2155-Color-MFP-x.x-x.i686.rpm** in the *Drivers and Utilities* CD.

2 Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.

Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

1 Select **Computer→ More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the administrator password.

YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For network connections:

a Click **Add**.

The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.

b Click **Connection Wizard**.

The **Connection Wizard** dialog box opens.

c Select **Line Printer Daemon (LPD) Protocol** from **Access Network Printer or Printserver Box via**.

d Type the IP address of the printer in **IP Address or Host Name:**.

e Select **Dell** in the **Select the printer manufacturer:** drop-down menu.

f Click **OK**.

The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box appear.

g Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP vx.x [Dell/Dell_2155cdn_Color_MFP.ppd.gz]** from the **Search for Drivers:** list.

NOTE: You can specify the printer name in **Set Name:**.

h Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

For USB connections:

a Click **Add**.

The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.

The printer name is displayed in the **Determine Connection** list.

b Select **Dell 2155cdn Color MFP vx.x. [Dell/Dell_2155cdn_Color_MFP.ppd.gz]** from the **Search for Drivers:** list.

NOTE: You can specify the printer name in **Set Name:**.

Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

Setting the Default Queue

You can set the default queue when you add the printer.

1 Select **Computer→ More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the administrator password.

YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Cente**r, and select **Printer**.

The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

4 Click **Edit**.

A dialog box to modify the specified queue opens.

5 Confirm that the printer you want to set is selected in the **Connection** list.

6 Select the **Default Printer** check box.

7 Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode or double-sided printing.

1 Open a web browser.

2 Type **http://localhost:631/admin** in **Location**, and press the <Enter> key.

3 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.

The **CUPS** window appears.

NOTE: Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator."

4 Click **Manage Printers**.

5 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

You must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

1. Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.
2. Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lppasswd -g sys -a root
(Type the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password prompt.)
(Retype the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password again prompt.)
```

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

1. Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.
2. Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Type the printer queue name)
```

3. Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
4. Type the following command in the terminal window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
rpm -e Dell-2155cdn-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using Your Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

13

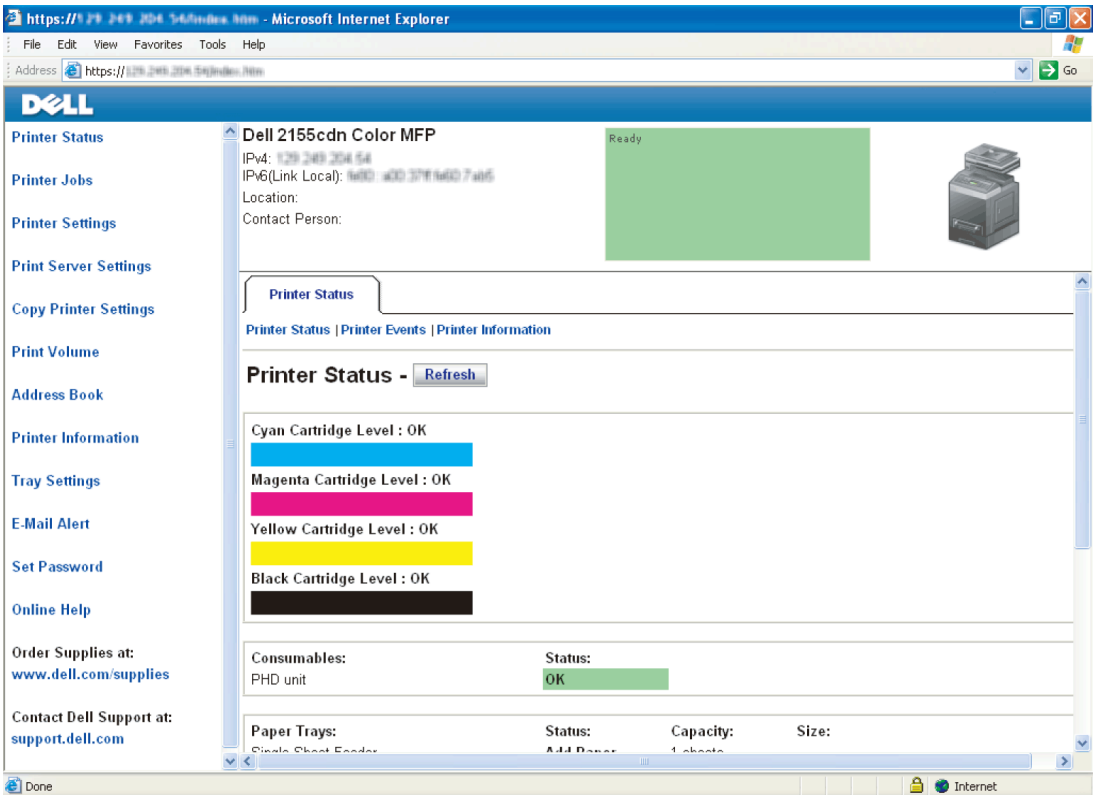
Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Overview

NOTE: This web tool is not available unless the printer is connected to a network using a network cable or the wireless printer adapter.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

One of the features of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends e-mail to you or the key operator when the printer needs supplies or intervention.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To fill out printer inventory reports requiring the asset tag number of all the printers in your area, use the **Printer Information** feature in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Enter the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** feature also allows you to change the printer settings and keep track of printing trends. If you are a network administrator, you can copy the printer settings to one or all printers on the network using your web browser.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address.

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address."

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page. The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address."

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** consists of the following menus:

- Printer Status
- Printer Jobs
- Printer Settings
- Print Server Settings
- Copy Printer Settings
- Print Volume
- Address Book
- Printer Information
- Tray Settings
- E-Mail Alert
- Set Password
- Online Help
- Order Supplies at:
- Contact Dell Support at:

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to get immediate feedback on the printer supply status. When a toner cartridge is running low, click the order supplies link on the first screen to order a new toner cartridge.

Printer Jobs

Use the **Printer Jobs** menu to contain information on the **Job List** page and **Completed Jobs** page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to change the printer settings and to view the settings in the operator panel remotely.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to change the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communications.

Copy Printer Settings

Use the **Copy Printer Settings** menu to copy the printer settings to another printer or printers on the network by typing the IP address of each printer.

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** menu to check the history of printing, such as paper usage, the types of jobs being printed, limit to which users can use the color mode, and the maximum number of pages they can print.

Address Book

Use the **Address Book** menu to view or edit the e-mail address, server address, and fax number entries in the Address Book, or to register new entries.

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Printer Information

Use the **Printer Information** menu to get information on service calls, inventory reports, or the status of current memory and engine code levels.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to get information about the paper type and size for each tray.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E-Mail Alert

Use the **E-Mail Alert** menu to receive e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention. To be notified, type your name or the name of the key operator in the e-mail list box. Set **E-mail Alert** also when using the Scan to E-mail feature.

Set Password

Use the **Set Password** menu to lock the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** with a password so that other users do not inadvertently change the printer settings that you have selected.

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Online Help

Click **Online Help** to visit the Dell Support website.

Order Supplies at:

www.dell.com/supplies

Contact Dell Support at:

support.dell.com

Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool0

Ensure that you activate JavaScript in your browser before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

It is recommended that you configure the environment settings of your web browser before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

NOTE: The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** pages may be displayed unreadable if the pages were configured by the language different from the language of your web browser.

Setting Up From Web Browser

It is recommended that you configure both the environment settings of your web browser and the operator panel before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Internet Explorer® 6.0, Internet Explorer 7.0, Internet Explorer 8.0

Setting Up the Display Language

1. Select **Internet Options** from **Tools** on the menu bar.
2. Select **Languages** in the **General** tab.
3. Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language** list.

   For example:

   - **Italian (Italy) [it-IT]**
   - **Spanish (Traditional Sort) [es-ES tradnl]**
   - **German (Germany) [de-DE]**
   - **French (France) [fr-FR]**
   - **English (United States) [en-US]**
   - **Danish [da-DK]**
   - **Dutch (Netherlands) [nl-NL]**
   - **Norwegian (Bokmal) [no]**
   - **Swedish [sv-SE]**

Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

1. Select **Internet Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Click **LAN Settings** under **Local Area Network (LAN) Settings** in the **Connections** tab.
3. Do either of the following:
   - Clear the **Use a proxy server for your LAN** check box under **Proxy server**.
   - Click **Advanced**, and then specify the IP address of the printer in the **Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with** field under **Exceptions**.

After setting the language and proxy, type <http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/> (the IP address of the printer) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Firefox 2.0 or Later

Setting Up the Display Language

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Click **Advanced**.
3. If you are using Firefox 2.0, click **Choose** in the **General** tab. If you are using Firefox 3.0, click **Choose** in the **Content** tab.
4. Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Languages in order of preference** list.enu.

   For example:

   - **English** [**en**] or **English/United States** [**en-us**]
   - **Italian** [**it**]
   - **Spanish** [**es**]
   - **German** [**de**]
   - **French** [**fr**]
   - **Dutch** [**nl**]
   - **Norwegian** [**no**]
   - **Swedish** [**sv**]
   - **Danish** [**da**]

Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu
2. Click **Advanced** tab.
3. Click **Network** on the **Options** dialog box.
4. Click **Connection** → **Settings**.
5. If you are using Firefox 2.0, do one of the following:
   - Select the **Direct connection to the Internet** check box.
   - Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.
   - Select the **Manual proxy configuration** check box, and then enter the IP address of the printer in the **No Proxy for** edit box.
   - Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL** check box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you are using Firefox 3.0, do one of the following:

- Select the **No Proxy** check box, if you do not want to use a proxy.
- Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.
- Select the **Manual proxy configuration** check box, and then enter a hostname and a port number if you have a list of one or more proxy servers. If you have an IP address that does not use a proxy, enter the IP address of the printer in the **No Proxy for** edit box.
- Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL** check box.

After setting the language and proxy, type <http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/> (the IP address of the printer) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Setting Up From Operator Panel

You can launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** only when **EWS** is set to **Enable** (the factory default) on the operator panel. Confirm the operator panel setting if you cannot launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Understanding the Printer Menus."

Page Display Format

The layout of the page is divided into three sections listed below:

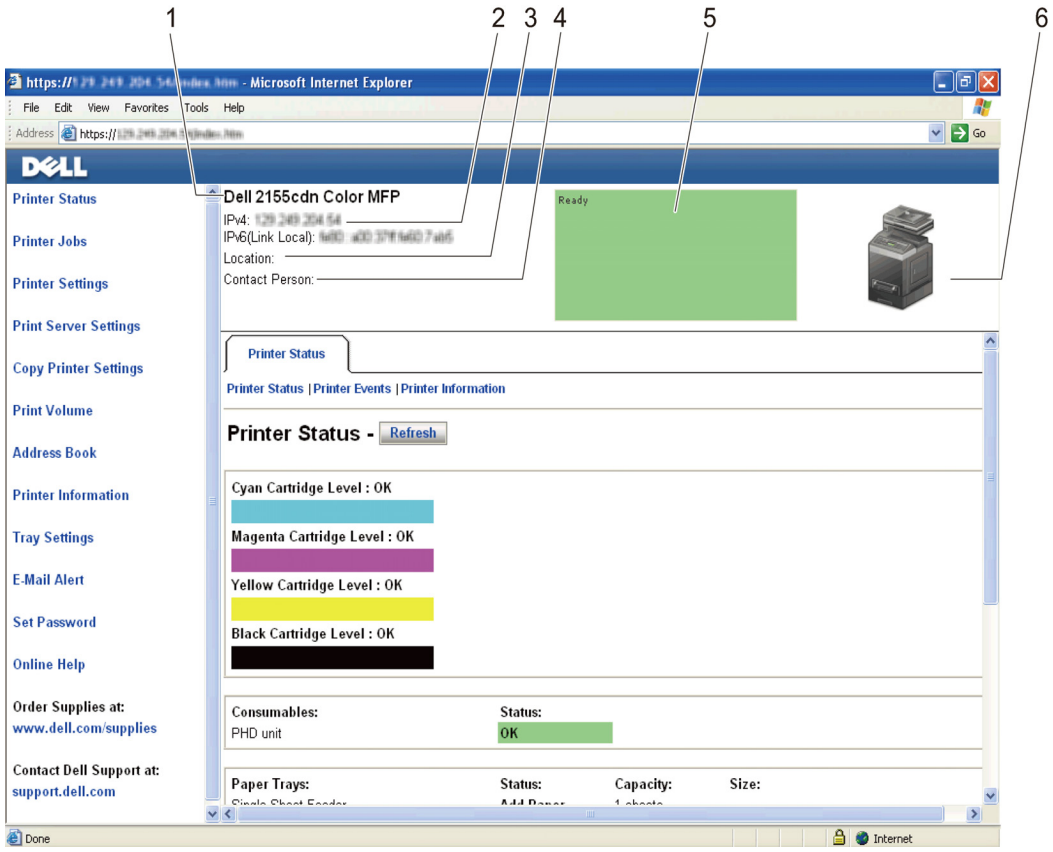
- Top Frame
- Left Frame
- Right Frame

Top Frame

The top frame is located at the top of all pages. When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is activated, the current status and specifications of the printer are displayed in the top frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the top frame.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



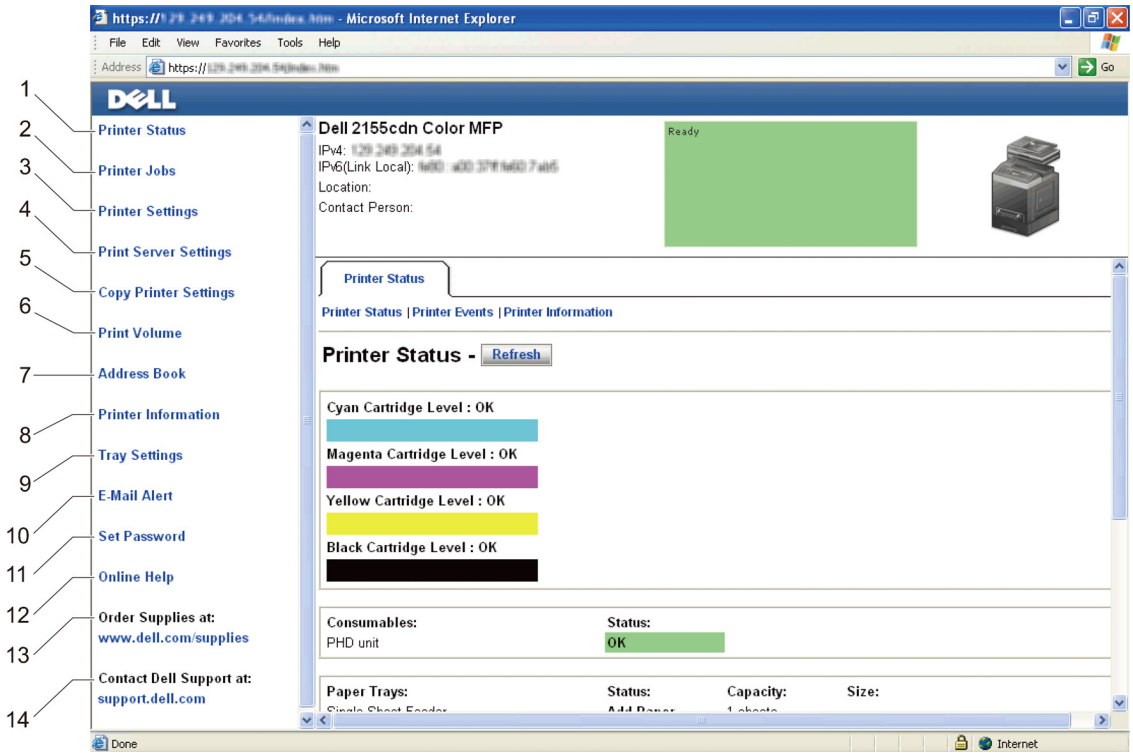
1	**Dell 2155cdn Color MFP**	Displays the product name of the printer.
2	**IPv4**	Displays the IP address of the printer.
	IPv6	
3	**Location**	Displays location of the printer. The location can be changed in the **Basic Information** section on the **Print Server Settings** page.
4	**Contact Person**	Displays the name of the printer administrator. The name can be changed in the **Basic Information** section on the **Print Server Settings** page.
5	**Event Panel**	Displays the indicator for the condition of the printer.
6	**Machine image**	Shows the bitmap image of the printer. The **Printer Status** menu appears in the right frame when you click on the image.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Left Frame

The left frame is located on the left side of all the pages. The menu titles displayed in the left frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the left frame.



1	**Printer Status**	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
2	**Printer Jobs**	Links to the **Printer Jobs** menu.
3	**Printer Settings**	Links to the **Printer Settings Report** menu.
4	**Print Server Settings**	Links to the **Print Server Reports** menu.
5	**Copy Printer Settings**	Links to the **Copy Printer Settings** menu.
6	**Print Volume**	Links to the **Print Volume** menu.
7	**Address Book**	Links to the **E-Mail Address** menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

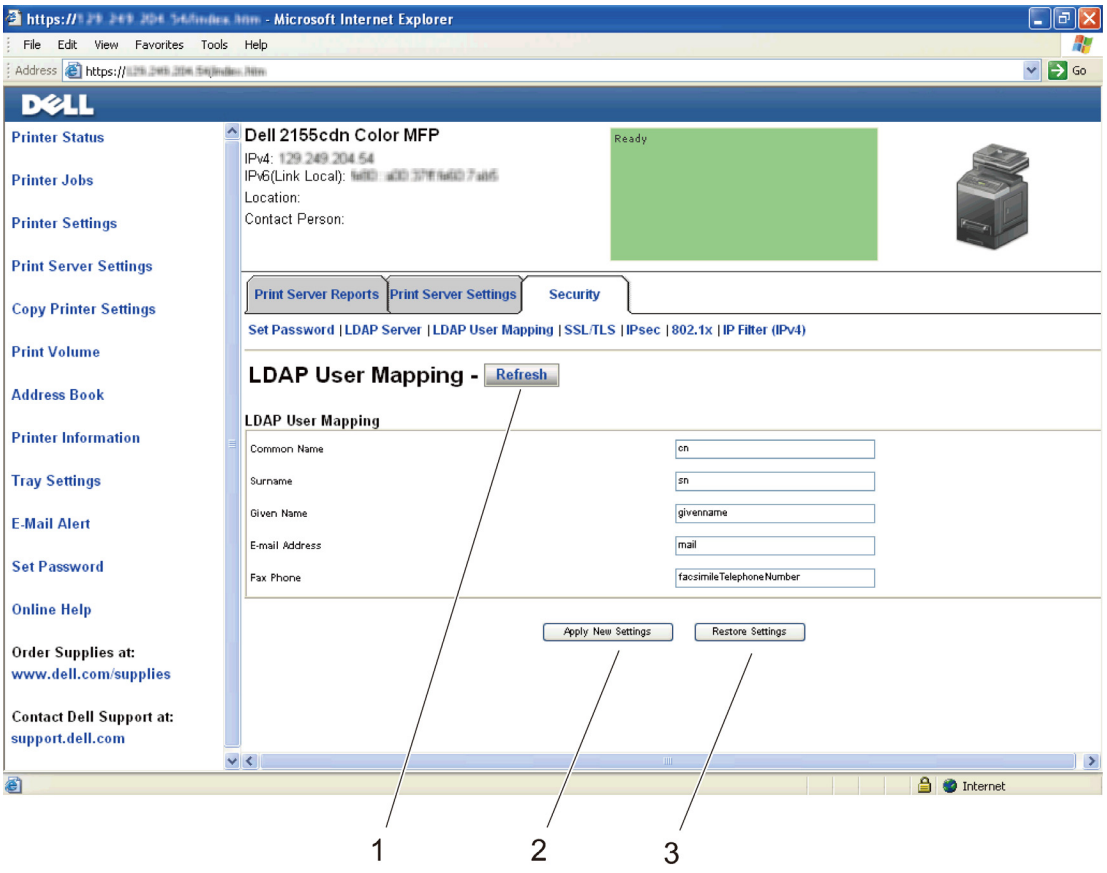
8	**Printer Information**	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
9	**Tray Settings**	Links to the **Tray Settings** menu.
10	**E-Mail Alert**	Links to the **Print Server Settings** menu.
11	**Set Password**	Links to the **Security** menu.
12	**Online Help**	Links to the Dell Support website.
13	**Order Supplies at:**	Links to the Dell web page.
14	**Contact Dell Support at:**	Links to the Dell support page web address: **http://support.dell.com/**

Right Frame

The right frame is located on the right side of all the pages. The contents of the right frame correspond to the menu that you select in the left frame. For details on the items displayed in the right frame, see "Details of the Menu Items."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Buttons in the Right Frame



1	**Refresh** Button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the right frame.
2	**Apply New Settings** Button	Submits new settings made on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to the printer. The new settings replace the old settings of the printer.
3	**Restore Settings** Button	Restores the old settings that existed before any changes were made. New settings will not be submitted to the printer.

Changing the Settings of the Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. When you access these menus, the authentication window appears on the screen. Type a user name and password for the printer administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the **Set Password** page in the **Security** menu. The user name cannot be changed. See "Set Password" for more information.

Details of the Menu Items

"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"
		"Printer Events"
		"Printer Information"
"Printer Jobs"	"Printer Jobs"	"Job List"
		"Completed Jobs"

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"	"Menu Settings"
		"Reports"
	"Printer Settings"	"System Settings"
		"USB Settings"
		"PCL Settings"
		"PDF Settings"
		"Secure Settings"
		"Copy Defaults"
		"Copy Color Balance"
		"Copy Settings"
		"Fax Defaults"
		"Fax Settings"
		"Scan Defaults"
		"Print from USB Defaults"
	"Printer Maintenance"	"Paper Density"
		"Adjust BTR"
		"Adjust Fuser"
		"Auto Registration Adjustment"
		"Color Registration Adjustments"
		"Clean Developer"
		"Reset Defaults"
		"Initialize PrintMeter"
		"Storage"*1
		"Non-Dell Toner"
		"Adjust Altitude"
		"Clock Settings"
		"Web Link Customization"

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"
		"E-Mail Alert Setup Page"
	"Print Server Settings"	"Basic Information"
		"Port Settings"
		"TCP/IP"
		"SMB"
		"E-Mail Alert"
		"Bonjour (mDNS)"
		"SNMP"
		"Scan To PC"
		"LLTD"
		"Wireless LAN"*2
		"Reset Print Server"
	"Security"	"Set Password"
		"LDAP Server"
		"LDAP User Mapping"
		"SSL/TLS"
		"IPsec"
		"802.1x"*3
		"IP Filter (IPv4)"
"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"
		"Copy Printer Settings Report"
"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"
		"Dell ColorTrack"
"Address Book"	"E-Mail Address"	"E-Mail Address - Top Page"
		"E-Mail Group - Top Page"
		"Default Setup"
	"Server Address"	"Server Address - Top Page"
	"Phone Book"	"FAX Speed Dial - Top Page"
		"FAX Group - Top Page"
"Tray Settings"	"Tray Settings"	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 This item is available only when RAM disk is enabled.

*2 This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

*3 This item is available only when the printer is connected using LAN cable.

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the printer.

The following pages are displayed in the **Printer Status** menu.

Printer Status

Purpose:

To check the status of the consumables, trays, and covers.

Values:

Cyan Cartridge Level **Magenta Cartridge Level** **Yellow Cartridge Level** **Black Cartridge Level**	**OK**	Indicates that there is enough amount of toner for use.
	Replace Soon	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced soon.
	Replace Now	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced now.
Consumables Status	**OK**	Indicates that the status of PHD unit is OK for use.
	Replace Soon	Indicates that the PHD unit needs to be replaced soon.
	Replace Now	Indicates that the PHD unit needs to be replaced now.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Paper Trays	**Status**	**OK**	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
		Paper Low	Indicates that paper is running low in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
	Size		Displays the size of paper in the tray.
Output Tray	**Status**	**OK**	Indicates that the tray is available.
		Full	Indicates that the tray is not available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
Cover	**Status**	**Closed**	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of the printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed.

Printer Events

Purpose:

When faults occur, such as *Out of Paper* or *Cover is Open*, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the **Printer Events** page.

Values:

Location	Displays the location where a fault occurred.
Details	Displays the details of the fault.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To verify the printer details such as the hardware configuration and software version. This page can also be displayed by clicking on the **Printer Information** tab in the left frame.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number		Displays Dell service tag number.
Express Service Code		Displays Dell express service code.
Asset Tag Number		Displays the asset tag number of the printer.
Printer Serial Number		Displays the serial number of the printer.
Memory Capacity		Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed		Displays the processing speed.
Printer Revision Levels	**Firmware Version**	Displays the revision date (revision level).
	Network Firmware Version	Displays the revision date (revision level).

Printer Jobs

The **Printer Jobs** menu contains information on the **Job List** and **Completed Jobs** pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or the print jobs.

Job List

Purpose:

To confirm the print jobs that are being processed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job being printed.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Job Status	Displays the status of the job being printed.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the print job was submitted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Completed Jobs

Purpose:

To check the completed jobs. Up to the last 20 jobs are displayed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Output Result	Displays the status of the job.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Impression Number	Displays the total number of pages for the job.
No. of Sheets	Displays the total number of sheets for the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to display the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Settings**, and **Printer Maintenance** tabs and to configure the printer settings.

The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the right frame.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab includes the **Menu Settings** and **Reports** pages.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of the operator panel menus.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System Settings	**Power Saver Time - Sleep**	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
	Power Saver Wake Up - OffHook Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when **OnHook** is **Off**.
	Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Fault Time-Out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Base Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel screen is returned to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. **Off** indicates that all the tones are disabled.
mm / inch	Displays the measurement unit that is used on the operator panel screen.
Default Print Paper Size	Displays the default print paper size.
Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Print ID	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
	Print Text	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
	Banner Sheet Insert Position[*1]	Displays where to insert a banner sheet in the output paper.
	Banner Sheet Specify Tray[*1]	Displays the tray to feed a banner sheet.
	RAM Disk[*2]	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the **Secure Print**, and **Proof Print** features.
	Substitute Tray	Displays if paper of another size has to be used when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size setting for the current job.
	Letterhead Duplex Mode[*3]	Displays whether to print both sides on letterhead.
	Low Toner Alert Msg	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.
	Panel Language	Displays the language used on the operator panel screen.
USB Settings	**USB Port**	Displays whether to enable the USB interface.
PCL Settings	**Paper Tray**	Displays the paper input tray.
	Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting.
	Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper.
	Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper.
	Orientation	Displays how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
	Font	Displays the selected font from the list of registered fonts.
	Symbol Set	Displays a symbol set for the specified font.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Font Size	Displays the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
	Font Pitch	Displays the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
	Form Line	Displays the number of lines in a page.
	Quantity	Displays the number of copies to print.
	Image Enhancement	Displays whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
	Hex Dump	Displays whether to enable the Hex Dump feature.
	Draft Mode	Displays whether to print in the draft mode.
	Line Termination	Displays whether to set the line termination.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
PDF Settings	**Quantity**	Displays the number of copies to print.
	2 Sided[*3]	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Print Mode	Displays the print mode setting.
	Collated	Displays whether to sort a job.
	Output Size	Displays the output paper size.
	Layout	Displays the output layout.
	Output Color	Displays the color mode setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Secure Settings	**Panel Lock Set**	Displays whether to lock `Admin Menu` with a password.
	Copy	Displays whether to lock the Copy service with a password.
	Fax	Displays whether to lock the Fax service with a password.
	Scan	Displays whether to lock the Scan service with a password.
	Print from USB	Displays whether to lock the Print from USB service with a password.
	Secure Receive Set	Displays whether a password is required to receive faxes.
	Login Error-Attempts	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.
Secure Settings - Print/Copy/Fax/ Scan	**Set Available Time**	Displays whether to set the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services, respectively.
	Start Time	Displays the start time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services, respectively.
	End Time	Displays the end time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services, respectively.
	Recurrence	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Copy Defaults	**Color**	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	SSF Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the single sheet feeder.
	SSF Paper Type	Displays the paper type settings of the single sheet feeder.
	Collated	Displays whether to sort a copy job.
	Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Document Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	Original Type	Displays the type of the original.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default copy density.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Color Saturation	Displays the default color saturation level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Copy Color Balance	**Yellow Low Dens.**	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Yellow Medium Dens.	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Dens.	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Dens.	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Magenta Medium Dens.	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Dens.	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Dens.	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Medium Dens.	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Dens.	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Dens.	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Medium Dens.	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Dens.	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
Copy Settings	**2 Sided**[*3]	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Multiple-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax Defaults	**Resolution**	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Start	Displays the fax transmission start time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax Settings	**Receive Mode**	Displays the fax receiving mode.
	Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
	Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
	Line Type	Displays the line type; PSTN or PBX.
	Tone/Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
	Resend Delay	Displays the interval between re-send attempts.
	Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts to make if the destination fax number is busy.
	Redial Delay	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
	Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
	Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
	Remote Receive Tone	Displays the 2-digit remote receive code when **Remote Receive** is **On**.
	Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
	Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
Duplex Print[*3]	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Forward Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.
Modem Speed	Displays the modem speed.
Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to automatically print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scan Defaults	**Scan To Network**	Displays whether to save scanned documents on a network server or on a computer.
	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Black & White Button	Displays whether to scan in black and white or in grayscale when **Black & White** is selected for a color mode.
	Color Button	Displays whether to scan in color or in color (Photo) when **Color** is selected for a color mode.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Document Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scan.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the selected TIFF file format; TIFF V6 or TTN2.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max Email Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
	Email From Field	Displays whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print from USB Defaults	**Color**	Displays whether to print in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	SSF Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the single sheet feeder.
	SSF Paper Type	Displays the paper type settings of the single sheet feeder.
	2 Sided[*3]	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Layout	Displays the output layout.
Paper Density	**Plain**	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust BTR	**Plain**	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for thick plain paper.
	Covers	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for thick cover paper.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for labels.
	Coated	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for thick coated paper.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-6 to 6) for recycled paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjust Fuser	**Plain**	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for thick plain paper.
	Covers	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for thick cover paper.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for labels.
	Coated	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for thick coated paper.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser (-2 to 2) for recycled paper.
Auto Registration Adjustment		Displays whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Clock Settings	**Date Format**	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; 24H or 12H.
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Web Link Customization	**Select Reorder URL**	Displays a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
	Regular	Displays the regular URL (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:.**
	Premier	Displays the premier URL (**http://premier.dell.com**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.
Dell ColorTrack	**ColorTrack Mode**	Displays whether to enable the ColorTrack.
	No Account User Print	Displays whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.
	ColorTrack Error Report	Displays whether to print the error report on the ColorTrack mode.
Tray Settings	**Tray 1 Paper Size**	Displays the paper size setting of the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Display Popup	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 2 Paper Size[*4]	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Paper Type[*4]	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Display Popup[*4]	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed to Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

*2 This item is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

*3 This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

*4 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

Reports

Purpose:

To print various types of reports and lists.

Values:

System Settings	Click the **Start** button to print the System Settings page.
Panel Settings	Click the **Start** button to print the Panel Settings page.
PCL Fonts List	Click the **Start** button to print the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) Fonts List.
PCL Macro List	Click the **Start** button to print the PCL Macro List.
PDF Fonts List	Click the **Start** button to print the PDF Fonts List.
Job History	Click the **Start** button to print the Job History report.
Error History	Click the **Start** button to print the Error History report.
Print Meter	Click the **Start** button to print the Print Meter report.
Color Test Page	Click the **Start** button to print the Color Test Page.
Protocol Monitor	Click the **Start** button to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Speed Dial	Click the **Start** button to print the Speed Dial report.
Address Book	Click the **Start** button to print the Address Book report.
Server Address	Click the **Start** button to print the Server Address report.
Fax Activity	Click the **Start** button to print the Fax Activity report.
Fax Pending	Click the **Start** button to print the Fax Pending report.
Stored Documents[*1]	Click the **Start** button to print the Stored Documents list.

*1 This item is available only when RAM disk is enabled

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer Settings

The **Printer Settings** tab includes **System Settings**, **USB Settings**, **PCL Settings**, **PDF Settings**, **Secure Settings**, **Copy Defaults**, **Copy Color Balance**, **Copy Settings**, **Fax Defaults**, **Fax Settings, Scan Defaults**, and **Print from USB Defaults** pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic printer settings.

Values:

Power Saver Time - Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
Power Saver Wake Up - OffHook Wake Up	Sets whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when **OnHook** is set to **Off**.
Auto Reset	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Fault Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
Job Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
Control Panel Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct, or disables the tone.
Invalid Key Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect, or disables the tone.
Machine Ready Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready, or disables the tone.
Copy Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Job Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Fault Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally, or disables the tone.
Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs, or disables the tone.
Out of Paper Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper, or disables the tone.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low, or disables the tone.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear, or disables the tone.
Base Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel screen returns to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu, or disables the tone.
All Tones	Sets the volume of all the alert tones, or disables all the tones.
mm / inch	Sets the measurement unit to be used on the operator panel screen as either mm or inches.
Default Print Paper Size	Sets the default print paper size.
Auto Log Print	Specifies if a job history needs to be printed after every 20 jobs.
Print ID	Sets where to print the user ID on the output paper.
Print Text	Sets whether the printer outputs PDL data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position[*1]	Sets where to insert a banner sheet in the output.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray[*1]	Sets from which tray a banner sheet is fed.
RAM Disk[*2]	Sets whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print and Store Print features.
Substitute Tray	Sets whether to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Letterhead Duplex Mode[*3]	Sets whether to print on both sides of letterhead.
Low Toner Alert Msg	Alerts you if the toner is low.
Panel Language	Used to set the language on the operator panel.

[*1] This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed to Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

[*2] This item is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

[*3] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

USB Settings

Purpose:

To change USB settings on your printer.

Values:

USB Port	Enables the USB interface on your printer.

PCL Settings

Purpose:

To change the PCL settings.

Values:

Paper Tray	Sets the paper input tray.
Paper Size	Sets the paper size.
Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper. The available range is from 127 mm (5.0 inch) to 355 mm (14.0 inch).
Custom Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper. The available range is from 77 mm (3.0 inch) to 215 mm (8.5 inch).
Orientation	Sets how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
Font	Sets the font from the list of registered fonts.
Symbol Set	Sets a symbol set for the specified font.
Font Size	Sets the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
Font Pitch	Sets the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Form Line	Sets the number of lines in a page.
Quantity	Sets the number of copies to print.
Image Enhancement	Sets whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
Hex Dump	Sets whether to help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.
Draft Mode	Sets whether to print in the draft mode.
Line Termination	Sets how to handle line terminations.
Default Color	Sets the print color mode as **Color** or **Black**. This setting is used for print jobs without a specified color print mode.

PDF Settings

Purpose:

To change the PDF settings.

Values:

Quantity	Sets the number of copies.
2 Sided[*1]	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Print Mode	Sets a print mode.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.
Collated	Sets whether to sort the output.
Output Size	Sets the output paper size.
Layout	Sets the output layout.
Output Color	Sets the output color.

[*1] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Secure Settings

Panel Lock

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Purpose:

To set a limited access to `Admin Menu` with a password, and to set or change the password.

Set the password of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Enables/Disables password protection for the Admin Menu.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Admin Menu.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

NOTE: This menu sets a password to lock the operator panel. When you change the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** on the left frame and set the password.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To specify whether to lock the Copy, Scan, and Fax services with a password, and to set or change the password.

Set the password of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Values:

Copy	Sets whether to lock the Copy service with a password.
Fax	Sets whether to lock the Fax service with a password.
Scan	Sets whether to lock the Scan service with a password.
Print from USB	Sets whether to lock the Print from USB service with a password.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print from USB services.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

Secure Receive

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Purpose:

Allows you to password protect all the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

Set the password of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Enables/Disables password protection for all incoming faxes.
New Password	Sets a password for incoming faxes.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

Login Error

Purpose:

To specify how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.

Values:

Login Attempts	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.

Set Available Time - Print/Copy/Fax/Scan

Purpose:

To specify the time to enable the secure setting for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services.

Values:

Set Available Time	Allows you to set the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services.
Start Time	Sets the start time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

End Time	Sets the end time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan services.
Recurrence	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.

Secure Job Expiration

NOTE: Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

Expiration Mode	Allows you to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the optional 512 MB memory module.
Expiration Time	Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the optional 512 MB memory module.
Recurrence	Sets the period to repeat the setting.
Weekly Settings	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.
Monthly Settings	Sets the day of the month to repeat the setting.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.
SSF Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the single sheet feeder.
SSF Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the single sheet feeder.
Collated	Sets whether to sort a copy job.
Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the custom reduction/enlargement ratio.
Document Size	Sets the paper size of the original.
Original Type	Sets the type of the original.
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default copy density.
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Color Saturation	Adjusts the saturation of colors to make the colors lighter or darker than the original.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the background suppression level.

Copy Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the copy color balance.

Values:

Yellow Low Dens.	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
Yellow Medium Dens.	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
Yellow High Dens.	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
Magenta Low Dens.	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
Magenta Medium Dens.	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
Magenta High Dens.	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
Cyan Low Dens.	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
Cyan Medium Dens.	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
Cyan High Dens.	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
Black Low Dens.	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
Black Medium Dens.	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
Black High Dens.	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

Copy Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Copy settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

2 Sided[*1]	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Multiple-Up	**Off**[*]	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified for **Reduce/Enlarge**.
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	

[*1] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resolution	**Standard***	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution.
	Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default density to fax your documents lighter or darker.	
Delayed Start	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.	

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Fax settings.

NOTE: You cannot set up the items on the **Fax Settings** page unless you set up the country code under **Country**.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Receive Mode	**Fax***	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external phone and then pressing a remote receive code, or by setting `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the ▷ **(Start)** button.
	Telephone/ Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in **Auto Receive Tel/Fax**, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Answer Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after answering an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.	
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Line Type	Sets the default line type; PSTN or PBX.
Tone/Pulse	Sets whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
Resend Delay	Sets the interval (3–255 seconds) between re-send attempts.
Redial Attempts	Sets the number of redial attempts (0–13) to make if the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay	Sets the interval (1–15 minutes) between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject unwanted faxes by accepting only the faxes from the numbers registered in the Phone Book
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Sets a 2-digit remote receive code when **Remote Receive** is **On**.
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name	Allows you to enter a name that will be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting from **Pattern1** to **Pattern7**. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Duplex Print[*1]	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Sent Fax Forward	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Forward Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Sets whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Discard Size	Sets whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting **Auto Reduction** automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Modem Speed	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Sets whether to print the protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

*1 This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Scan To Network	**Computer (Network)***	Stores scanned documents on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
	Server (FTP)	Stores scanned documents on a server using the FTP protocol.
File Format	Sets the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.	
Color	Sets whether to scan in color or in black and white.	
Black & White Button	Displays whether to scan in black and white or in grayscale when **Black & White** is selected for a color mode.	
Color Button	Displays whether to scan in color or in color (Photo) when **Color** is selected for a color mode.	
Resolution	Sets the default scan resolution.	
Document Size	Sets the paper size of the original.	
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default scan density.	
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.	
Contrast	Sets the default contrast level.	
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.	
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the default background suppression level.	
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
TIFF File Format	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6 or TTN2.	
Image Compression	Sets the image compression level.	
Max Email Size	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Email From Field	Sets whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Print from USB Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own **Print from USB Defaults** setting.

Values:

Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.
SSF Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the single sheet feeder.
SSF Paper Type	Sets the paper type loaded in the single sheet feeder.
2 Sided[*1]	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Layout	Sets the output layout.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.

[*1] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab includes the **Paper Density**, **Adjust BTR**, **Adjust Fuser**, **Auto Registration Adjustment**, **Color Registration Adjustments**, **Clean Developer**, **Reset Defaults**, **Initialize PrintMeter, Storage, Non-Dell Toner**, **Adjust Altitude**, **Clock Settings**, and **Web Link Customization** pages.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Sets the density of plain paper to **Light** or **Normal**.
Label	Sets the density of labels to **Light** or **Normal**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller.

Values:

Plain	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for plain paper within the range of -6 to 6.
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick plain paper within the range of -6 to 6.
Covers	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for cover paper within the range of -6 to 6.
Covers Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick cover paper within the range of -6 to 6.
Label	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for labels within the range of -6 to 6.
Coated	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for coated paper within the range of -6 to 6.
Coated Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick coated paper within the range of -6 to 6.
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for envelopes within the range of -6 to 6.
Recycled	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for recycled paper within the range of -6 to 6.

Adjust Fuser

Purpose:

To specify the temperature settings value for the fuser.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for plain paper within the range of -2 to 2.
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for thick plain paper within the range of -2 to 2.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for cover paper within the range of -2 to 2.
Covers Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for thick cover paper within the range of -2 to 2.
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for labels within the range of -2 to 2.
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for coated paper within the range of -2 to 2.
Coated Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for thick coated paper within the range of -2 to 2.
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for envelopes within the range of -2 to 2.
Recycled	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for recycled paper within the range of -2 to 2.

Auto Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Color Registration Adjustments

Purpose:

To specify whether to manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required such as when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

NOTE: The **Color Registration Adjustments** feature can be configured when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

Values:

Auto Correct	Click the **Start** button to automatically perform color registration correction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color Regi Chart	Click the **Start** button to print a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, look at the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under **Color Registration Adjustments**.
Color Registration Adjustments	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan within the range of -9 to 9.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To clean each toner cartridge or PHD unit, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Clean Developer	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Refresh	Cleans the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta Toner Refresh	Cleans the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Refresh	Cleans the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black Toner Refresh	Cleans the toner in the black toner cartridge.
Drum Refresh	Cleans the surface of the PHD unit.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reset Defaults	**Reset Defaults User Fax Section and restart printer.**	Click the **Start** button to reset the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults User Scan Section and restart printer.	Click the **Start** button to reset the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults System Section and restart printer.	Click the **Start** button to reset the system parameters.
Power On Wizard	**Power On Wizard**	Click the **Start** button to perform the initial setup for the printer.

Initialize PrintMeter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to 0.

Storage

NOTE: Storage feature is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

Purpose:

To clear all files stored in the optional 512 MB memory module.

Values:

Clear Storage	**All Clear**	Click the **Start** button to clear all files stored as Secure Print and Proof Print in the optional 512 MB memory module.
	Secure Document	Click the **Start** button to clear all files stored as Secure Print in the optional 512 MB memory module.
	Stored Document	Click the **Start** button to clear all files stored in the optional 512 MB memory module.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

NOTICE: Using a non-Dell toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To specify the clock settings.

Values:

Date Format	Sets the date format; yy/mm/dd, mm/dd/yy, or dd/mm/yy.
Time Format	Sets the time format; 24H or 12H.
Time Zone	Sets the time zone.
Set Date	Sets the current date.
Set Time	Sets the current time.

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Sets a URL to be linked to **Order Supplies at:**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Regular	Displays the regular URL (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.
Premier	Displays the premier URL (**http://premier.dell.com**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to set the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communication.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the right frame.

Print Server Reports

The **Print Server Reports** tab includes the **Print Server Setup Page** and the **E-Mail Alert Setup Page**.

Print Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

Ethernet[*1]	**Ethernet Settings**	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.
	MAC Address	Displays the Media Access Control Address (MAC) address of the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wireless Settings[*2]	**SSID**	Displays the MAC address of the printer.	
	Network Type	Displays the name that identifies the network.	
	MAC Address	Displays the network type from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode.	
	Link Channel	Displays the MAC address of the wireless printer adapter.	
	Link Quality	Displays the channel number of the connection.	
TCP/IP Settings	**IP Mode**	Displays the IP mode.	
	Host Name	Displays the host name.	
	IPv4[*3]	**IP Address Mode**	Displays the IP address mode.
		IP Address	Displays the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
	IPv6[*4]	**Enable Stateless Address**	Displays whether to enable the stateless address.
		Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.
		Manual Address[*5]	Displays the IP address.
		Stateless Address 1-3[*6]	Displays the stateless addresses.
		Link Local Address[*6]	Displays the link local address.
		Manual Gateway Address[*5]	Displays the gateway address.
		Auto Configure Gateway Address[*6]	Displays the gateway address.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DNS	**IPv4**[*3]	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCP**	Displays whether to automatically set the DNS server address via DHCP.
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.
	IPv6[*4]	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite**	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution[*7]	Displays whether to use the DNS Name Resolution feature.
WINS	**WINS Mode**	Displays whether to automatically set the primary and secondary WINS server addresses via DHCP.	
	WINS Primary Server	Displays the primary WINS server address.	
	WINS Secondary Server	Displays the secondary WINS server address.	
LPD	**Port Status**	Displays the port status of the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) protocol.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
Port9100	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.	
	Port Number	Displays the port number.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IPP	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Printer URI	Displays the printer URI.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD	**Port Status**	Displays the WSD port status.
	Port Number	Displays the WSD port number.
	Receive Time-Out	Displays the receive time-out period.
	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification time-out period.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximum number of TTLs.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.
Network TWAIN	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
HTTP	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of simultaneous connections.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SMB	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Host Name	Displays the host name.
	Workgroup	Displays the workgroup.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of sessions.
	Unicode Support	Displays whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.
	Auto Master Mode	Displays whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.
	Encrypt Password	Displays whether to encrypt the password during SMB transmission.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the job time-out period.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
Bonjour (mDNS)	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Host Name	Displays the host name.
	Printer Name	Displays the printer name.
Telnet	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
SNMP	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol	Displays the status of the **SNMP v1/v2c** feature.
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Displays the status of the **SNMP v3** feature.
Update Address Book	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
LLTD	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
FTP Client	**Connection Time-Out**	Displays the connection time-out period.
	FTP Passive	Displays whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SMB Client	**Connection Time-Out**	Displays the connection time-out period.
SSL/TLS	**HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication**	Displays the status of the HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Displays HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number.
IPsec Settings	**Protocol**	Displays the protocol status.
	IKE	Displays IKE authentication.
802.1x[*1]	**Enable IEEE 802.1x**	Displays the status of IEEE 802.1x.
	Authentication Method	Displays the setting of authentication method for IEEE 802.1x.
IP Filter (IPv4)[*8]	**Access List**	Displays the list of IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer.

[*1] This item is available only when the printer is connected using LAN cable.

[*2] This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network

[*3] This item is displayed when IPv4 Mode is selected.

[*4] This item is displayed when IPv6 Mode is selected.

[*5] This item is displayed only when **Use Manual Address** is set to **Enable**.

[*6] This item is displayed only when an IP address has been assigned.

[*7] This item is available only when using IPv6 dual mode.

[*8] This item is available only for **LPD** or **Port9100**.

E-Mail Alert Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the e-mail feature and E-Mail Alerts feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E-Mail Server Settings	**Port Status**		Displays the port status.
	Primary SMTP Gateway		Displays the primary SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) gateway.
	SMTP Port Number		Displays the SMTP port number.
	E-Mail Send Authentication		Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	POP3 Server Address		Displays the POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3) server address.
	POP3 Port Number		Displays the POP3 port number.
	Reply Address		Displays the IP address of servers connected with SMTP protocol when data is incoming.
	SMTP Server Connection		Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.
E-Mail Alert Settings	**E-Mail List 1**		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in **E-Mail List 1**.
	Select Alerts for List 1	**Supplies Alerts**	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in **E-Mail List 2**.
	Select Alerts for List 2	**Supplies Alerts**	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print Server Settings

The **Print Server Settings** tab includes the **Basic Information**, **Port Settings**, **TCP/IP**, **SMB**, **E-Mail Alert**, **Bonjour (mDNS)**, **SNMP**, **Scan to PC**, **LLTD**, **Wireless LAN**, and **Reset Print Server** pages.

Basic Information

Purpose:

To configure basic information of the printer.

Values:

System Settings	**Printer Name**	Sets the name of the printer.
	Location	Sets the location of the printer.
	Contact Person	Sets the contact name, number, and other information of the printer administrator and service center.
	Administrator E-Mail Address	Sets the contact address of the printer administrator and service center.
	Asset Tag Number	Enters the asset tag number for the printer.
EWS Settings	**Auto Refresh**	Automatically refreshes the contents of the status display pages.
	Auto Refresh Interval	Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.

NOTE: The **Auto Refresh** feature is effective for the contents of the top frame, **Printer Status** page, **Job List** page, and **Completed Jobs** page.

Port Settings

Purpose:

To enable or disable printing ports and management protocol features.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ethernet[*1]	**Ethernet Settings**	**Auto**	Detects the Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.
		10BASE-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		10BASE-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		100BASE-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Half-Duplex as the default value.
		100BASE-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Full-Duplex as the default value.
		1000BASE-T Full-Duplex	Selects 1000Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
	Current Ethernet Settings		Displays the current settings of the Ethernet.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the printer.
Port Status	**LPD**	Sets whether to enable LPD.	
	Port9100	Sets whether to enable Port9100.	
	IPP	Sets whether to enable IPP.	
	WSD	Sets whether to enable WSD.	
	Network TWAIN	Sets whether to enable Network TWAIN	
	SMB	Sets whether to enable SMB.	
	Bonjour (mDNS)	Sets whether to enable Bonjour (mDNS).	
	E-Mail Alert	Sets whether to enable E-Mail Alert.	
	Telnet	Sets whether to enable Telnet.	
	SNMP	Sets whether to enable SNMP.	
	Update Address Book	Sets whether to enable Update Address Book.	
	LLTD	Sets whether to enable LLTD.	

[*1] This item is available only when the printer is connected using LAN cable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the new settings.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the printer.

Values:

TCP/IP Settings	**IP Mode**	Sets the IP mode.	
	Host Name	Sets the host name.	
	IPv4	**IP Address Mode**	Sets the method for acquiring the IP address.
		Manual IP Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
		Manual Subnet Mask	When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
		Manual Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	IPv6	**Enable Stateless Address**	Select the check box to enable the stateless address.
		Use Manual Address	Select the check box to set the IP address manually.
		Manual Address	Sets the IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enter the address followed by a slash (/) and then "64". For details, consult your system administrator.
		Manual Gateway Address	Sets the gateway address.
DNS	**DNS Domain Name**	Sets the DNS domain name.	
	IPv4	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCP**	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the DNS server address via DHCP.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Manually sets the DNS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when **Get DNS Server Address from DHCP** is not selected.
	IPv6	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite**	Select the check box to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution	Select the check box to enable the DNS Name Resolution feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINS	**WINS Mode**	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the primary and secondary WINS server addresses via DHCP.
	WINS Primary Server	Manually sets the primary WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when **WINS Mode** is not selected.
	WINS Secondary Server	Manually sets the secondary (backup) WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when **WINS Mode** is not selected.
LPD	**Connection Time-Out**	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)	Click **IP Filter (IPv4)** to set the IP Filter settings on the **IP Filter (IPv4)** page.
Port9100	**Port Number**	Sets the port number from 9,000 to 9,999.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 1,000 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)	Click **IP Filter (IPv4)** to set the IP filter settings on the **IP Filter (IPv4)** page.
IPP	**Printer URI**	Displays the printer URI.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
	Port Number	Displays the port number for receiving requests from the client.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD	**Port Number**	Sets the port number to 80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Receive Time-Out	Sets the receive time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.
	Notification Time-Out	Sets the notification time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Sets the maximum number of TTL from 1 to 10.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Sets the maximum number of notifications from 10 to 20.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Network TWAIN	**Connection Time-Out**	Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 65,535 seconds.
HTTP	**Port Number**	Sets the port number to 80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of simultaneous connections.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 255 seconds.
Telnet	**Password**	Sets the password for Telnet.
	Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
Update Address Book	**Connection Time-Out**	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.

To configure the IP Filter feature, enter an IP address to be filtered in the Address field and the Subnet Mask in the Address Mask field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field. "*" is appended to the current value.

IP Filter Setup Procedure

You can set up to a maximum of five items and the first item set takes priority. When setting multiple filters, enter the shortest address first followed by a slightly longer address, a longer address and so on.

Enabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to enable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

1. Click the first column of the **Access List** row **1**.
2. Enter "192.168.100.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.
3. Select **Permit**.
4. Click **Apply New Settings**.

Disabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to disable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row **1**.

2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.

3 Select **Reject**.

4 Click the first column of the **Access List** row **2**.

5 Enter "0.0.0.0" in the **Address** field and "0.0.0.0" in the **Address Mask** field.

6 Select **Permit**.

7 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Enabling and Disabling Printing from Network Addresses

You can enable printing from the "192.168" network address and disable printing from the "192.168.200" network address.

The example below describes how to enable printing from the "192.168.200.10" IP address.

1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row **1**.

2 Enter "192.168.200.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.

3 Select **Permit**.

4 Click the first column of the **Access List** row **2**.

5 Enter "192.168.200.0" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.0" in the **Address Mask** field.

6 Select **Reject**.

7 Click the first column of the **Access List** row **3**.

8 Enter "192.168.0.0" in the **Address** field and "255.255.0.0" in the **Address Mask** field.

9 Select **Permit**.

10 Click **Apply New Settings**.

SMB

Purpose:

To specify the setting of the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Host Name	Sets the host name of the server computer.
Workgroup	Sets the workgroup.
Maximum Sessions	Sets the maximum number of sessions.
Unicode Support	Sets whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.
Auto Master Mode	Sets whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.
Encrypt Password	Sets whether to encrypt the password.
Job Time-Out	Sets the job time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.
Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.

E-Mail Alert

Purpose:

To configure detailed settings for the **E-Mail Alert**. This page can also be displayed by clicking the **E-Mail Alert** in the left frame.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	**Primary SMTP Gateway**	Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Sets the SMTP port number. This must be 25, 587 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Sets the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SMTP Login User	Sets the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
SMTP Login Password	Sets the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
Re-enter SMTP Login Password	Confirms the set SMTP account password.
POP3 Server Address*1	Sets the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.
POP3 Port Number*1	Sets the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
POP User Name*1	Sets the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
POP User Password*1	Sets the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
Re-enter POP User Password*1	Confirms the set password.
Reply Address	Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.
SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E-Mail Alert Settings	**E-Mail List 1**		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 1	**Supplies Alerts**	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 2	**Supplies Alerts**	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.

*1 This item is available only when **POP before SMTP (Plain)** or **POP before SMTP (APOP)** for **E-Mail Send Authentication** is selected.

Bonjour (mDNS)

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of Bonjour.

Host Name	Sets the host name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and "-" (dash). The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer Name	Sets the printer name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.

SNMP

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

Values:

SNMP Configuration	**Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol**	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v1/v2c protocol.
	Edit SNMP v1/v2c Properties	Click to display **SNMP v1/v2c** page and to edit the setting of SNMP v1/v2c protocol from the page.
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v3 protocol.
	Edit SNMP v3 Properties	Click to display **SNMP v3** page and to edit the setting of SNMP v3 protocol from the page. You can click this item only when SSL communication is enabled.

SNMP v1/v2c

Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v1/v2 protocol.

To enter this page, click **Edit SNMP v1/v2 Properties** in the **SNMP** page.

Values:

Community Name	**Community Name (Read only)**[*1]	Sets the community name to access (read only) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Re-enter Community Name (Read only)*1	Enters the community name to access (read only) data again to confirm it.
Community Name (Read/Write)*1	Sets the community name to access (read and write) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
Re-enter Community Name (Read/Write)*1	Enters the community name to access (read and write) data again to confirm it.
Community Name (Trap)*1	Sets the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for Community Name (Trap) in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is " " (NULL).
Re-enter Community Name (Trap)*1	Enters the community name used for trap again to confirm it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trap Notification 1-4	**Trap Address Type** **Trap Address** **Port Number** **Notify**	Select the check boxes to notify trap occurrence. In this case, specify the IP address and IP socket in the following format: IPv4 Specify the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535. IPv6 Specify the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:mmmmm format. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535.
	Authenticate Error Trap	Select the check box to notify Authenticate Error Trap.

*1 The default value can be changed by using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

SNMP v3

Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v3 protocol.

To enter this page, click **Edit SNMP v3 Properties** in the **SNMP** page.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Administrator Account	**Account Enabled**	Select the check box to enable the administrator account.
	User Name	Enters the user name of the administrator account.
	Authentication Password	Sets the authentication password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Authentication Password	Confirms the set password.
	Privacy Password	Sets the privacy password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Privacy Password	Confirms the set password.
Print Drivers / Remote Client Account	**Account Enabled**	Select the check box to enable the print drivers and remote client account.
	Reset to default Password	Click to reset the password for the print drivers and remote client account to default.

Scan To PC

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

Values:

FTP Client	**Connection Time-Out**	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	FTP Passive	Sets whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.
SMB Client	**Connection Time-Out**	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.

LLTD

Purpose:

To specify the maximum number of devices.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Maximum number of device	Sets the maximum number of device from 64 to 1,024.

Wireless LAN

NOTE: Wireless LAN feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting for the wireless network.

To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the network cable.

NOTE: Once wireless LAN is activated, wired LAN protocol will be disabled.

Values:

Wireless Settings	**SSID**	Sets the name that identifies the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Network Type	Sets the network type from either **Ad-Hoc** or **Infrastructure**.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter for the printer.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the wireless connection for the printer.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the wireless network connection for the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Security Settings	**Encryption**	Select the security method from the list.	
		No Security	Sets No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP, WPA-PSK, and WPA-Enterprise.
		WEP	Sets the WEP to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-PSK(WPA2-PSK)[*1, 2]	Sets the WPA-PSK to use through the wireless network.
WEP	**Encryption**	Select the WEP key code from either **Hex** or **Ascii**.	
	WEP Key 1	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when **WEP 128bit** or **WEP 64bit** is selected for **Encryption**.	
	Re-enter WEP Key 1	Enters the WEP key 1 again to confirm it.	
	WEP Key 2	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when **WEP 128bit** or **WEP 64bit** is selected for **Encryption**.	
	Re-enter WEP Key 2	Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it.	
	WEP Key 3	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when **WEP 128bit** or **WEP 64bit** is selected for **Encryption**.	
	Re-enter WEP Key 3	Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it.	
	WEP Key 4	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when **WEP 128bit** or **WEP 64bit** is selected for **Encryption**.	
	Re-enter WEP Key 4	Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it.	
	Transmit Key	Sets the transmit key type from the list.	
WPA-PSK	**Pass Phrase**	Sets the pass phrase.	
	Re-enter Pass Phrase	Enters the pass phrase again to confirm it.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 For encryption, AES or TKIP method is used.

*2 This item is available only when the Infrastructure mode is selected for Network Type.

NOTE: The optional wireless adapter supports WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, and WPA-PSK-AES.

Reset Print Server

Purpose:

To initialize NVRAM (non-volatile RAM) for the network feature and reboot the printer. You can also initialize NVRAM of the printer from **Reset Defaults** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer	Click the **Start** button to initialize NVRAM, revert network settings to the factory default settings, and reboot the network capability.
Restart Printer	Click the **Start** button to reboot the printer.

Security

The **Security** tab includes **Set Password**, **LDAP Server, LDAP User Mapping, SSL/TLS, IPsec, 802.1x** and **IP Filter (IPv4)**.

Set Password

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the setup parameters of the printer from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Set the password of the operator panel from **Panel Lock** in the **Printer Settings**. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Set Password** in the Left Frame.

NOTE: To restore the password to the default (NULL), initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM).

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password using up to 10 alphanumeric characters.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Re-enter Administrator Password	Confirms the set password.
Access denial by the authentication failure of the Administrator	Sets the amount of time the administrator should wait for the access to the printer setup from **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Sets the time period from 5 up to 255 seconds. The access is denied if the time-out time is exceeded. If you set 0, this mode is disabled.

LDAP Server

Purpose:

To specify the settings of the LDAP server.

Values:

Server Information (for Server Address/Phone Book)	**IP Address / Host Name & Port**	Sets IP address or the host name, and the port address. The port address must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	Backup IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets backup IP address or the host name, and the port address. The port address must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	LDAP Server	Displays the current software information of the LDAP server.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Optional Information	**Search Directory Root**	Enters the search directory root.
(for Server Address/Phone Book)	**Login Name**	Enters the login name of the administrator.
	Password	Enters the administrator password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.
	Re-enter-Password	Enters the administrator password again to confirm it.
	Search Time-Out	Select **Wait LDAP Server Limit** to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select **Wait** to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.
	Search Name Order	Sets the search order.
	Server Address Book	Select the check box to enable the server address book.
	Server Phone Book	Select the check box to enable the server phone book.

NOTE: **Server Address Book** must be set to **On** before you can use the server address book for the Scan to E-mail feature.

NOTE: **Server Phone Book** must be set to **On** before you can use the server phone book for the Fax service.

LDAP User Mapping

Purpose:

To specify the settings of the LDAP user mapping.

Values:

Common Name	Sets the attribute type of the common name set for the LDAP server.
Surname	Sets the attribute type of the surname set for the LDAP server.
Given Name	Sets the attribute type of the given name set for the LDAP server.
E-mail Address	Sets the attribute type of the e-mail address set for the LDAP server.
Fax Phone	Sets the attribute type of the fax phone number set for the LDAP server.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SSL/TLS

Purpose:

To specify the settings for the SSL encryption communication to the printer.

Values:

SSL/TLS	**HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication**[*1]	Select the check box to enable the HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication.
	HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Sets the port number, which is not identical with that of HTTP for SSL/TLS. This must be 443 or between 8,000 and 9,999.
Machine Digital Certification	**Generate Self-Signed Certificate**[*2]	Click this button to display the **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page.
	Certificate Details[*3]	Click this button to display the **Certificate Details** page for the contents of the certificate or to delete the certificate.

[*1] This item is enabled only when you generate the self-signed certificate on the **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page.

[*2] This button is grayed out after you generate the self-signed certificate on the **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page.

[*3] This button is available only when **HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication** is set to **Enable**.

SSL/TLS (Generate Self-Signed Certificate)

Purpose:

To generate a self-signed certificate.

Values:

Generate Self-Signed Certificate	**Size of Public Key**	Sets the size of public key.
	Issuer	Sets the issuer of the self-signed certificate.
Generate Signed Certificate		Click this button to generate the signed certificate.
Back		Click this button to go back to the previous page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SSL/TLS (Certificate Details)

Purpose:

To refer to the contents of the certificate or delete the certificate.

Values:

Certificate Details	**Category**	Displays the category of the device to certificate.
	Issued To	Displays the device to certificate.
	Issuer	Displays the issuer of the self-signed certificate.
	Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the device.
	Size of Public Key	Display the size of public key.
	Valid From	Displays the time the certificate is valid.
	Valid Until	Displays the time the certificate is invalid.
	Status	Displays whether the certificate is valid or not.
	Certificate Purpose	Displays the purpose of certificate.
	Certificate Selection Status	Displays the type of device certificate you selected.
Delete		Click this button to delete the self-signed certificate.
Back		Click this button to go back to the previous page.

IPsec

Purpose:

To specify the Security Architecture settings for Internet Protocol (IPsec) for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IPsec Settings	**Protocol**	Select the check box to enable the protocol.
	IKE	Sets IKE authentication. **IKE** is fixed to **Pre-Shared Key**.
	Pre-Shared Key	Sets a shared key. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used.
	Re-enter Pre-Shared Key	Enters the shared key again to confirm it.
	IKE SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IKE SA from 5 to 28,800 minutes.
	IPsec SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IPsec SA from 5 to 2,880 minutes.
	DH Group	Sets the DH group.
	PFS	Select the check box to enable the PFS setting.
	Remote peers IPv4 address	Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Remote peers IPv6 address	Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Non IPsec communication policy	Allows communication with a device which does not support IPsec.

NOTE: If IPsec is enabled with incorrect settings, you must disable it using the **Reset IPsec** menu on the operator panel.

802.1x

Purpose:

To specify the settings for IEEE 802.1x authentication for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Configure 802.1x	**Enable IEEE 802.1x**	Select the check box to enable IEEE 802.1x authentication.	
	Authentication Method	**EAP-MD5**	Selects the authentication method to use for IEEE 802.1x authentication.
		EAP-MS-CHAPv2	
		PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	
	Login Name: (Device Name)	Sets the login name (device name) for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.	
	Password	Sets the login password for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.	
	Re-enter Password	Confirms the set login password.	

IP Filter (IPv4)

Purpose:

To specify the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.

Values:

Access List	**Address**	Sets the IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
	Address Mask	Sets the subnet mask that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
	Active Mode	**Reject**	Rejects printing from specified network address.
		Permit	Permits printing from specified network address.
		Disabled	Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Copy Printer Settings

The **Copy Printer Settings** menu includes the **Copy Printer Settings** and **Copy Printer Settings Report** pages.

Copy Printer Settings

Purpose:

To copy the printer settings to one or more of the same model of the printer.

To copy the settings to another printer, specify the IP address and password of the printer to which the settings are copied in the **IP Address** text box and **Password** text box. Then, click the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list** button. Copying the settings is complete. The connection time-out period is 60 seconds. After that, you can check whether the settings were copied to this page. And you need to check the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list and reboot the printer** menu of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** in the destination printer to verify if the settings were actually copied or not.

If the settings can be copied but the printer configuration is different, the settings of only the same items are copied. Printer settings are simultaneously copied to printers of up to 10 IP addresses.

NOTE: You cannot copy the Address Book when the destination printer has a fax job.

Copy Printer Settings Report

Purpose:

To verify whether the printer setting is copied to other printers successfully.

NOTE: The history is cleared by turning off the printer.

Print Volume

The **Printer Volume** menu includes the **Print Volume** and **Dell ColorTrack** pages.

Print Volume

Purpose:

To verify the number of printed pages. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Print Volume** in the left frame.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Dell ColorTrack

Purpose:

To specify which users have access to color printing and to limit print volume per user.

Values:

ColorTrack Mode	Sets whether to enable the ColorTrack mode, which specifies who has access to color printing.
No Account User Print	Sets whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information. To permit the printing for non-account user, set to **On**.
ColorTrack Error Report	Sets whether to automatically print error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.
User Registration*1	Click **Edit User Registration** to edit print user registrations.

*1 This item is available only when **ColorTrack Mode** is set to **On**.

Edit Print User Registration - List

Purpose:

To edit the print meter setting for each user.

Values:

User No. List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of print meter settings for the group of user registration numbers indicated on the button.
No.	Displays the user registration number.
User Name	Displays the user name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed in **User Name** when there is no registration.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MonoCount (Limit)	Displays the total number of monochrome pages printed to date and the maximum number of monochrome pages the user is permitted to print.
ColorCount (Limit)	Displays the total number of color pages printed to date and the maximum number of color pages the user is permitted to print.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user registration number.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected user registration number.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user registration number.

Print User Settings (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the user entries on the **Edit Print User Registration** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **Edit Print User Registration** page.

Values:

User Registration No.	Displays the selected user registration number.
Delete User*1	Click this button to display the **Print User Settings - Delete** page to delete the user from registration.
User Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the selected user registration number, or enter a user name for the new entry.
Password	Displays the password associated with the user name in asterisks, or allows you to enter a password for the new entry.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
Color Mode Limitation	Sets whether to permit only monochrome printing or both color and monochrome printing.
Upper Limit for Color Print	Sets the maximum number of color pages the user is permitted to print.
Cumulative Color Page Count	Displays the total number of color pages printed to date.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Upper Limit for Monochrome Print	Sets the maximum number of monochrome pages the user is permitted to print.
Cumulative Monochrome Page Count	Displays the total number of monochrome pages printed to date.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the **Edit Print User Registration - List** page.

*1 This item is available only when you click the **Confirm / Change** button.

Print User Settings (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the user entries registered on the **Edit Print User Registration** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **Edit Print User Registration** page.

Values:

User Registration No.	Displays the selected user registration number.
User Name	Displays the name of the user registered under the user registration number.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the **Edit Print User Registration** page.

Address Book

The **Address Book** menu includes the **E-Mail Address**, **Server Address**, and **Phone Book** pages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E-Mail Address	**E-Mail Address**	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
	E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
	Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.
Server Address	**Server Address**	Allows you to view, edit, or create server address entries.
Phone Book	**FAX Speed Dial**	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
	FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

E-Mail Address

The **E-mail Address** page includes the following subpages.

E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.

E-Mail Address - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Address** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of user IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the user ID.
Name	Displays the user name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed in **Name** when there is no registration.
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user ID.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry of the selected user ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user ID.

E-Mail Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address entries on the **E-Mail Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **E-mail Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the user ID, or enter a name for the new entry.
Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of the user, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the selected user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

[*1] This item is available only when you click the **Confirm / Change** button.

E-Mail Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **E-mail Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected user ID.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Name	Displays the name of the of the user registered under the selected user ID.
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page.

Values:

Group ID	Displays the group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed in **Name** when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address group entries on the **E-Mail Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

Values:

E-Mail Group	**ID**	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the current entry.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E-Mail Address	**Address List to:**	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
	ID	Displays the user ID. Select the check box on the left to create the group.
	Name	Displays the user name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed in **Name** when there is no registration.
	Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of an entry registered under the selected user ID, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

*1 This item is available only when you click the **Confirm / Change** button.

E-Mail Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail group entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **E-mail Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Default Setup

Purpose:

To set the default e-mail subject and message.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Default Subject	Allows you to enter the default e-mail subject.
Body Text	Allows you to enter the default e-mail message.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

Server Address

Server Address - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the server ID.
Name	Displays the file directory name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed in **Name** when there is no registration.
Server Address	Displays the address of the file directory.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected server ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected server ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected server ID.

Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the server address entries on the **Server Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm / Change** or **Create** button on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ID	Displays the selected server ID.	
Name	Allows you to view or change the server name assigned to the server ID, or enter a new server name.	
Server Type	Allows you to view the server type if you click the **Confirm / Change** button. Allows you to edit the server type if you click the **Create** button.	
	FTP[*1]	Select this to store scanned documents on a server via the FTP protocol.
	SMB[*1]	Select this to store scanned documents on a computer via the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server Address	Allows you to view or edit the server address registered under the server ID, or enter a new server address.	
Share Name[*2]	Allows you to view or edit the assigned shared name, or enter a new shared name, when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.	
Server Path	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server path, or enter a new path.	
Server Port Number	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server port number, or enter a new port number. If you leave the text box blank, the default port number (FTP: 21, SMB: 139) will be used.	
Login Name	Allows you to view or edit the login name that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new login name.	
Login Password	Allows you to view or edit the password that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new password.	
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.	
Delete[*3]	Click this button to delete the current entry.	
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.	
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.	
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 You can edit this item only when you click the **Create** button.

*2 This item is available only when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.

*3 This item is available only when you click the **Confirm / Change** button.

Server Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the server ID.
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Phone Book

The **Phone Book** page includes the following subpages.

FAX Speed Dial	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

FAX Speed Dial - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the fax number entries registered on the **FAX Speed Dial** page.

Values:

Speed Dial List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial ID.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Name	Displays the assigned name for a speed dial ID.
Phone Number	Displays the speed dial code. IDs without an entry show **(Not in Use)** in the **Name** column.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected speed dial code.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected speed dial code.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected speed dial code.

FAX Speed Dial (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the speed dial entries on the **FAX Speed Dial** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm / Change** or **Create** button on the **FAX Speed Dial** top page.

Values:

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a name for the new entry.
Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the entry for the speed dial code. This button is available only on the dialog box for editing an existing entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

[*1] This item is available only when you click the **Confirm / Change** button.

FAX Speed Dial (Delete)

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To delete the speed dial entries registered on the **FAX Speed Dial** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **FAX Speed Dial** top page.

Values:

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Displays the name registered under the speed dial code.
Phone Number	Displays the fax number registered under the speed dial code.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the fax group entries registered on the **FAX Group** page.

Values:

ID	Displays a fax group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the fax number group entries on the **FAX Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **FAX Group** top page.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FAX Group	**ID**	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the current entry.
FAX Speed Dial	**Speed Dial List to:**	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
	Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial code. Select the check box on the left to add the speed dial code in the group.
	Name	Displays the name registered for the speed dial code. **(Not in Use)** is displayed in **Name** when there is no registration.
	Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the selected speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

[*2] This item is available only when you click the **Confirm / Change** button.

FAX Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the fax number group entries registered on the **FAX Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **FAX Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray and the optional 250-sheet feeder.

Values:

Tray 1 Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Display Popup	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 2 Paper Size*1	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Type*1	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Display Popup*1	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

14

Print Media Guidelines

Print media refers to paper, labels, envelopes, and coated paper among others. Your printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes selecting print media, caring for print media, and loading the print media in the standard 250-sheet tray.

Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m^2 (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the SSF" for detailed loading instructions.

Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. It is recommended that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The tray automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m^2 to 216 g/m^2 (16 lb to 80 lb bond) grain long. The single sheet feeder automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m^2 to 216 g/m^2 (16 lb to 80 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) may not feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

unwrapped, even in the paper tray, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the single sheet feeder.

Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects the print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse on to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both the print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 g/m^2 to 135 g/m^2 (16 lb to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For paper heavier than 135 g/m^2 (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

Fiber Content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 % chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton may lead to degraded paper handling.

Recommended Paper

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business paper designed for general business use also provides acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

Unacceptable Paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fuser.
- Preprinted paper that requires a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±0.09 inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms.

  In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, and thermal paper.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper.
- Recycled paper containing more than 25 % post-consumer waste that does not meet DIN 19 309.
- Multiple-part forms or documents.
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.

Selecting Paper

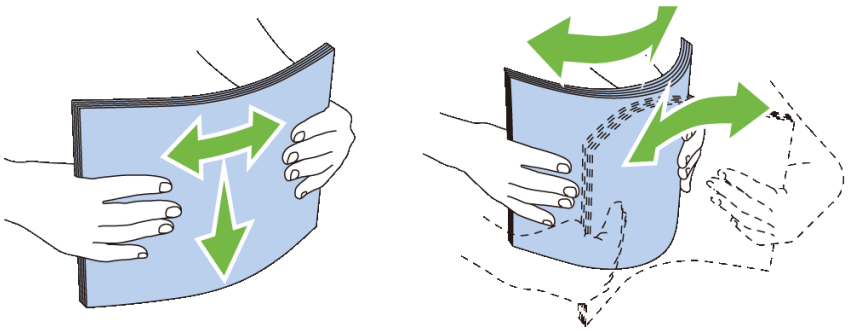
Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Ensure that the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Flex the paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



Selecting Pre-Printed Media and Letterheads

When selecting pre-printed and letterhead paper for the printer:

- Use grain long paper for best results.
- Use only forms and letterheads printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select paper that absorb ink, but does not bleed.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use paper printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225 °C (437 °F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in the toner or the silicone in the fuser. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Selecting Pre-Punched Paper

When selecting pre-punched paper for the printer:

- Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.
- Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the printer. This may result in a paper jam.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

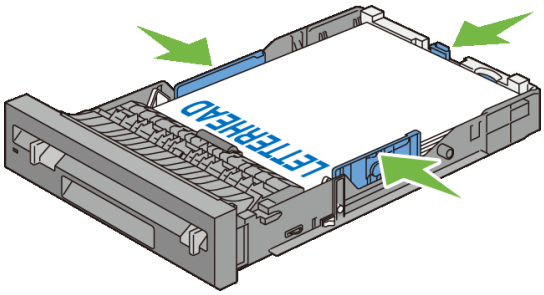
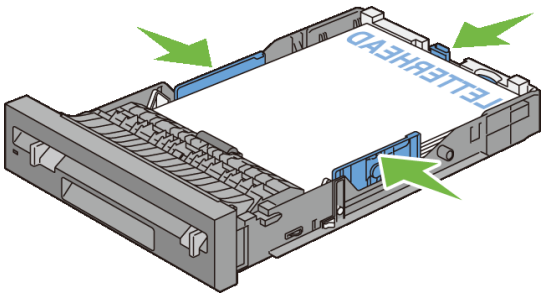
- Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.
- Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

Printing on a Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper)

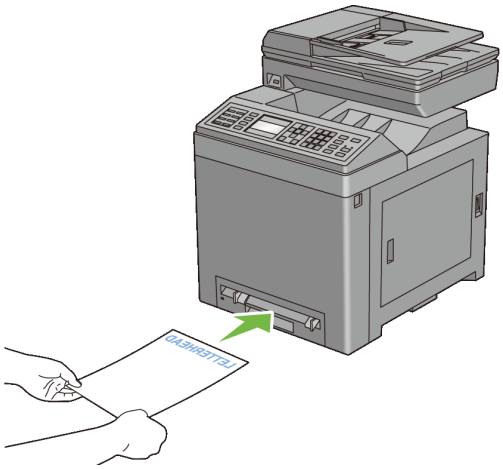
Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the pre-printed letterhead that you have selected is acceptable for laser printers.

Page orientation is important when printing on pre-printed paper such as letterhead and pre-punched paper. The following table shows the orientation when loading letterheads in the tray or feeders. For other pre-printed and pre-punched paper, load the paper by reference to the following table.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Standard 250-sheet tray and Optional 250-sheet feeder	Dell 2155cn Multifunction Color Printer Face up  	Letterhead enters the printer last
	Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer Face down  NOTE: Set `Letterhead Duplex Mode` to `Enable` and `Paper Type` to `Letterhead`, `Preprinted`, or `Prepunched` from the operator panel or the printer driver even when you print on a single side of letterhead, pre-printed, or pre-punched paper.	Letterhead enters the printer first

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Single sheet feeder (SSF)	Face down 	Letterhead enters the printer first

Envelopes

Depending on the envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of wrinkling. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. See "Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" or "Loading an Envelope in the SSF" for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.
- Set the print media source to the single sheet feeder or the standard 250-sheet tray. Set the paper type to **Envelope**, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- Use envelopes made from 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m^2 (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25 % or less. Envelopes with 100 % cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m^2 (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only freshly unpackaged, undamaged envelopes.
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.
- To load an envelope into the single sheet feeder, insert the envelope with the flaps closed and the short-edge of the envelope facing into the printer. The print side must be facing down.
- See "Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" or "Loading an Envelope in the SSF" for instructions on loading an envelope.
- Use one envelope size during a print job.
- Ensure that the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60 %) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.
- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  - Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
  - Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
  - Have an interlocking design
  - Have postage stamps attached
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
  - Have nicked edges or bent corners
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes

Labels

Your printer can print on many labels designed only for use with laser printers.

When selecting labels:

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi).
- Use labels that can be without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTICE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Set the paper type to **Label** from the printer driver.
- Use "Standard Tray" for label.
- Do not print through "Single Sheet Feeder" for label.
- Do not load labels together with paper in the same tray.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the die-cut.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Do not print a label through the printer more than once.
- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.
- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam.
- Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. It is recommended that zone coating of the adhesive is done at least 1 mm (0.04 inches) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your printer and could void your warranty.

CAUTION: Otherwise the printer occur in a jam and contaminate your printer and your cartridges with adhesive. As a result, could void your printer and cartridge warranties.

Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines will help to avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- Store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 °C (70 °F) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Identifying Print Media and Specifications

The following tables show print media information.

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper size	Single sheet feeder		Standard 250-sheet tray		Optional 250-sheet feeder		Duplexer
	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	
A4 (210 x 297 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5 (182 x 257 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
A5 (148 x 210 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Letter (8.5 x 11 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Folio (8.5 x 13 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal (8.5 x 14 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Executive (7.25 x 10.5 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Envelope #10 (4.125 x 9.5 in)	Y	N	Y	N	N	N	N
Monarch (3.875 x 7.5 in)	Y*2	N	Y	N	N	N	N
DL (110 x 220mm)	Y*2	N	Y	N	N	N	N
C5 (162 x 229mm)	Y	N	Y	N	N	N	N
Custom*1	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N

*1: Custom: width: 76.2 mm (3.0 inch) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inch)
length: 127.0 mm (5.0 inch) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inch)
*2: Monarch LEF and DL LEF are not available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supported Paper Types

Paper type		Single sheet feeder		Standard 250-sheet tray		Optional 250-sheet feeder		Duplexer	
		Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2
Plain	Light	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Normal	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Thick	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Covers	Normal	Y	-	Y	-	N	-	N	-
	Thick	Y	-	Y	-	N	-	N	-
Coated	Normal	Y	-	N	-	N	-	N	-
	Thick	Y	-	N	-	N	-	N	-
Label	Normal	N	-	Y	-	N	-	N	-
	Thick	N	-	Y	-	N	-	N	-
Envelope		Y	-	Y	-	N	-	N	-
Recycled		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Letterhead		Y	-	Y	-	Y	-	Y	-
Preprinted		Y	-	Y	-	Y	-	Y	-
Prepunched		Y	-	Y	-	Y	-	Y	-
Color		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N

NOTE: For Plain and Label paper, you can set the paper density by selecting the Paper Density (Light or Normal) under Printer Maintenance from the operator panel, Tool Box, or Dell Configuration Web Tool. Once you set the Paper Density settings, the printer uses the settings for Plain and Label paper.

Paper Type Specifications

Paper type	Weight (g/m^2)	Remarks
Plain	60–90	-
Plain Thick	80/90–105	-
Recycled	60–105	-

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Paper type	Weight (g/m^2)	Remarks
Labels	-	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Covers	106–163	-
Covers Thick	164–216	-
Envelope	-	-
Coated	106–163	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Coated Thick	164–216	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Letterhead	-	-
Preprinted	64	-
Prepunched	64	-
Color	64	-

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

15

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading any print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually indicated on the print media package.

Capacity

The standard 250-sheet tray and optional 250-sheet feeder can hold:

- 250 sheets of the standard paper.

The SSF can hold:

- 1 sheet of the standard paper.

Print Media Dimensions

The maximum dimensions of print media that the standard 250-sheet tray, optional 250-sheet feeder, and SSF can handle are:

- Width — 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length — 127 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

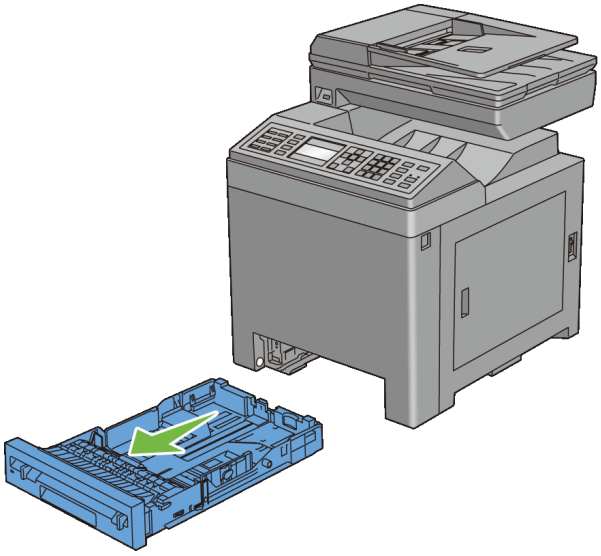
Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder

NOTE: To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.

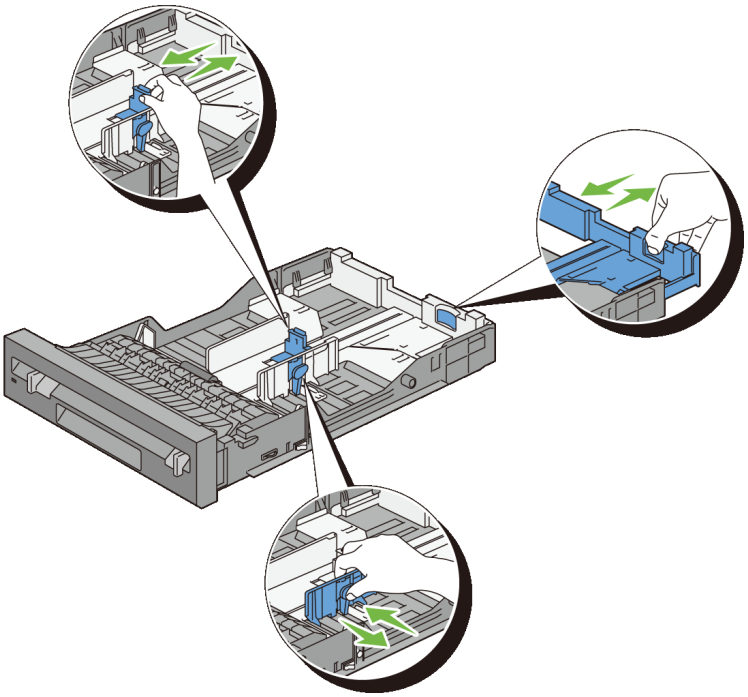
NOTE: Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in the printer.

1 Pull the tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



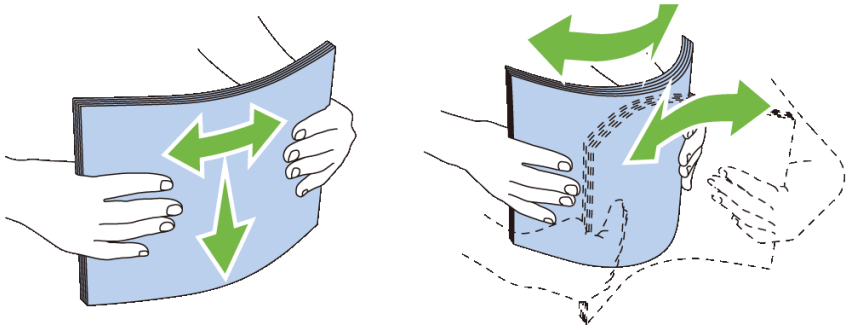
2 Adjust the paper guides.



NOTE: Extend the rear side of the tray when you load Legal size paper.

3 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.

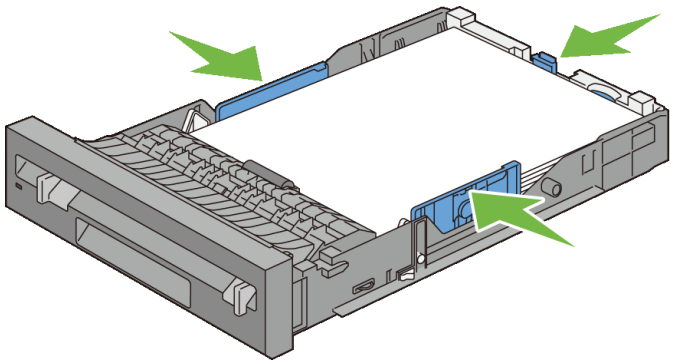
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

NOTE: Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.

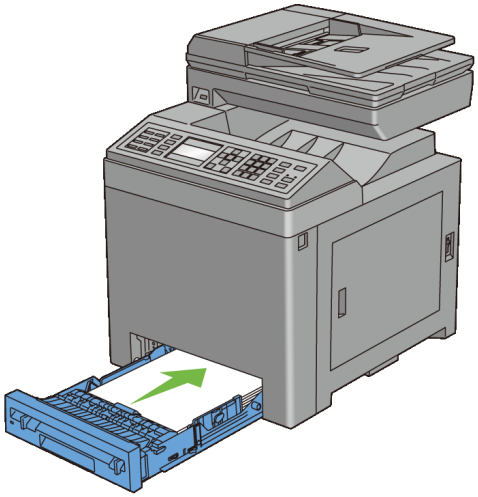
5 Align the width guides against the edges of the paper.



NOTE: When loading user-specified print media, adjust the width guides and slide the extendable part of the tray by pinching the length guide and sliding it until it rests lightly against the edge of the paper.

6 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



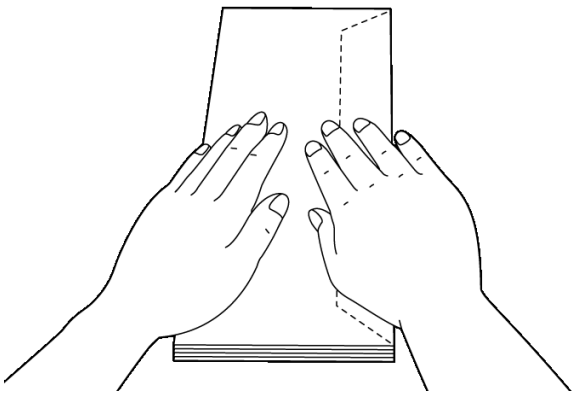
7 On the operator panel, press ⌄ or ⌃ button until the desired paper size is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Press ⌄ or ⌃ button until the desired paper type is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder

Use the following guidelines when loading envelopes in the standard 250-sheet tray and optional 250-sheet feeder:

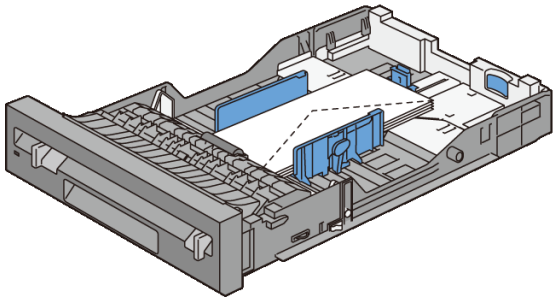
NOTE: If you do not load envelopes in the standard 250-sheet tray and optional 250-sheet feeder right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below before loading the envelopes in the tray.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Envelope #10

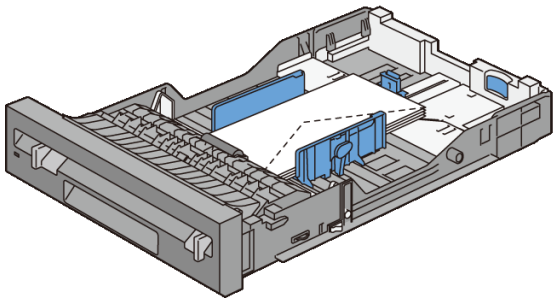
Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the right when you face towards the printer.



Monarch or DL

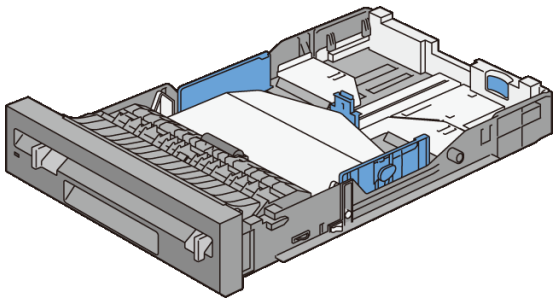
The Monarch or DL envelopes can be loaded in one of the following ways:

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the right when you face towards the printer.



OR

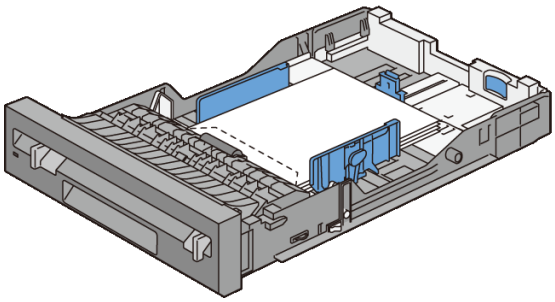
Load the envelopes long edge feed with the flaps open and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the top when you face towards the printer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C5

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the bottom when you face towards the printer.



Loading Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper)

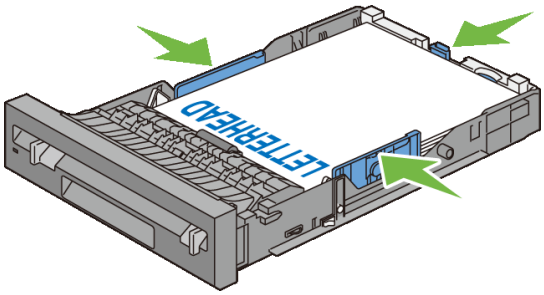
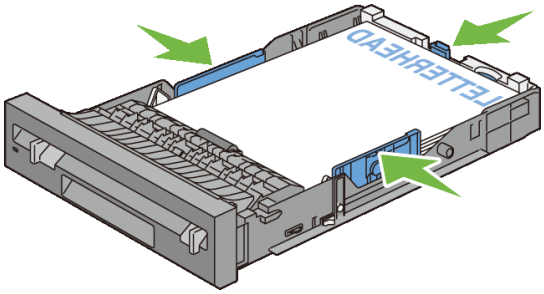
When using the standard 250-sheet tray and optional 250-sheet feeder, the pre-printed paper such as letterhead and pre-punched paper enter the printer with the print side facing up for Dell 2155cn Multifunction Color Printer. As for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer, the pre-printed paper such as letterhead and pre-punched paper enter the printer with the print side facing down as shown below.

NOTE: For Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer, set `Letterhead Duplex Mode` to `Enable` and `Paper Type` to `Letterhead`, `Preprinted`, or `Prepunched` from the operator panel or the printer driver even when you print on a single side of letterhead, pre-printed, or pre-punched paper.

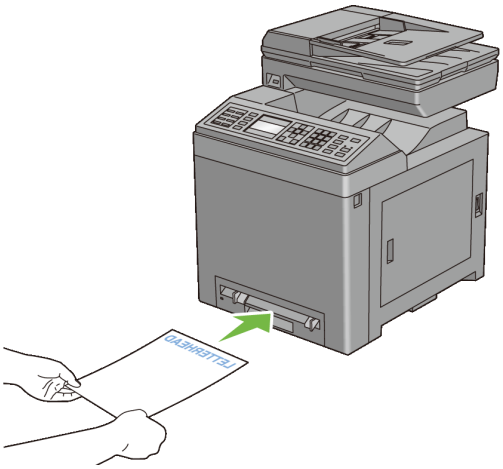
When using the single sheet feeder, the pre-printed paper such as letterhead enters the printer first with the print side facing down.

The following table shows the orientation when loading letterheads in the tray or feeders. For other pre-printed and pre-punched paper, load the paper by reference to the following table.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

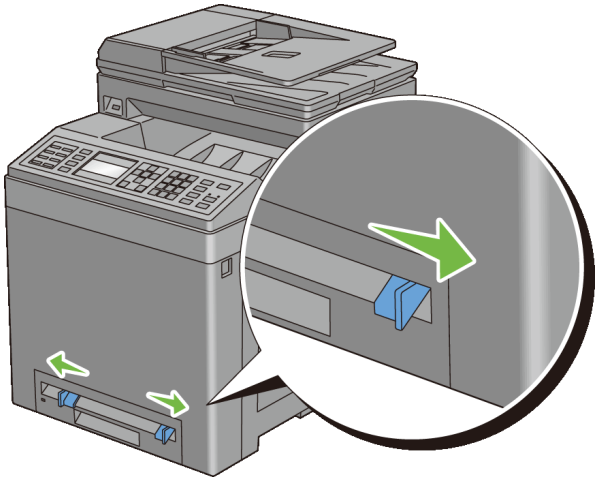
Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Standard 250-sheet tray and optional 250-sheet feeder	Dell 2155cn Multifunction Color Printer Face up  	Letterhead enters the printer last
	Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer Face down  NOTE: Set `Letterhead Duplex Mode` to `Enable` and `Paper Type` to `Letterhead`, `Preprinted`, or `Prepunched` from the operator panel or the printer driver even when you print on a single side of letterhead, pre-printed, or pre-punched paper.	Letterhead enters the printer first

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Single sheet feeder (SSF)	Face down 	Letterhead enters the printer first

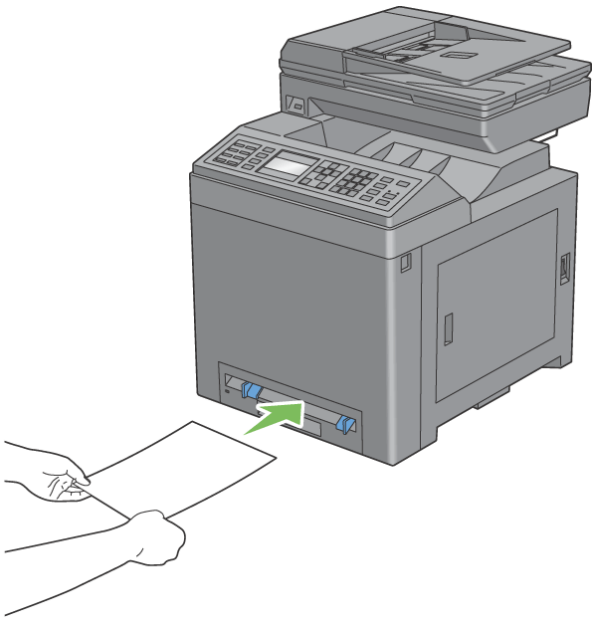
Loading Print Media in the SSF

1 Adjust the width guides to the print media's width.



2 Hold both sides of the print media facing down close to the single sheet feeder, and push it 8 cm to 9 cm (4 inches) into the printer until it automatically feeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTE: Do not force the print media into the single sheet feeder.

NOTE: Load letterhead face-down, with the top of the sheet entering the printer first.

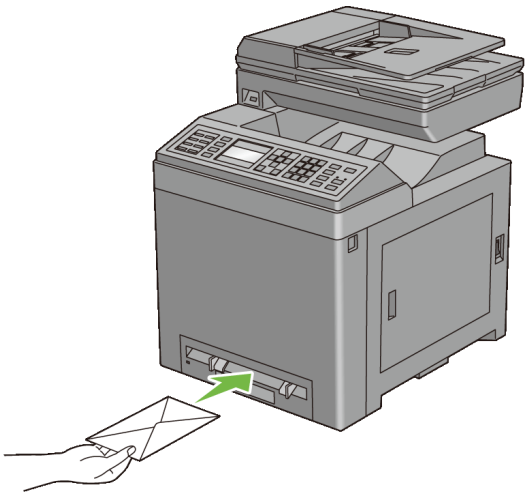
NOTE: If you experience problems with paper feed, turn the paper around.

Loading an Envelope in the SSF

Envelope #10, Monarch, or DL

To load an envelope into the single sheet feeder, insert the envelope short edge feed with the flap closed and the print side down. Ensure that the flap comes at the right when you face towards the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



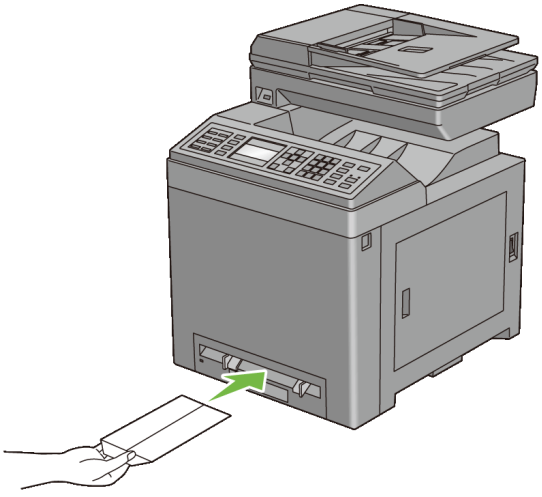
NOTICE: Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE: Ensure that you load an envelope with the flap completely closed.

NOTE: Insert an envelope with the flap side face up and with the stamp area on the top right side.

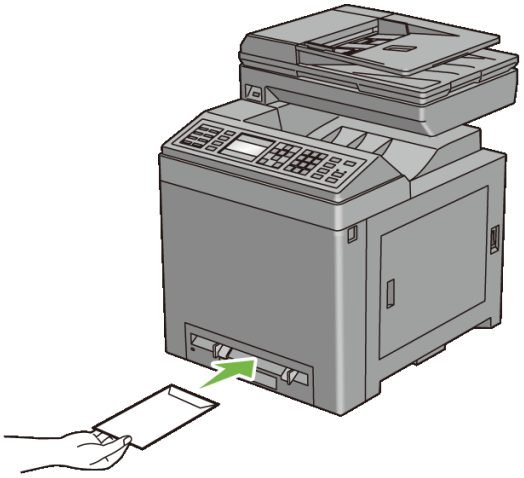
C5

To load an envelope into the single sheet feeder, insert the envelope short edge feed with the flap open and the print side down. Ensure that the flap comes at the bottom when you face towards the printer.



OR

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTICE: Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE: Ensure that you load an envelope with the flap completely opened.

NOTE: Insert an envelope with the flap side face up and with the stamp area on the bottom right side.

Using the SSF

- Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.
- To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printer. For more guidelines on print media, see "Print Media Guidelines."
- Do not add or remove print media when the printer is printing from the SSF. This may result in a paper jam.
- Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side down and the top of the print media going into the SSF first.
- Do not place objects on the SSF. Also, avoid pressing down or apply excessive force on it.
- The icons on the SSF show how to load the SSF with paper, and how to turn an envelope for printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Linking Trays

The printer automatically links the trays when you load the same size and type of print media in them. The first tray will be utilized until the media runs out after which the next tray will be used.

NOTE: The print media should be the same size and type in each tray. The SSF cannot be linked to any of the tray sources.

After loading the selected trays with the same size and type of print media, select the Paper Type setting in the Tray Settings component for each source (tray).

To disable tray linking change the Paper type in one of the sources (trays) to a unique value.

NOTE: If different types of print media of the same size are loaded in each tray, the printer will automatically link them if the paper type is not specified in the printer driver properties/preferences.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

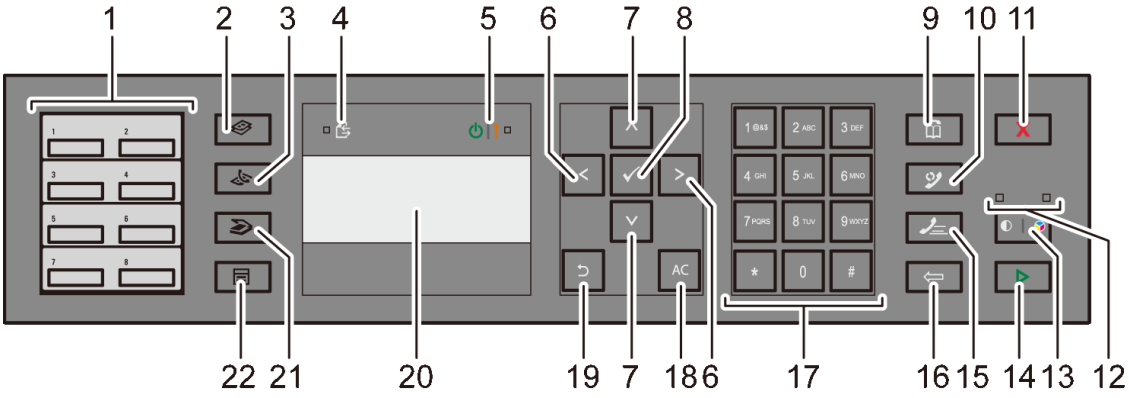
16

Operator Panel

Using the Operator Panel Buttons

The operator panel has a 4-line by 28-character liquid crystal display (LCD), light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, and numeric keypad, which allow you to control the printer.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.



1 One Touch Dial button

- Calls up the stored Fax number registered in the Phone Book. The first eight fax numbers in the Phone Book are assigned to the buttons in row order, starting from the left top corner.

2 **(Copy)** button

- Moves to the top level of the `Copy` menu.

3 **(Fax)** button

- Moves to the top level of the `Fax` menu.

4 Data LED

- Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending Fax jobs.

5 Ready / Error LED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Lights up when the printer is ready. (Ready LED)
- Lights up when the printer has an error. (Error LED)

6 button

- Moves a cursor or highlight right or left.

7 button

- Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.

8 **(Set)** button

- Confirms the entry of values.

9 **(Contacts)** button

- Moves to the `Address Book` menu for the Fax and Scan services.

10 **(Redial / Pause)** button

- Re-dials a telephone number.
- Inserts a pause into a telephone number.

11 **(Cancel)** button

- Cancels the current processing or pending job.

12 B&W / Color LED

- Lights up to indicate which color mode is selected.

13 **(Color Mode)** button

- Switches the color mode.

14 **(Start)** button

- Starts a job.

15 **(Speed Dial)** button

- Calls up a stored telephone number.

16 **(Backspace)** button

- Deletes characters and numbers.

17 Numeric keypad

- Enters characters and numbers.

18 AC **(All Clear)** button

- Resets the current setting, and returns to the top menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

19 **(Back)** button

- Returns to the previous screen.

20 LCD panel

- Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.

21 **(Scan)** button

- Moves to the top level of the `Scan` menu.

22 **(Menu)** button

- Moves to the top level of the `Print from USB Memory`, `Job Status`, and `System` menus.

NOTE: Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the **(Set)** button to save the current entry or setting.

NOTE: For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters."

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The panel settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Panel Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The panel settings page is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **Ok**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Reports** tab is open.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

4 Click the **Panel Settings** button.

The panel settings page is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

17

Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain information from your printer, and how to cancel a job.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Tips for Successful Printing

Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."

Avoiding Paper Jams

NOTICE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you can avoid paper jams. See the following instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder"
- "Loading Print Media in the SSF"
- "Avoiding Jams"

If you encounter a paper jam, see "Clearing Jams."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the printer driver. When you choose **Print** from a software program, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job that you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or Tool Box.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Microsoft® Windows® application:

1. Open the file you want to print.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
3. Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
4. Click **Preferences** to adjust system settings that are not available from the first screen, and then click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** or **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a job.

- Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel
- Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

1. Press the **(Cancel)** button.
2. From the `Job List`, press or button until `Print` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the bottom right corner of the taskbar.

1 Double-click the printer icon.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

2 Select the job you want to cancel.

3 Press **Delete** on the keyboard.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1 Click **Start→Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows XP®: Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows Vista®: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

For Windows Server® 2008: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7: Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

A list of available printers appears.

2 Double-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

3 Select the job you want to cancel.

4 Press **Delete** on the keyboard.

Duplex Printing

Duplex printing (or two-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. For sizes that are acceptable for duplex printing, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Duplex Printing With Duplexer (Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer Only)

1 Click **Start→Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows XP: Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows Vista: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7: Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer and select **Printing Preferences**.

The **Paper/Output** tab appears.

3 Select **Paper Source from Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, and **Auto**.

4 From **Duplex**, select **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge**.

NOTE: For details on the **Flip on Long Edge** and **Flip on Short Edge** options, see "Flip on Long Edge" and "Flip on Short Edge."

5 Click **OK**.

Duplex Printing Without Duplexer (Dell 2155cn Multifunction Color Printer Only)

Manual duplex printing (or two-sided printing) allows you to manually print on both sides of the paper. For information on the paper sizes that support manual duplex printing, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

NOTE: You can use the manual duplex feature using PCL 6 printer driver.

NOTE: To use the manual duplex feature, select **Paper Source** other than **Auto** or **SSF**.

1 Click **Start→Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows XP: Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows Vista: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7: Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer and select **Printing Preferences**.

The **Paper/Output** tab appears.

3 From **Paper Source**, select **Tray 1** or **Tray 2**.

4 From **Duplex**, select **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge**.

NOTE: For details on the **Flip on Long Edge** and **Flip on Short Edge** options, see "Flip on Long Edge" and "Flip on Short Edge."

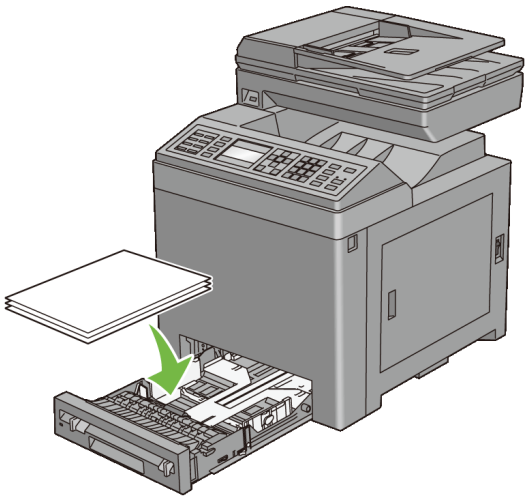
5 Click **OK**.

A window that shows the instructions for manual duplex printing appears.

The even-numbered pages are printed from the printer.

Clicking the **OK** button on your printer driver will first print the even-numbered pages of your document. If your document consists of six pages, its even-numbered pages are printed in the order of page 6, 4, and then 2. After the even-numbered pages are printed, a message `Insert Output to Tray 1` (`Tray 2`) (`071-920` or `072-920`) appears on the operator panel.

6 Remove the stack of output from the output tray. Load the stack back into the tray without turning it over (with the blank side face up).



7 A message `Press ✓ to continue printing` (`071-921` or `072-921`) appears on the operator panel. Press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The odd-numbered pages are printed in the order of page 1, 3, and then 5.

NOTE: You cannot duplex print mix-sized documents.

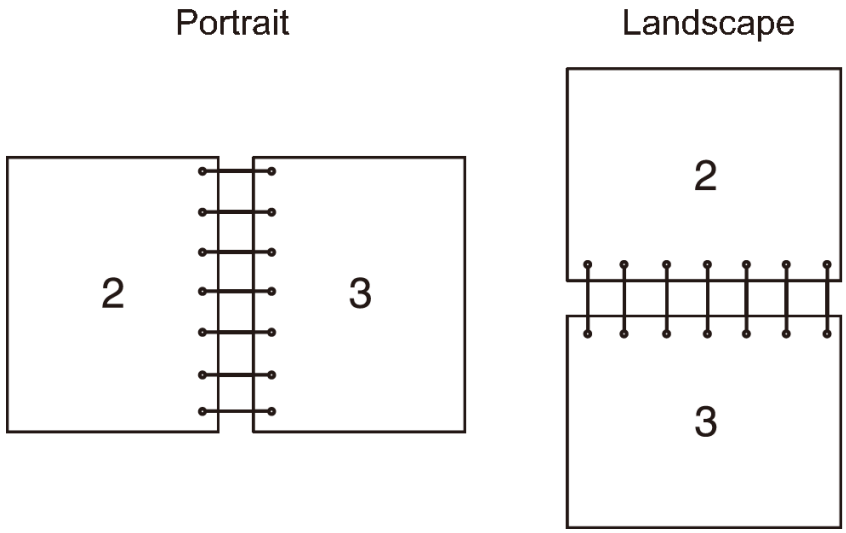
Using Booklet Print (Dell 2155cn and 2155cdn Models)

To use the booklet print feature, select **Booklet Creation** in the **Booklet/Poster/Mixed Document** dialog box displayed by clicking the **Booklet/Poster/Mixed Document** button. **Flip on Long Edge** binding position is selected by default. If you want to change the position, select **Flip on Short Edge** from the **Duplex** menu in the printer properties dialog box.

NOTE: For Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer, select **Paper Source** or **Auto** to use the booklet printing feature. For Dell 2155cn Multifunction Color Printer, select **Paper Source**. You cannot select **Auto** or **SSF** for booklet printing.

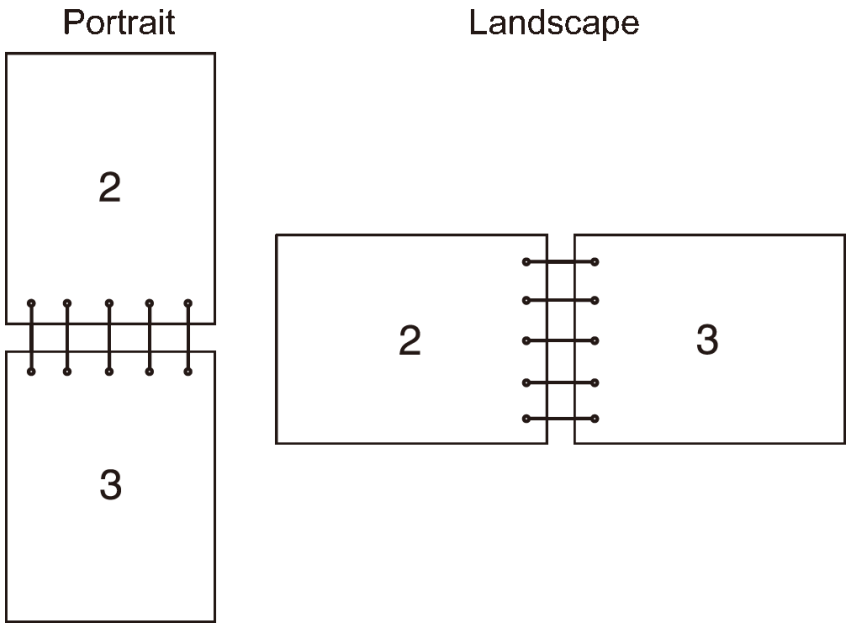
NOTE: When XPS driver is used, booklet print is not available.

Flip on Long Edge	Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Flip on Short Edge	Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



Using the Stored Print Function

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify in the driver that you want the printer to store the job in the memory. When you are ready to print the job, go to the printer and use the operator panel menus to identify which job in the memory you want to print. You can use this function for Secure Print, Private MailBox Print, Public MailBox Print, and Proof Print.

NOTE: Stored Print function is available when:

- The optional memory module is installed.
- The RAM disk is enabled in the operator panel menu.
- **RAM Disk** is set to **Available** in the printer driver.

NOTE: The data in memory is cleared when the printer is turned off.

The stored print function includes the following job types:

- Secure Print
- Private MailBox Print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Public MailBox Print
- Proof Print

Secure Print

You can store print jobs temporarily in printer memory and print them later from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. A stored print job will be deleted after you print it or at a designated time.

NOTE: Secure Print is available when using the PCL driver.

Private MailBox Print

You can store print jobs temporarily in printer memory and print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. The stored jobs remain in printer memory until you delete them on the operator panel or turn off the printer.

NOTE: Private MailBox Print is available when using the PCL driver.

Public MailBox Print

You can store print jobs temporarily in printer memory and print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. A print job is stored until you delete it from printer memory on the operator panel or turn off the printer. You cannot use the password function with this feature. This function does not require a password to print a stored job.

NOTE: Public MailBox Print is available when using the PCL driver.

Proof Print

When you specify multiple copies for a collated job, this feature allows you to print only the first set for checking, before proceeding to print the remaining copies at the printer.

NOTE: If a print job is too large for the memory available, the printer may display error messages.

NOTE: If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the printer driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

NOTE: Proof Print is available when using the PCL driver.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Print Jobs

When you select a job type other than **Normal Print** in the **Paper/Output** tab of the printer driver, the job will be stored in temporary memory until you request to print it from the operator panel or turn off the printer.

NOTE: Secure Print and Private MailBox Print require specifying a password for confidentiality.

Printing the Stored Jobs

Once jobs are stored, you can use the operator panel to specify printing. Select the job type you are using from Secure Print, Private MailBox Print, Public MailBox Print, and Proof Print. Then, select your user name from a list. Secure Print and Private MailBox Print require the password you specified in the driver when you sent the job.

To print the stored documents, use the procedure below.

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `Job Status` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press button until `Print Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until the desired job type is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   The stored document will be printed.

Specifying Your Password on the Operator Panel (Secure Print/Private MailBox Print)

When you select `Secure Print` or `Private MailBox Print` from the Print Menu after selecting your user name, the following prompt appears:

```
[**********]
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Use the buttons on the operator panel to enter the numeric password you specified in the printer driver. The password you entered will be displayed as asterisks (*******) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid password, the message Wrong Password appears. Wait three seconds, or press the ✓ **(Set)** or X **(Cancel)** button to return to the screen for user selection.

When you enter a valid password, you have access to all print jobs matching the user name and password you entered. The print jobs matching the password you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or delete jobs matching the password you entered. (See "Printing the Stored Jobs" for more information.)

Deleting Stored Jobs

With Secure Print, a job that has been stored will be deleted after printing or deleted at a designated time if entered on the operator panel or at turning off the printer.

For other jobs, these jobs remain stored until you delete them on the operator panel or turn off the printer.

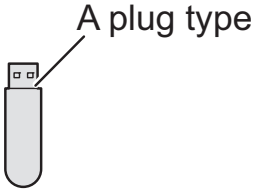
Printing from USB Memory

The Print from USB Memory feature allows you to print files stored in a USB memory by operating from the operator panel.

NOTICE: To prevent damage to your printer, DO NOT connect any device other than USB memory to the USB port of the printer.

NOTICE: DO NOT remove the USB memory from the USB port until the printer has finished printing.

The USB port of the printer is designed for USB 2.0 devices. You must use only an authorized USB memory with an A plug type connector. Use only a metal shielded USB memory.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supported File Formats

Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB memory.

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

To print a file in a USB memory:

1 Insert a USB memory to the USB port of the printer.

2 Ensure that `Print from USB Memory` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until the desired file is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (**Set**) button.

NOTE: Only the following characters are displayed on the operator panel:
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
$ % ’ ‘ - @ {} ~ ! # ( ) & _ ^

4 Select printing options as required.

NOTE: You can print files scanned and stored using the Scan to USB Memory feature. Files saved without using the feature such as files created by user may not be printed properly.

PDF Port Direct Printing

You can directly print PDF files in a computer by specifying LPR command (Windows):

```
lpr -S server_address -P lp -o | PDF_filename
```

The PDF file sent is printed in accordance with the printer settings set in the printer. You can however, change the PDF settings from the operator panel of the printer.

The following PDF settings can be changed:

- Quantity
- 2Sided
- Print Mode
- PDF Password
- Collated

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Output Size
- Layout
- Output Color

NOTE: You should change the settings before the job starts.

NOTE: You can directly print PDF files scanned and stored using the Scan to USB Memory feature. Files saved without using the feature such as files created by user may not be printed properly.

Printing a Report Page

By using the **Reports** menu, you can print a variety of settings for your printer including system settings, panel setting, and font list. The following sections describe two examples of printing from the **Reports** menu.

- Printing System Settings Report
- Printing Font Sample List

Printing System Settings Report

To verify detailed printer settings, print a system settings report. A printed system settings report also allows you to verify whether or not options have been installed properly.

See "Understanding the Printer Menus" to identify the display and operator panel buttons if you need help.

When Using the Operator Panel

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   The system settings report is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

4 Click the **System Settings** button.

The system settings report is printed

The message `Send Printer Information.` appears while the page prints. The printer returns to the standby mode after printing the system settings report.

If any other message appears when you print this page, see the online Help for more information.

Printing Font Sample List

To print samples of all the fonts currently available for your printer:

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `PCL Fonts List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The PCL fonts list is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

4 Click the **PCL Fonts List** button.

The PCL fonts list is printed.

The message `Send Printer Information.` appears while the page prints. The printer returns to the standby mode after printing the font sample list.

Printer Settings

You can change most of the system settings from your software program. If your printer is attached to the network, you can change settings from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. To find your printer's IP address, see "Printing System Settings Report."

Settings from the software program update the default system settings for the printer. Settings from the printer driver only apply to the job that you are currently sending to the printer.

If you cannot change a setting from your software program, use the operator panel, Tool Box or the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Changing a system setting from the operator panel, Tool Box or from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** makes that setting the user default.

Printing System Settings Report

You can verify the detailed system settings by printing a system settings report.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page appears.

4 Click the **System Settings** button.

The system settings report is printed

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, you see some menu items are highlighted.

These highlighted items are the factory default and original system settings.

NOTE: Factory defaults may vary for different countries.

When you select a new setting from the operator panel, the item selected is highlighted to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press or button until the desired menu is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press or button until the desired menu or menu item is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

- If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the first system setting in the menu appears.
- If the selection is a menu item, the default menu setting for the menu item appears. (The current user default menu setting is highlighted.)

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting

4 Press or button until the desired value is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

NOTE: Some menu items require you to use the numeric key pad to enter the value.

5 Press the **(Cancel)** or button to return to the previous menu.

To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. To quit setting new values, press the **(Cancel)** button.

Driver settings may override changes previously made and may require you to change the operator panel defaults.

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change the Printer Settings

If your printer is connected to the network, you can change the printer settings from your web browser. If you are a network administrator, you can clone the system settings of one printer to one or all the printers on the network.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser. Choose **Printer Settings** from the topics list, and then select the **System Settings** you want to change.

To change the paper type and size, choose **Tray Settings** from the topics list. To change the Color Track settings, choose **Print Volume** from the topics list, and then select the **Dell Color Track** tab.

To copy your system settings to another printer on the network, choose **Copy Printer Settings** from the topics list, and then type the other printer's IP address.

If you do not know your printer's IP address, see the system settings report or display the TCP/IP settings.

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Report** tab is open.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resetting Defaults

After resetting defaults and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Maintenance` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Reset Defaults` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press or button until the desired value is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The `Are you sure?` message appears on the operator panel.

7 Press button to highlight `Yes`, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The printer is turned off automatically to apply the settings.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Reset Defaults** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reset Defaults** page appears.

4 Select the desired option button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The printer is turned off automatically to apply the settings.

Adjusting the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Panel Language` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until the desired language is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **System Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **System Settings** page appears.

4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then press the **Apply New Settings** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

18

Copying

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading documents are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For more details, see "Print Media Guidelines."

Selecting Paper Tray

After loading the print media for copy output, select the desired paper tray to be used for the copy job.

To select the tray:

1. Press the **(Copy)** button.
2. Ensure that `Select Tray` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press or button until the desired tray is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   You can select `Tray 1`, `Tray 2`*, or `SSF`.

   * `Tray 2` is only available when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning, and sending a fax. You can load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

CAUTION: Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 5.5 in. by 5.5 in. (139.7 mm by 139.7 mm) or larger than 8.5 in. by 14 in. (215.9 mm by 355.6 mm), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.

CAUTION: Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION: Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.

NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

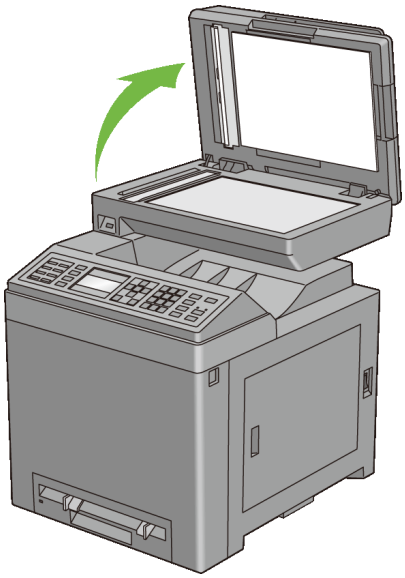
NOTE: A computer connection is not required for copying.

NOTE: Remove any documents from the ADF before copying from the document glass.

NOTE: Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy output. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner."

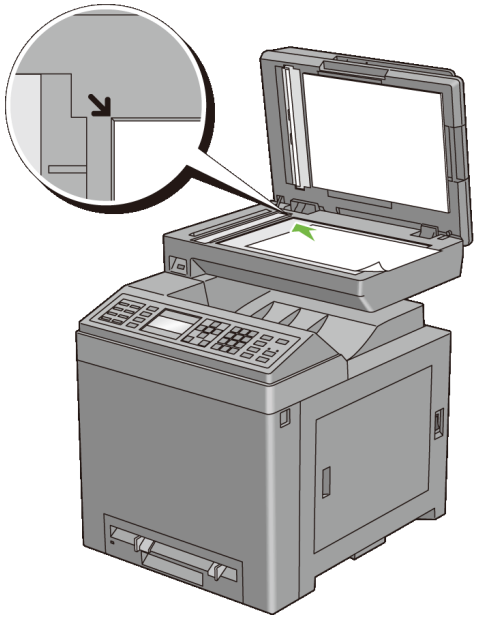
To make a copy from the document glass:

1 Lift and open the document cover.



2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Close the document cover.

NOTE: Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.

NOTE: If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

To customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, contrast, and image quality, see "Setting Copy Options."

To clear the option settings, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

NOTE: The copy options automatically return to their default status after the next copy is performed or the auto clear timer is expired.

4 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

NOTE: You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by pressing the **(Cancel)** button.

Making Copies From the ADF

NOTICE: Do not load more than 35 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 35 sheets to be fed to the ADF output tray. The ADF output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 35 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: A computer connection is not required for copying.

1 Load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) documents facing up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the document size.

NOTE: Ensure that you use the document stopper before copying a legal-size document.

To customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, contrast, and image quality, see "Setting Copy Options."

To clear the option settings, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

NOTE: The copy options automatically return to their default status after the next copy is performed or the auto clear timer is expired.

2 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

NOTE: You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by pressing the X **(Cancel)** button.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

NOTE: The copy options automatically return to their default status after the next copy is performed or the auto clear timer is expired.

- Number of Copies
- Color

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Select Tray
- SSF Paper Size
- SSF Paper Type
- Collated
- Reduce/Enlarge
- Document Size
- Original Type
- Lighter/Darker
- Sharpness
- Color Saturation
- Auto Exposure
- 2 Sided
- Multiple-Up
- Margin Top/Bottom
- Margin Left/Right
- Margin Middle

Number of Copies

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad.

4 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color

To select mode for color or black and white copying:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Color Mode)** button to switch between Color and Black and White modes.

3 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Select Tray

To select a tray.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Ensure that `Select Tray` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Tray 1*	The paper is fed from the tray 1.
Tray 2	The paper is fed from the tray 2.
SSF	The paper is fed from the single sheet feeder.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

NOTE: Tray 2 is only available when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SSF Paper Size

To select the default paper size of the single sheet feeder:

NOTE: This setting is only available when the SSF is selected for the paper tray.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `SSF Paper Size` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

(Inch series)

Letter (8.5 x 11")*
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
A4 (210 x 297mm)
A5 (148 x 210mm)
B5 (182 x 257mm)
Executive (7.3 x 10.5")
Envelope #10 (4.1 x 9.5")
Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")
DL Env. (110 x 220 mm)
C5 Env. (162 x 229mm)

(mm series)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A4 (210 x 297 mm)*
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.3 x 10.5")
Envelope #10 (4.1 x 9.5")
Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")
DL Env. (110 x 220 mm)
C5 Env. (162 x 229 mm)

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

SSF Paper Type

To select the default paper type of the single sheet feeder:

NOTE: This setting is only available when the SSF is selected for the paper tray.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `SSF Paper Type` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Plain*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Plain Thick
Covers
Covers Thick
Coated
Coated Thick
Envelope
Recycled
Letterhead
Preprinted
Prepunched
Color
Plain S2
Plain Thick S2
Recycled S2
Color S2

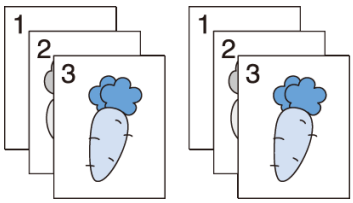
* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Collated

To sort the copy output: For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will be printed followed by the second complete document:

NOTE: You can collate more pages when optional memory module is installed.



1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Collated` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Off	Does not copy in collated order.
On	Copies in collated order.
Auto*	Only the documents loaded from ADF are copied in collated order.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

To customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, contrast, and image quality, see "Setting Copy Options."

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

a When you are using the document glass and it is set to `On`, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, press button to select `Yes`, and then press the **(Set)** button.
Another display prompts you for placing next page.

Replace the document with a new document.
Ensure that `Continue` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Reduce/Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25 percent to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document glass or ADF:

NOTE: When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Reduce/Enlarge` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

(Inch series)

Custom 100%
50%
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
100%*
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
200%

(mm series)

Custom 100%
50%
A4→A5 (70%)
B5→A5 (81%)
100%*
A5→B5 (122%)
A5→A4 (141%)
200%

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: You can also specify the value in increments of 1% from 25 to 400 by pressing ◄ or ► button or entering a value using the numeric keypad.

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Document Size

To select the default document size:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press ▼ button until `Document Size` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

(Inch series)

Auto*
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
A4 (210 x 297mm)
A5 (148 x 210mm)
B5 (182 x 257mm)
Executive (7.3 x 10.5")

(mm series)

Auto*
A4 (210 x 297mm)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A5 (148 x 210mm)
B5 (182 x 257mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.3 x 10.5")

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Original Type

To select the copy image quality:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Original Type` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Text	Used for documents with text.
Text & Photo*	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Lighter/Darker

To adjust the contrast to make the copy lighter or darker than the original:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Lighter/Darker` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button to move for adjusting the darkness level, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy image sharper or softer than the original:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Sharpness` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired settings is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Sharper	Makes the copy image sharper than the original.
Normal*	The color clarity of the image is the same as the original.
Softer	Makes the copy image softer than the original.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Color Saturation

To adjust the amount of colors of the copy to make the colors darker or lighter than the original:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Color Saturation` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

High	Makes the color of the copy more vivid.
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Low	Makes the color of the copy less vivid.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Auto Exposure

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Auto Exposure` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

2 Sided

To make duplex copies with the specified binding position:

NOTE: This feature is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `2Sided` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4 Press ^ or v button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

1 -> 1Sided*	Select 1 sided or 2 sided and specify binding position for the 2 sided copy.
Long Edge Biding	
Short Edge Binding	

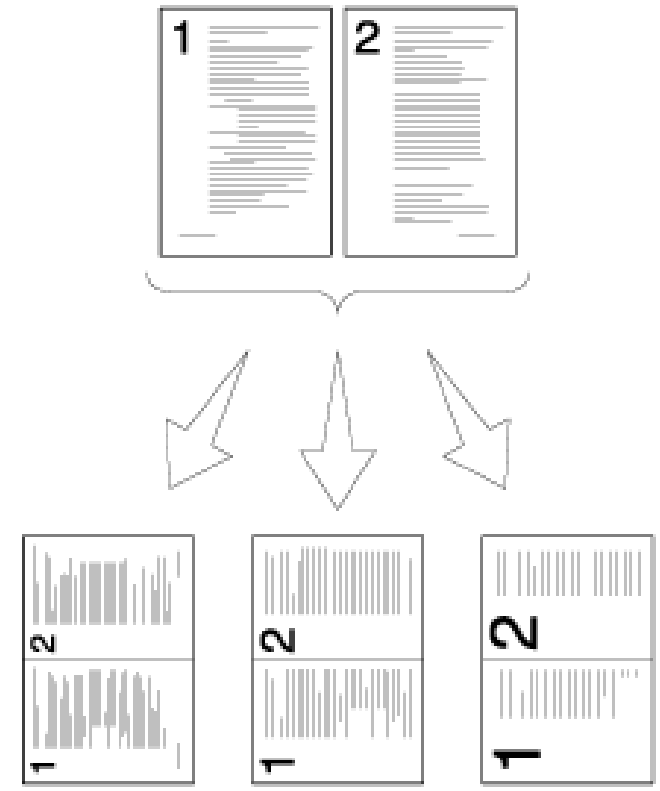
* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multiple-Up

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper:



Auto: Automatically reduces the pages to fit in one page.

ID Copy: Always prints two sides of the ID card in one page in the original size (by 100%).

Manual: Reduces the pages in the custom size depending on the setting of the `Reduce/Enlarge` menu.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Press button until `Multiple-Up` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

To customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality, see "Setting Copy Options."

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

a When you are using the document glass and it is set to `Auto`, `ID Copy`, or `Manual`, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, press button to select `Yes`, and then press the **(Set)** button.
Another display prompts you for placing next page.

Replace the document with a new document.
Ensure that `Continue` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Margin Top/Bottom

To specify the top and bottom margins of the copy:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Margin Top/Bottom` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Margin Left/Right

To specify the left and right margins of the copy:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press until `Margin Left/Right` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

0.2 inch* (4 mm)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Margin Middle

To specify the middle margin of the copy:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the ADF."

2 Press the **(Copy)** button.

3 Press button until `Margin Middle` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

0.0 inch* (0 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

5 Press the **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Changing the Default Settings

The default settings of the copy menu options including contrast and image quality can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the specified default settings are used unless they are changed by using the corresponding buttons on the operator panel.

To create your own default settings:

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Press ⌄ button until `Defaults Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `Copy Defaults` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌃ or ⌄ button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Repeat steps 5 and 6 as needed.

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

You can set the power saver timer for the printer. The printer enters the power saver mode when the printer is not used for a certain period of time.

To set the power saver timer:

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu)** button.

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ⌄ button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Ensure that `Power Saver Timer` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Press ⌃ or ⌄ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

You can specify from 1 to 30 minutes for `Sleep` or 5 to 60 minutes for `Deep Sleep`.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return to the top screen of the **(Menu)** menu, press the **(All Clear)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

19

Scanning

Scanning Overview

Use your Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

The Dell 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer provides several ways to scan your document. There are two main scanning types. One is operated on the printer side without using the scanner driver, and the other is operated on the computer side using a software and the scanner driver. See the available features below to help you find the information you need.

- Scanning - With scanner driver
- Scanning - Without scanner driver

Scanning - With scanner driver

- Scan into a graphic software such as PaperPort® (bundled software for Windows) and Adobe® Photoshop® using a TWAIN driver

  (Supporting USB and Network connections for both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh using a graphic software)

  See "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."

- Scan into a Microsoft's default program such as Windows Photo Gallery and Microsoft Paint, using a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver

  (Supporting USB and Network connections on Windows only)

  See "Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver."

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer connected via USB cable

  (Supporting USB connection for both Microsoft® Windows® and Apple Macintosh using bundled software tool of ScanButton Manager)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the feature of "Scan to Application" on the operator panel of your printer, the scanned image is saved in the location of your computer specified with the ScanButton Manager.

See "Scanning From the Operator Panel."

Scanning - Without scanner driver

- Scan and save the scanned document in a USB memory

  See "Scanning to a USB Memory."

- Scan and send the scanned document by e-mail

  See "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image."

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer or server connected to network

  See "Scanning to Network."

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning above these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

PaperPort

PaperPort that comes bundled with this printer can be used to manage all your documents. You can organize, search, and share all of your scanned documents.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

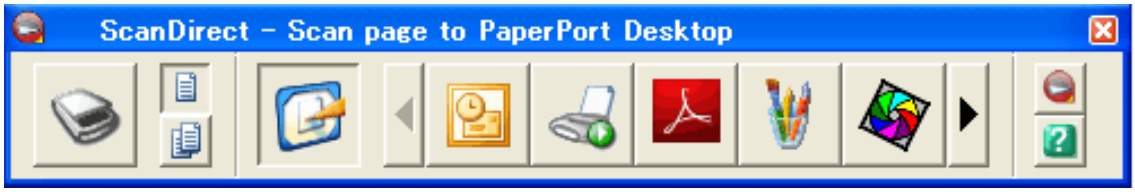
NOTE: PaperPort, is supported only on Windows.

NOTE: You can use PaperPort's built-in Optical Character Recognition (OCR) software to copy text from scanned documents so that you can use and edit the text in any text editing, word processing, or spreadsheet program. The OCR process requires textual images scanned at 150–600 dpi and 300 dpi or 600 dpi is recommended for graphics.

If you prefer to use another application, such as Adobe PhotoShop, you must assign the application to the printer by selecting it from the list of available applications through the **Select Software** button each time you start scanning. If you do not assign an application to the Select Software button, PaperPort is automatically selected when you start scanning. See "Printer Settings Utility."

Dell ScanCenter

Dell ScanCenter is a PaperPort application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without first running PaperPort. Dell ScanCenter runs as a separate application from the Windows start menu and displays the Dell ScanCenter bar. For more information about using Dell ScanCenter, refer to the **PaperPort's Help** menu.



Icons on the Dell ScanCenter bar represent the programs that are limited to PaperPort and to Dell ScanCenter. To scan and send an item to a program, click the program icon and then scan the item. Dell ScanCenter automatically starts the selected program when the scan is complete.

Scanning From the Operator Panel

NOTE: You must connect your computer via USB for selecting the Scan to Application feature from the operator panel. Network connection is not supported.

NOTE: This feature is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the **(Scan)** button.

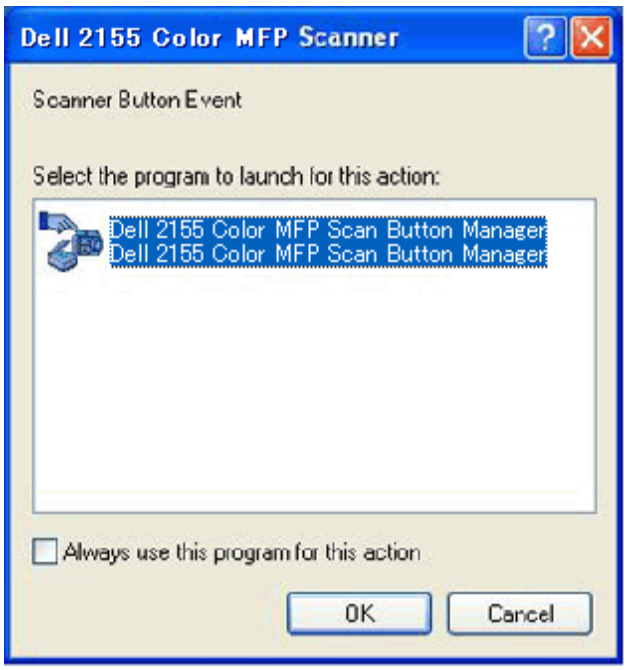
3 Press button until `Scan to Application` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Specify the scan options such as file format, color mode, resolution, and document size. For details, see "Scan to Application."

5 Press the **(Start)** button.

NOTE: If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **2155 Color MFP ScanButton Manager**, and then click **OK**.

For Microsoft Windows:


Dell 2155 Color MFP Scanner
Scanner Button Event
Select the program to launch for this action:
Dell 2155 Color MFP Scan Button Manager
Dell 2155 Color MFP Scan Button Manager
Always use this program for this action
OK
Cancel

NOTE: Once you select **2155 Color MFP ScanButton Manager** with the **Always use this program for this action** check box selected, **2155 Color MFP ScanButton Manager** will automatically open without selecting an application.

NOTE: You must use ScanButton Manager on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "ScanButton Manager."

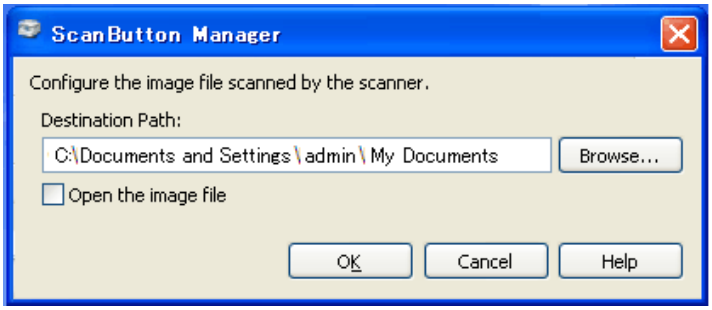
NOTE: For Macintosh, the dialog box for selecting a program is not displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

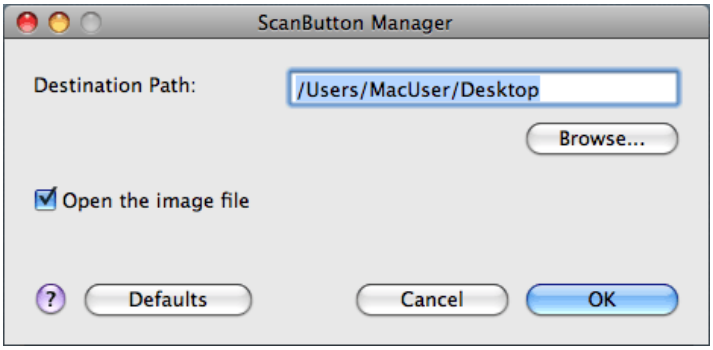
ScanButton Manager

The `Scan to Application` stores the image files in the **My Documents** folder by default, and then you can open them using the related application. Use **ScanButton Manager** to change the output destination of the obtained image files and to select whether to open the image files using the related application.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the TWAIN driver for scanning images that supports Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista®, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Apple Mac OS X 10.3.9, Mac OS X 10.4.11, Mac OS X 10.5, Mac OS X 10.6 works with various scanners.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Start the drawing software that supports TWAIN, such as **PaperPort** for Windows. For using other than **PaperPort**, proceed to step 6.

3 To set the location where to store the scanned images:

Click **Desktop→ Folders**.
In the **Folders** panel, specify a destination folder.

4 To set the scanner:

Click **Desktop→ Scan Settings→ Select...**

In the **Available Scanners** dialog box, select **TWAIN: Dell 2155 Color MFP**, and then click **OK**.

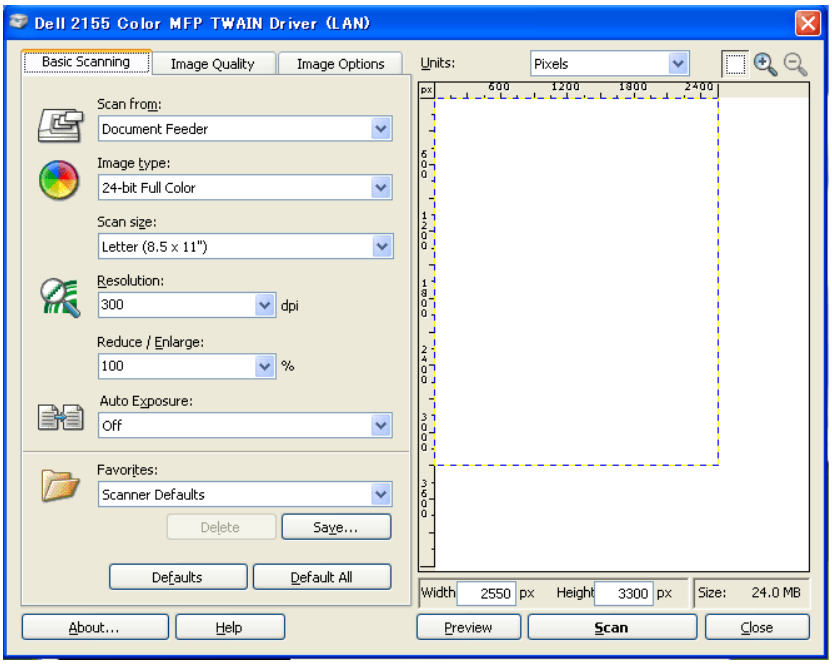
5 Make sure that **Display scanner dialog box** check box is selected on the **Scan or Get Photo** panel.

6 Click **Scan** to begin scanning process.

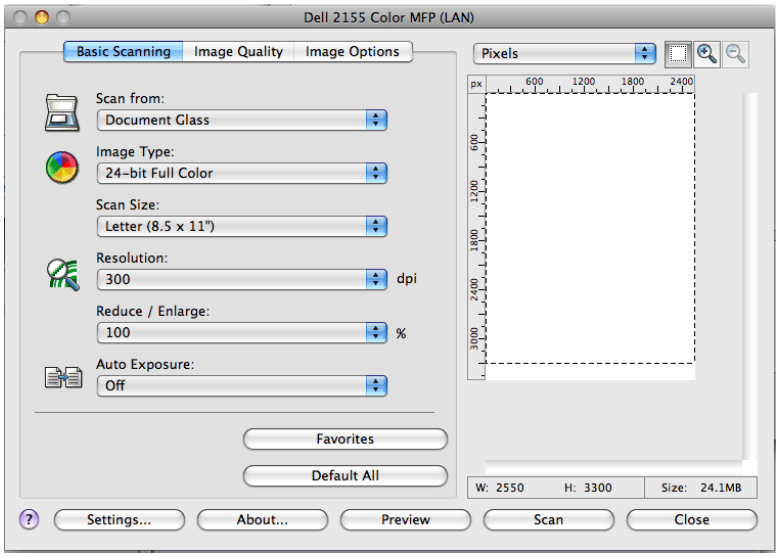
The **Dell 2155 Color MFP TWAIN Driver** window appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



NOTE: The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

7 In the **Basic Scanning** tab, set the desired preferences, and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

8 Adjust the settings in the **Image Quality** and **Image Option** tabs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

10 When the scanning is completed, click **Close** to exit the window.

11 Click **Done** to close the **PaperPort - Scan** window.
The scanned image is automatically saved in the specified location.

If you want to scan more pages, follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

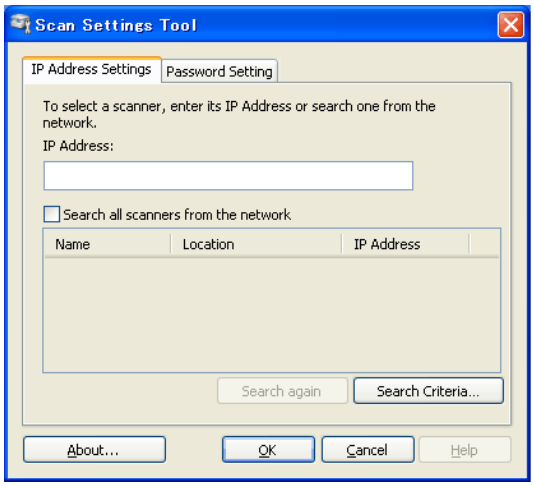
Scan Setting Tool

You can check the IP address of the printer or set the password using the Scan Setting Tool.

To open the **Scan Settings Tool**:

For Microsoft Windows:

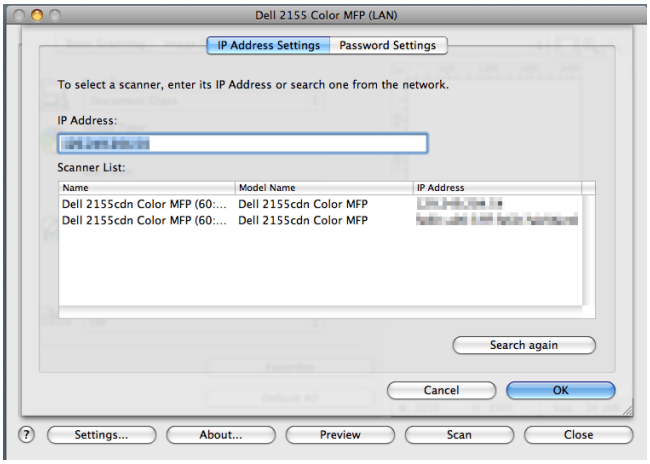
Click **Start→ Program→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Scan Settings Tool**.



For Apple Macintosh:

Click **Settings** on the main scanning window of the **Dell 2155 Color MFP** window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



IP Address Settings

In the **IP Address Settings** tab, you can check the IP address that is set for your scanner or change the scanner selection.

- **IP Address**

  Enter the IP address.

- **Search all scanners from the network** (Windows only)

  Searches scanners in your network.

- **Scanner List**

  Displays a list of scanners that are detected.

- **Search again**

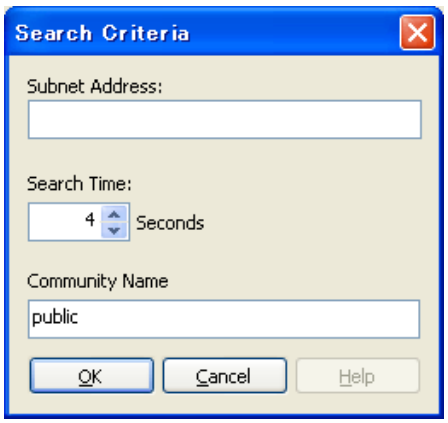
  Searches the scanners in your network.

- **Search Criteria** (Windows only)

  Displays the **Search Criteria** dialog box for setting the search condition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Search Criteria Dialog Box (Windows only)



- **Subnet Address**

  Enter the subnet address.

  - IPv4: Broadcast Address such as "192.168.1.255"
  - IPv6: Multicast Address such as "ff02::1"

- **Search Time**

  Specify a time period for searching a scanner.

- **Community Name**

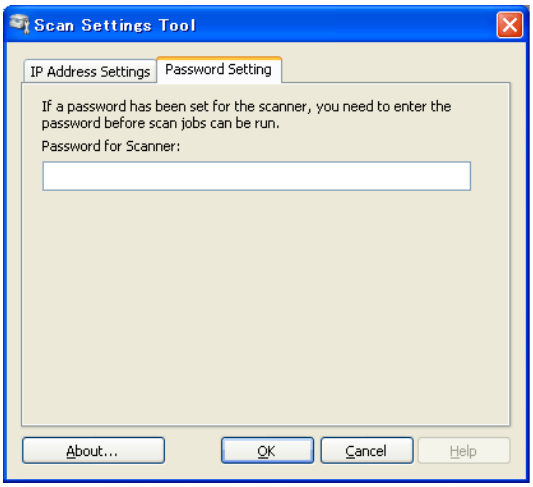
  Enter the SNMPv1/v2 community name. The default community name is "public."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

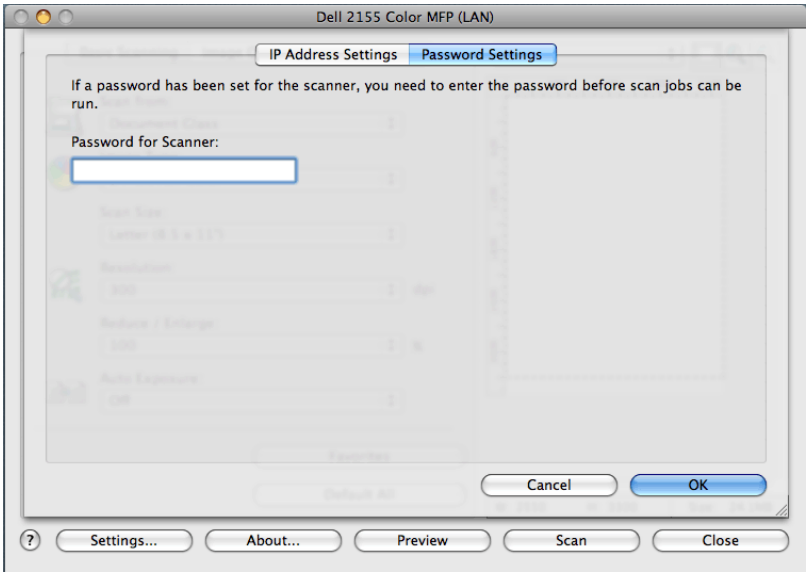
Password Setting

In the **Password Setting** tab, you can input the password that is set for your scanner to access from your computer to the printer.

For Microsoft Windows:


Scan Settings Tool
IP Address Settings
Password Setting
If a password has been set for the scanner, you need to enter the password before scan jobs can be run.
Password for Scanner:
About...
OK
Cancel
Help

For Apple Macintosh:



- **Password for Scanner**

  Enter the password.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

NOTE: The Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver is supported only on Windows.

To scan an image from the drawing software:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

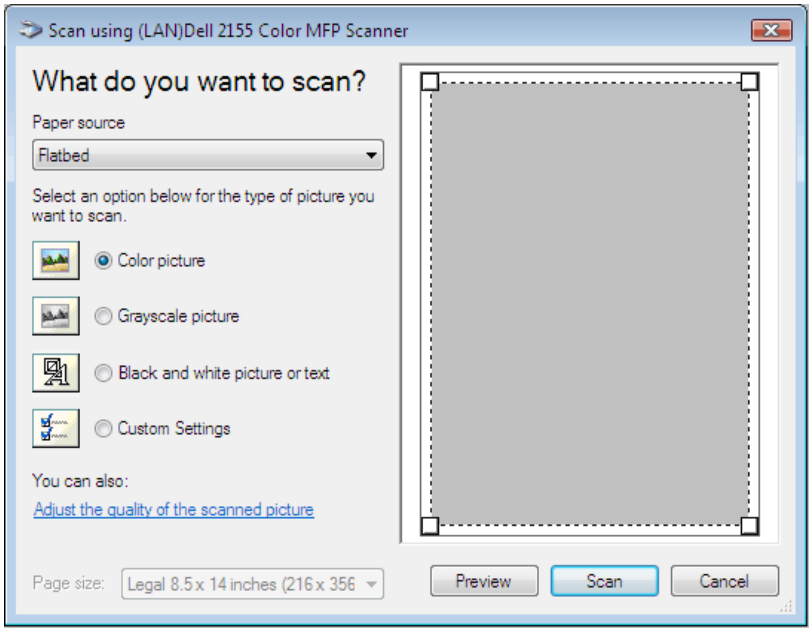
2 Start the drawing software, such as **Microsoft Paint** for Windows.

NOTE: When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use **Windows Photo Gallery** instead of **Microsoft Paint**.

3 Click **File**→ **From Scanner or Camera** (**Paint** button→ **From scanner or camera** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

The **Scan using Dell 2155 Color MFP Scanner** window appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


Scan using (LAN)Dell 2155 Color MFP Scanner
What do you want to scan?
Paper source
Flatbed
Select an option below for the type of picture you want to scan.
Color picture
Grayscale picture
Black and white picture or text
Custom Settings
You can also:
Adjust the quality of the scanned picture
Page size:
Legal 8.5 x 14 inches (216 x 356
Preview
Scan
Cancel

NOTE: The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

4 Select your desired type of picture that you want to scan, and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.

5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.

6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

7 Click **File→ Save** to save your scanned document in your desired location on your computer.

To scan an image from Control Panel:

NOTE: This feature is supported on Microsoft Window Server 2003 and Windows XP only.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

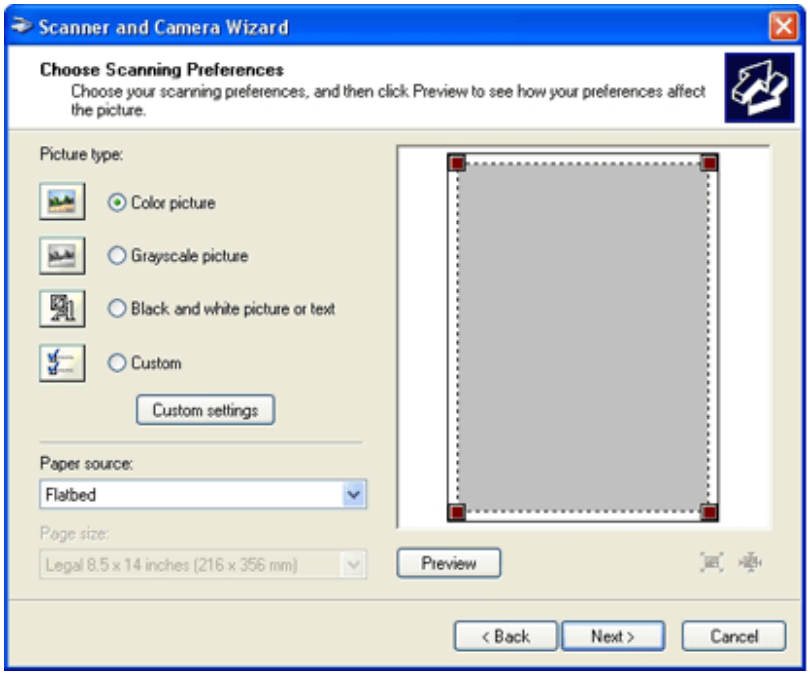
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers and Other Hardware→ Scanners and Cameras**.

3 Double-click the scanner icon. The **Scanner and Camera Wizard** launches.

4 Click **Next** to display the **Choose Scanning Preferences** page.



NOTE: The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

5 Select your desired type of picture, paper source, and paper size, and click **Next**.

6 Enter a picture name, select a file format, and specify the desired location to save the scanned document.

7 Click **Next** to start scanning.

8 Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

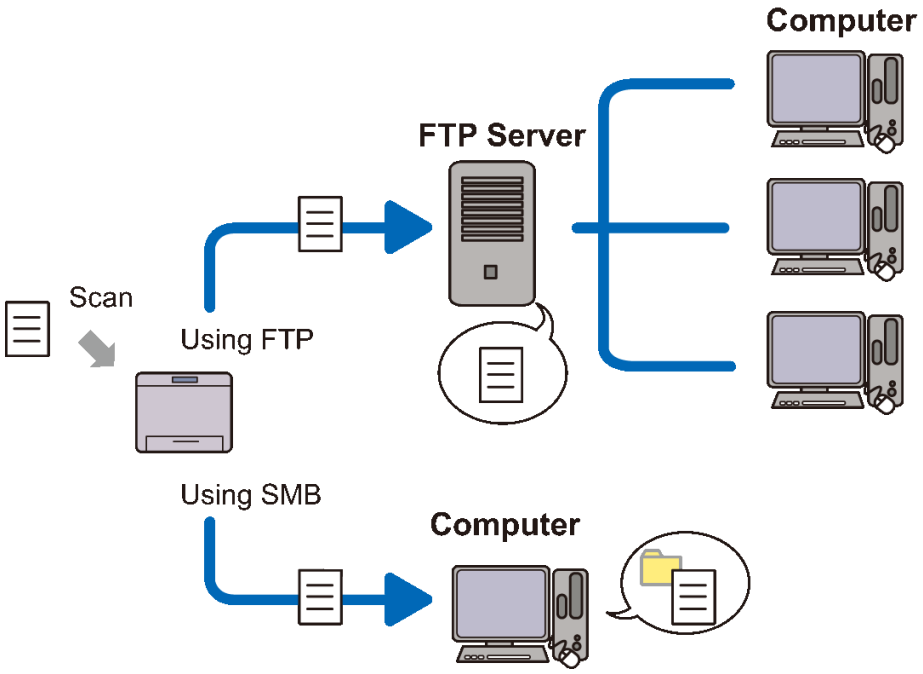
Scanning to Network

NOTE: This feature does not require a network scan driver.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overview

The Scan to Network feature allows you to send the scanned documents to a computer or FTP server.



Required operating systems:

For FTP:

NOTE: For information on how to configure the FTP service, refer to the manual provided with the software.

NOTE: Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 5.1

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0

- Microsoft Windows Vista
  Microsoft Windows Server 2008

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Microsoft Windows 7
  Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.5
- Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6

  FTP service of Mac OS X

For SMB:

NOTE: Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
- Microsoft Windows 7
- Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6

Procedures

For FTP:

1 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"

2 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

For SMB:

1 "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)"

2 "Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)"

3 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"

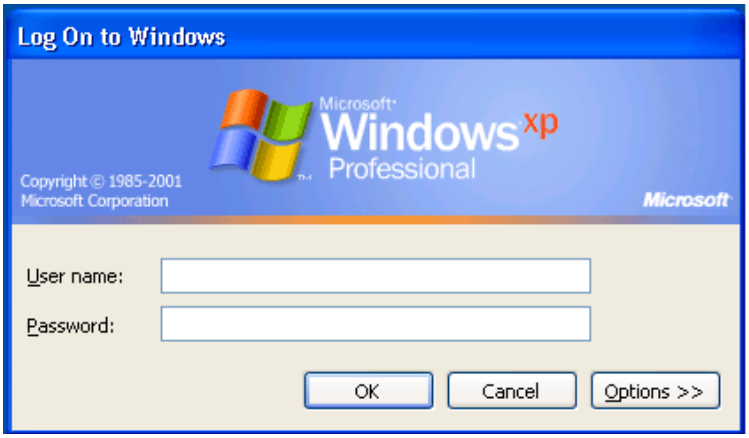
4 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)

The Scan to Network feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

For Windows XP:

1 Click **start→ Control Panel→ User Accounts**.

2 Click **Change an account**.

3 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Double-click **User Accounts**.

3 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Select **User Accounts**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Mac OS X 10.3.9:

1 Click **System Preferences**→ **Accounts**.

2 Enter a password for your user login account in **Password**.

3 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

For Mac OS X 10.4.11/10.5/10.6:

1 Click **System Preferences**→ **Accounts**.

2 Select **Change Password**.

3 Enter a password for your user login account in **New password**.

4 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)

Create a shared folder to store the scanned document from your printer.

For Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.

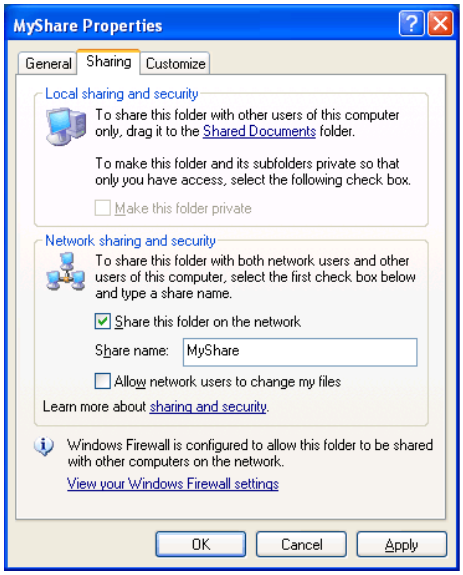
The **Properties** dialog box appears.

3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.

4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

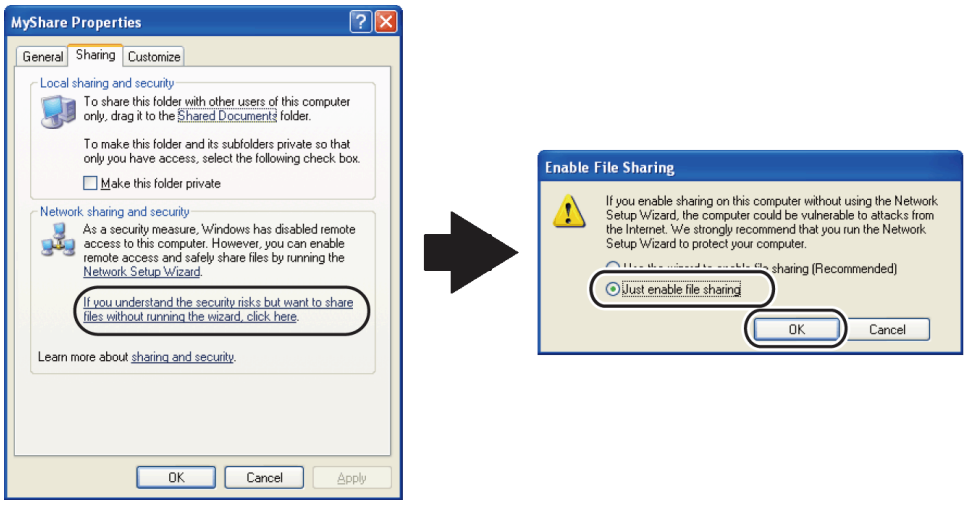
NOTE: Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


MyShare Properties
General
Sharing
Customize
Local sharing and security
To share this folder with other users of this computer only, drag it to the Shared Documents folder.
To make this folder and its subfolders private so that only you have access, select the following check box.
Make this folder private
Network sharing and security
To share this folder with both network users and other users of this computer, select the first check box below and type a share name.
Share this folder on the network
Share name:
MyShare
Allow network users to change my files
Learn more about sharing and security.
Windows Firewall is configured to allow this folder to be shared with other computers on the network.
View your Windows Firewall settings
OK
Cancel
Apply

5 Select the **Allow network users to change my files** check box, and click **OK**.

NOTE: When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.


MyShare Properties
General
Sharing
Customize
Local sharing and security
To share this folder with other users of this computer only, drag it to the Shared Documents folder.
To make this folder and its subfolders private so that only you have access, select the following check box.
Make this folder private
Network sharing and security
As a security measure, Windows has disabled remote access to this computer. However, you can enable remote access and safely share files by running the Network Setup Wizard.
If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here.
Learn more about sharing and security.
OK
Cancel
Apply
Enable File Sharing
If you enable sharing on this computer without using the Network Setup Wizard, the computer could be vulnerable to attacks from the Internet. We strongly recommend that you run the Network Setup Wizard to protect your computer.
sharing (Recommended)
Just enable file sharing
OK
Cancel

NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:
Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`, Third-level

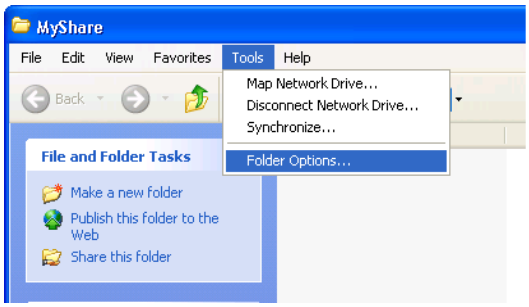
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

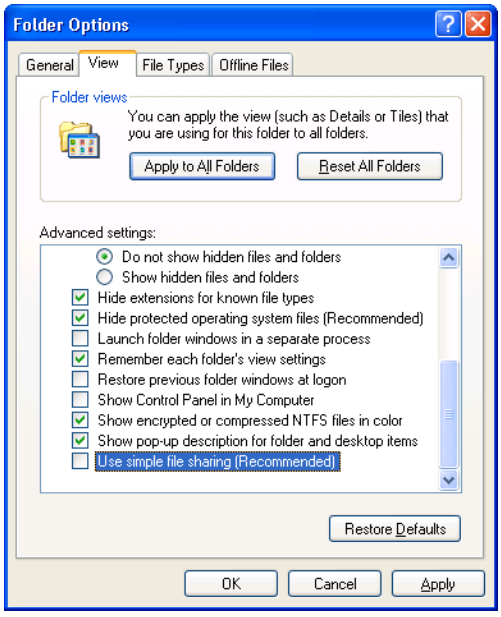
For Microsoft Windows XP Professional:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`) and double-click the folder.

2 Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.



3 Click **View** tab, and then deselect the check box of **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)**.


Folder Options
General View File Types Offline Files
Folder views
You can apply the view (such as Details or Tiles) that you are using for this folder to all folders.
Apply to All Folders
Reset All Folders
Advanced settings:
Do not show hidden files and folders
Show hidden files and folders
Hide extensions for known file types
Hide protected operating system files (Recommended)
Launch folder windows in a separate process
Remember each folder's view settings
Restore previous folder windows at logon
Show Control Panel in My Computer
Show encrypted or compressed NTFS files in color
Show pop-up description for folder and desktop items
Use simple file sharing (Recommended)
Restore Defaults
OK
Cancel
Apply

4 Click **OK**.

5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

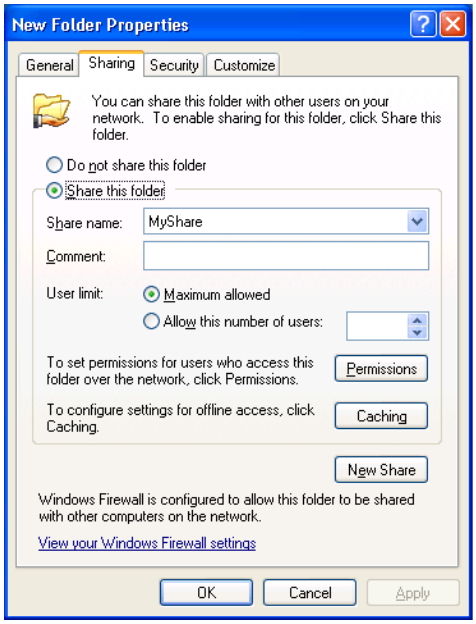
The **Properties** dialog box appears.

6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

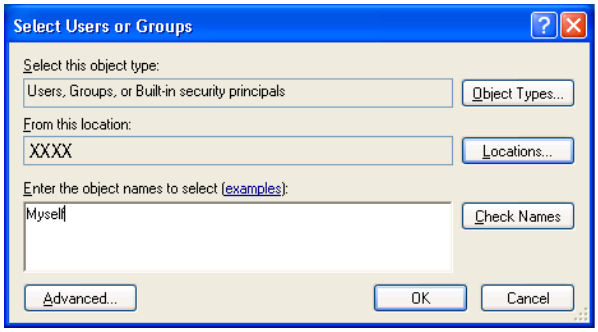
NOTE: Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.


New Folder Properties
General
Sharing
Security
Customize
You can share this folder with other users on your network. To enable sharing for this folder, click Share this folder.
Do not share this folder
Share this folder
Share name:
MyShare
Comment:
User limit:
Maximum allowed
Allow this number of users:
To set permissions for users who access this folder over the network, click Permissions.
Permissions
To configure settings for offline access, click Caching.
Caching
New Share
Windows Firewall is configured to allow this folder to be shared with other computers on the network.
View your Windows Firewall settings
OK
Cancel
Apply

8 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

9 Click **Add**.

10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `Myself`).

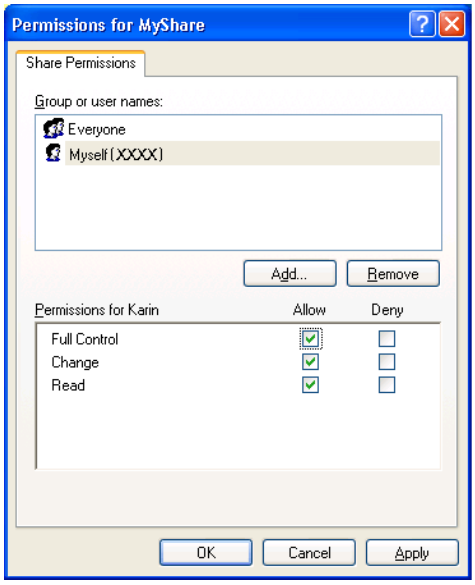


11 Click **OK**.

NOTE: Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

12 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.



13 Click **OK**.

NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:
Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`, Third-level folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

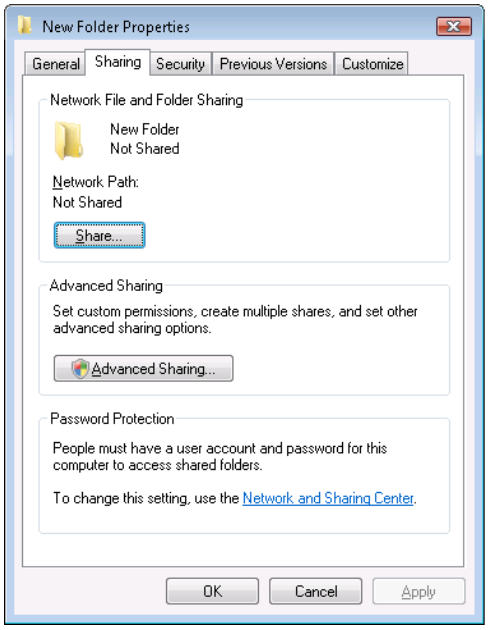
For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows 7:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.

The **Properties** dialog box appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

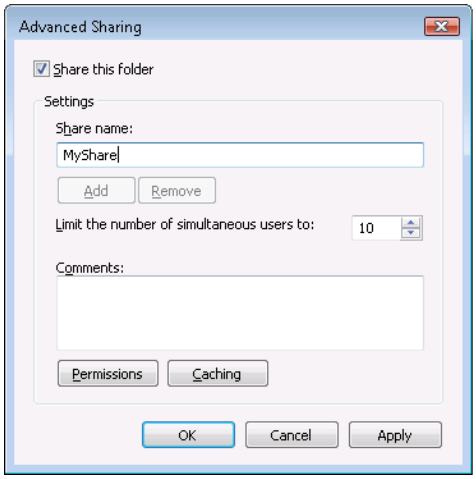


3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.

4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE: Write down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

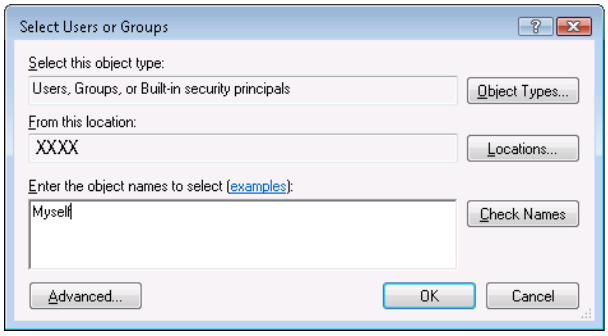


6 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

7 Click **Add**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

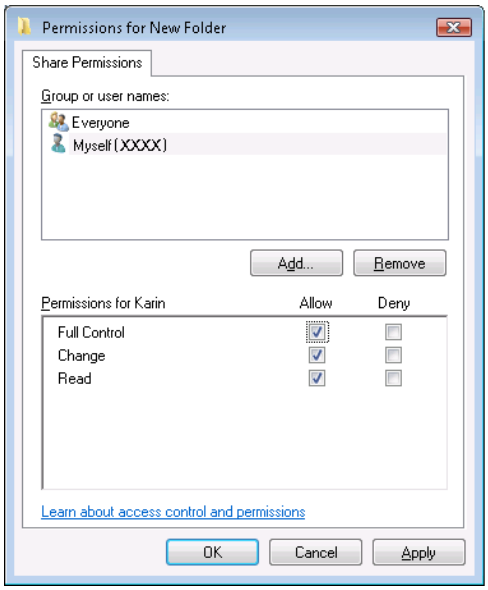
8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `Myself`).



9 Click **OK**.

10 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

NOTE: Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



11 Click **OK**.

NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:
Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`, Third-level

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

For Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11:

1 Select **Go** from the **Finder** menu, and then click **Home**.

2 Double-click **Public**.

3 Create a folder (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5 Select the **Personal File Sharing** check box and **Windows Sharing** check box.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.

3 Select the **Shared Folder** check box.

4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.

6 Select the **Share Files and folders using SMB** and account name check boxes.

7 Click **Done**.

Setting a Destination Using an Address Book

You can register the connection details for SMB and FTP server in the address book using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** or **Address Book Editor**.

Before beginning to setup a destination, make sure you have the IP addresses you need such as printer and computer.

Verifying the IP Address Setting of the Printer

To setup the server address book through the network, you will first need to locate the IP address of the printer. You can obtain this IP address from the system settings report by performing the following steps:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the (**Menu**) button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The system settings report is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Settings Reports** tab is open.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

Locating the IP Address Setting of Your Computer

You can locate the IP address of your computer by the following operations.

1 Click **Start**→ **Run**.

For Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2:
Click **Start**→ **Run**.

For Windows Vista/Windows 7:
Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Accessories**→ **Run**.

2 Type `cmd` in the text field and click **OK**. A command prompt window will open.

3 Type `ipconfig` and press **Enter**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4 Write down the IP Address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.

Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Open a web browser.

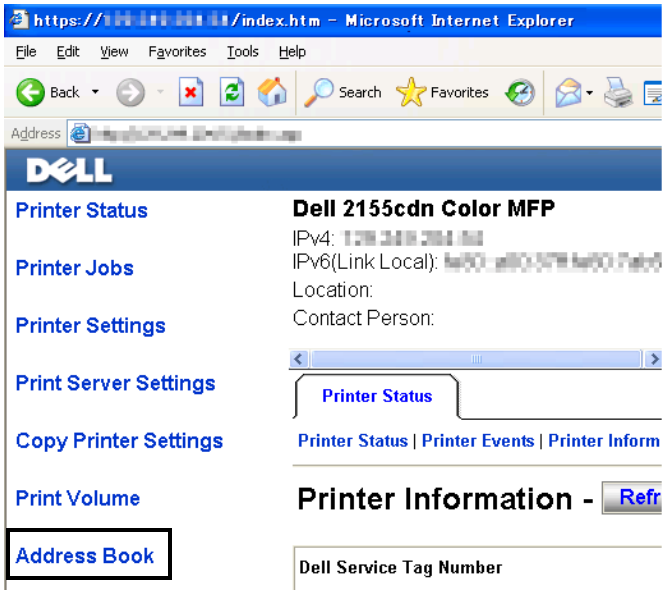
2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and press the **Enter** key.

The web page of the printer appears.

NOTE: For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Address Setting of the Printer."

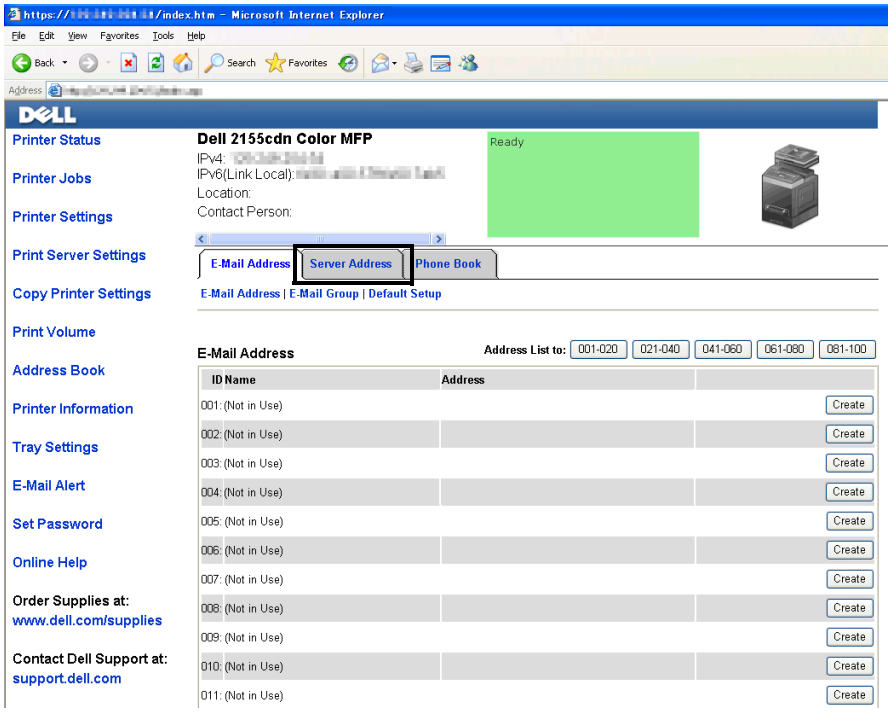
3 Click **Address Book**. If a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct **User Name** and **Password**.

NOTE: The default user name is "admin", and the default password is left blank (NULL).



4 Click the **Server Address** tab, and then click a **Create** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Server Address page appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select **FTP** if you store document on a FTP server. Select **SMB** if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(3) Server Address	Enter a FTP server name that you have shared out or a server name or IP address of your computer. • For FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100 • For SMB: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100
(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
(5) Server Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.
(6) Server Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP or 139 for SMB. Available ports are: FTP: 21, 5000 - 65535 SMB: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535
(7) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server. • For FTP: Contact the system administrator. • For SMB: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.
(8) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. • For FTP: Contact the system administrator • For SMB: Empty password is not valid in the Network (Computer) feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
(9) Re-enter Password	Re-enter your password.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

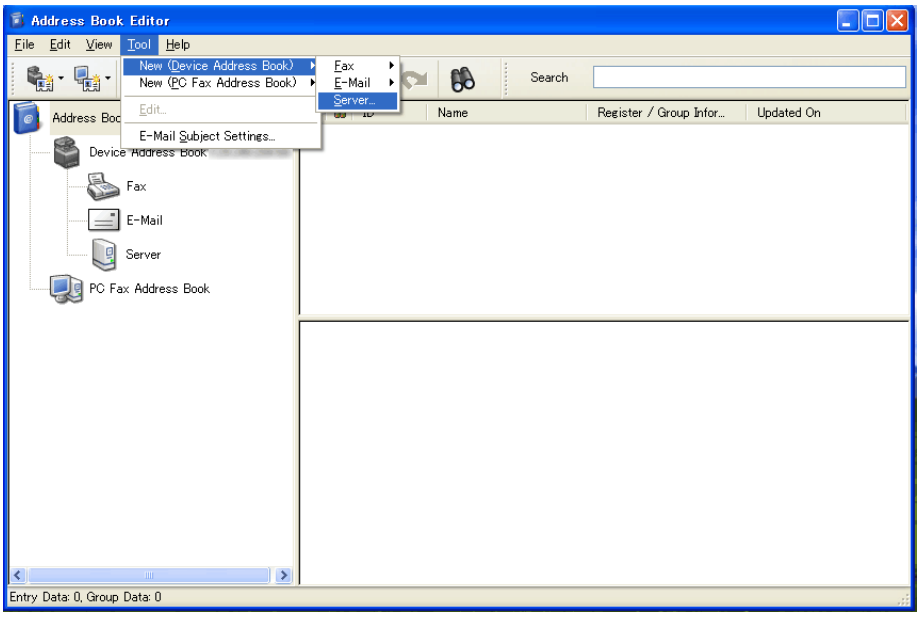
Using Address Book Editor

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Address Book Editor**.

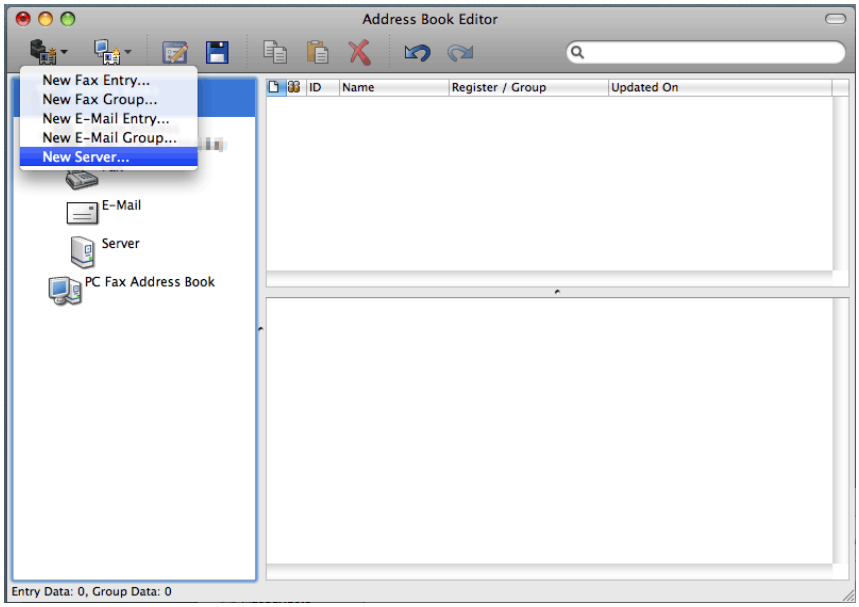
2 Click **Tool→ New (Device Address Book)→ Server**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



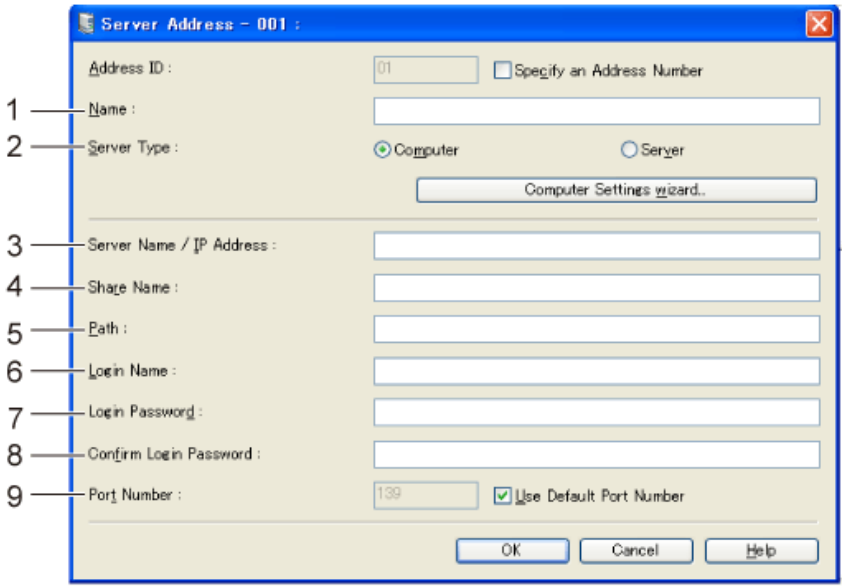
For Apple Macintosh:



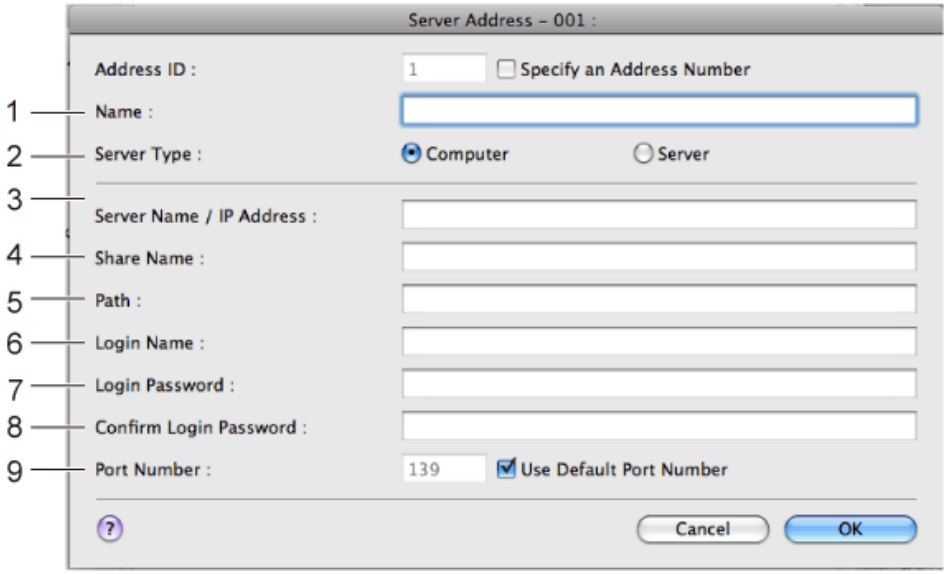
Server Address dialog box appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select **Computer** if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer. Select **Server** if you store documents on a FTP server.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(3) Server Name/IP Address	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server name that you have shared out. The following are examples: • For Computer: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100 • For Server: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100
(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
(5) Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.
(6) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server. • For Computer: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1. • For Server: Contact the system administrator.
(7) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. • For Computer: Empty password is not valid in the `Network(Computer)` feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.) • For Server: Contact the system administrator.
(8) Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.
(9) Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for Computer and 21 for FTP server. Available ports are: For Computer: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535 For Server: 21, 5000 - 65535

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sending the Scanned File on the Network

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the **(Scan)** button.

3 Press button until `Scan to Network` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `Scan to` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until the desired address book is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

`Network(Computer)`: Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

`Network(Server)`: Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.

`Search Address Book`: Searches a network address from the Address Book.

NOTE: The network addresses need to be registered before you can select `Network(Computer)` or `Network(Server)` on the operator panel.

6 Press button until the desired destination is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Specify the scan options such as file format, color mode, resolution, and document size. For details, see "File Format."

8 Press the **(Start)** button to begin sending the scanned files.

Scanning to a USB Memory

The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to store scanned image directly to a USB memory attached to the printer without using software.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Types of a USB Memory

You can use a USB memory with the following interfaces:

- USB 1.1
- USB 2.0

The USB memory must be formatted in FAT file systems (FAT16, FAT32, or VFAT) before inserting the memory device into the USB port of the printer.

NOTE: If the USB memory is formatted in a file system other than above, the printer may not recognize that the USB memory is attached.

NOTE: A USB memory with authentication feature and some brands of USB memories cannot be used with this printer.

To store the scanned images to a USB memory:

1. Insert a USB memory into the USB port of the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.
2. Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

   OR

   Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
3. Press the **(Scan)** button.
4. Ensure that `Scan to USB Memory` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
5. Press the **(Start)** button to begin scanning the document.
6. Remove the USB memory from the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.

Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image

To save the scanned image to a USB memory, specify a folder in the USB memory before executing the scan job.

1. Select a folder to save the scanned image from the printer operator panel.

   NOTE: The default saving location is the root directory of the USB memory.

   NOTE: You cannot directly enter a folder path using the numeric keypad.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

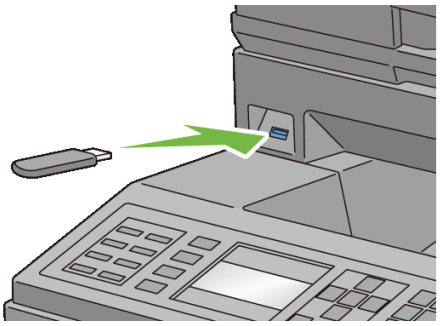
NOTE: You can select any folder in the USB memory but cannot create a new folder in this step. You should always create a new folder before connecting the memory to the printer.

If the name of the scanned image has already existed in the folder, the printer automatically generate a new file name to save the data.

Inserting and Removing a USB Memory

You can insert the USB memory before scanning images.

Before removing the USB memory, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB memory.



NOTICE: If you remove the USB memory while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB memory or the USB memory device itself may be destroyed.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

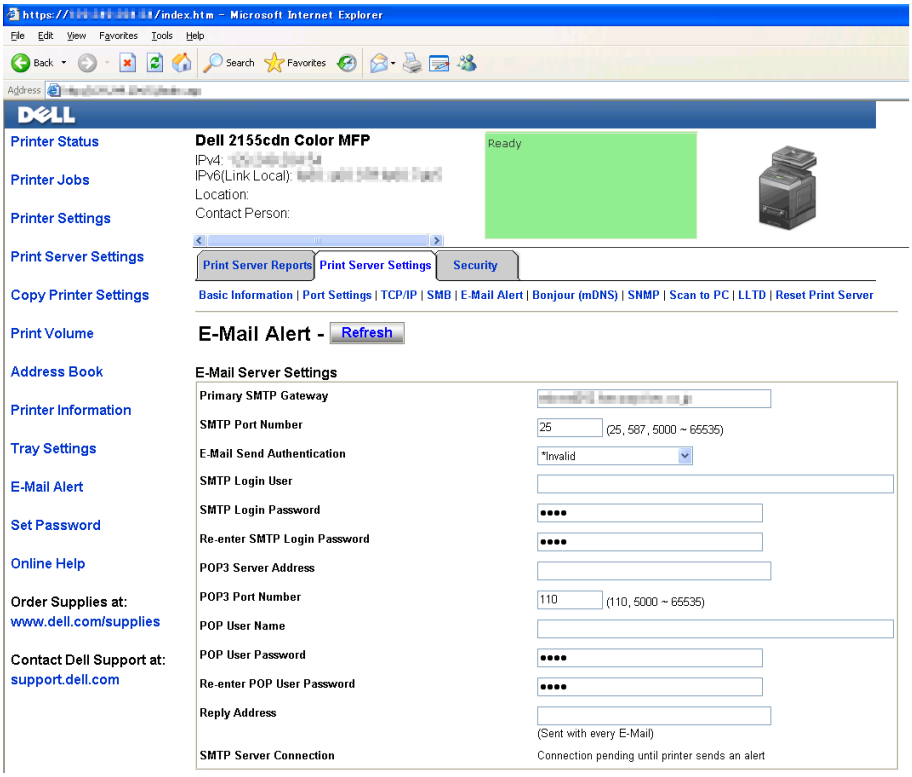
- Set E-Mail Alert
- Register a user
- Start to send e-mail with the scanned file

Setting an E-Mail Alert

1 From the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **E-Mail Alert**.

The **E-Mail Server Settings** page appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2 Specify the settings for E-Mail Alert as follows:

Primary SMTP Gateway: Enter the IP address of the e-mail server.

E-Mail Send Authentication: Specify Invalid to enable the e-mail server.

NOTE: If an error message including `016-506` or `016-764` is displayed, contact your server administrator for the settings for **E-Mail Send Authentication**.

3 Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

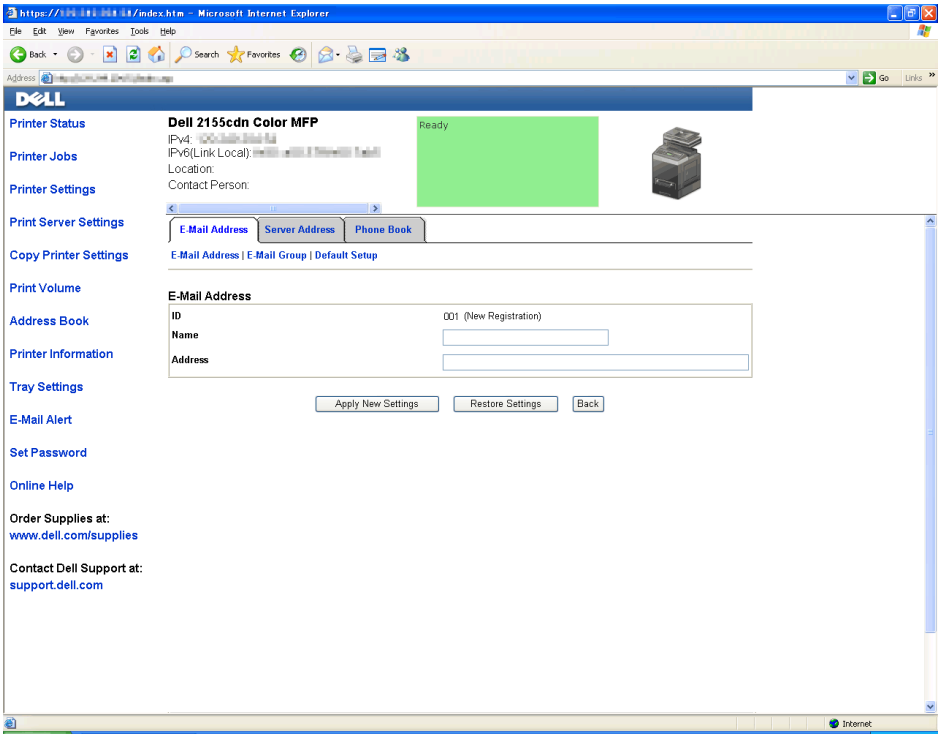
Registering a New User

1 From the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Address Book**, and then click the **E-Mail Address** tab.

2 Click the **Create** button.

The **E-Mail Address** page for registering a new user appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Enter the following:

- Name
- Address

4 Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

1 Press the **(Scan)** button.

2 Press button until `Scan to E-Mail` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Email to` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until the desired menu is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

`Keypad`: Enter an e-mail address directly.

`Address Book`: Select an e-mail address registered in the address book.

`Email Group`: Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

`Search Local Address Book`: Search an e-mail address from the local address book.

`Search Server Address Book`: Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

NOTE: For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."

NOTE: If you are using the LDAP server address book, `Server Address Book` must be set to `On`. For details, see "LDAP Server" and "Server Address Book."

NOTE: The e-mail addresses need to be registered before you can select `Address Book` on the operator panel.

5 Press ▶ button to select `TO` or `BCC`.

6 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin sending e-mail.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

20

Faxing

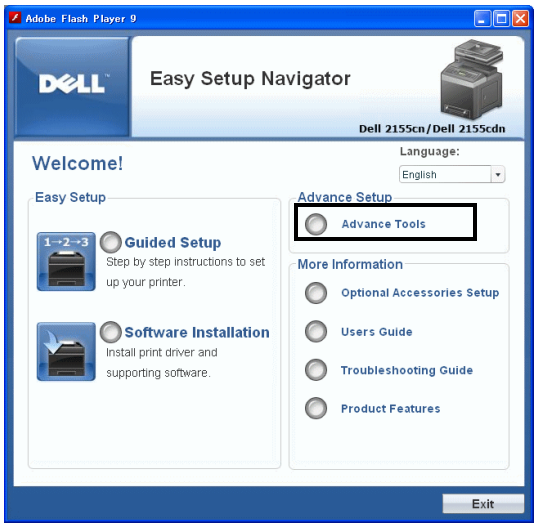
NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Easy Setup Navigator

You can specify the country, line type, tone/pulse, receive mode, DRPD pattern, fax header name, and fax number.

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

2 Click **Advanced Tools** on the **Easy Setup Navigator** window.
The **Advanced Tools** window appears.



3 Click **Fax Configuration**.

4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

Available settings are:

- Country
- Line Type
- Tone/Pulse

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Receive Mode
- DRPD Pattern
  (This setting is available only when a distinctive ring service is installed on your telephone line by your telephone company.)
- FAX Header Name
- FAX Number

NOTE: To make initial settings from the printer operator panel, see "Setting Your Country."

Setting Your Country

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Country` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Select the country where the printer is used.

The printer must be rebooted after you set the country settings. When a message prompting you to reboot the printer, select `Yes`. After the reboot, the top menu is displayed on the operator panel.

NOTE: In case of either one, when you configure the country setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ⌄ button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until `Fax Number` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Enter your fax number using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

NOTE: If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the ⇦ **(Backspace)** button to delete the last digit.

7 Press ⌃ or ⌄ button until `Fax Header Name` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Enter your name or company name using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

You can enter alphanumeric characters using the numeric keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 1, *, and # buttons.

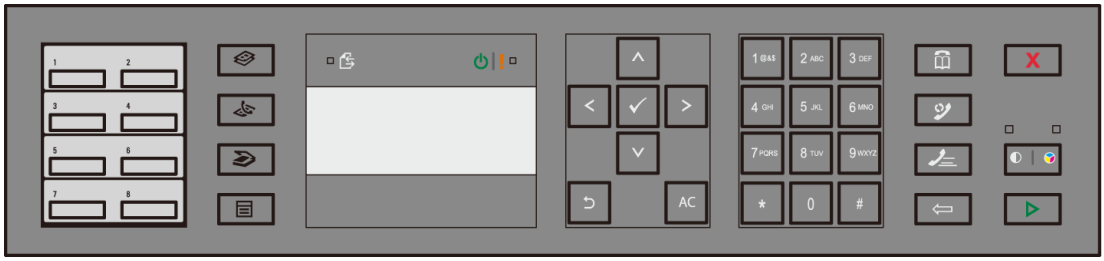
For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters."

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter names and numbers. For example, when you set up your printer, you enter your name or your company's name and telephone number. When you store speed or group dial numbers, you may also need to enter the corresponding names.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



- When prompted to enter a letter, press the appropriate button until the correct letter appears on the display.

  For example, to enter the letter O, press 6:

  – Each time you press 6, the display shows a different letter, M, N, O and finally 6.

  – To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.

  – Press the ✓ **(Set)** button when you are finished.

Keypad Letters and Numbers

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	1 @ . _ - (space) \ & ( ) ! " # $ % ' ~ ^ | ` ; : ? , + * / = [ ] { } < >
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h i G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9
0	0
*	@ . _ -
#	(space) \ & ( )

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing Numbers or Names

If you make a mistake while entering a number or name, press the ⇦ **(Backspace)** button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the **(Redial/Pause)** button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.

Setting the Time and Date

NOTE: It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

To set the time and date:

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
3. Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
4. Press ⌄ button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
5. Press ⌄ button until `Date & Time` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
6. Ensure that `Set Date & Time` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
7. Press ⌃ or ⌄ button until the desired time zone is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
8. Press ⌃ or ⌄ button or enter the date using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
9. Press ⌃ or ⌄ button or enter the time using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return to the top screen of the **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

NOTE: The printer beeps and does not allow you to proceed to the next step if a wrong number is entered.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
5. Press button until `Date & Time` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
6. Press button until `Time Format` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
7. Press or button until the desired format is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   To return to the top screen of the **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Setting Sounds

Speaker Volume

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Press button until `Line Monitor` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press or button until the desired volume is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on again.

Ringer Volume

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Ring Tone Volume` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press or button until the desired volume is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on again.

Specifying the Fax Settings Options

Changing the Fax Settings Options

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6 Press ^ or v button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

If necessary, repeat steps 5 and 6.

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option	Description
Receive Mode	You can select the default fax receiving mode. • Fax: (automatic receive mode) • Telephone (manual receive mode): Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by setting `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the ▷ **(Start)** button. • Telephone/Fax: When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Rec Fax/Tel`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call. • Ans Machine/Fax: The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported. • DRPD: Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Option	Description
Auto Rec Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.
Auto Rec Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Receive Mode` is set to `Telephone/Fax`.
Line Type	You can select the default line type. • PSTN • PBX
Tone/Pulse	You can select the dialing type. • Tone • Pulse (10PPS) • Pulse (20PPS)
Resend Delay	You can specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.
Redial Attempts	You can specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay	Your printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1–15 minutes can be entered.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Option	Description
Junk Fax Setup	You can reject faxes sent from unwanted stations. The system only accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes. Select `Off` to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax. Select `On` to turn the feature on.
Remote Receive	You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	You can specify the tone when `Remote Receive` is set to `On`.
Fax Header	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes. Select `Off` to turn this feature off. Select `On` to turn this feature on. Note that if United States is selected for the setting of Country, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to On and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."
Fax Header Name	Specifies the sender's name to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Number	Specifies the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes. This feature is available when you set `Fax Header` to `On`. The number specified in Fax Number is used in the printer ID.
Fax Cover Page	You can set whether to attach a cover page to faxes when sending faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Duplex Print	You can set whether to make duplex print when you print faxes. Select `Off` to print faxes on one side of a sheet of paper. Select `On` to print faxes on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Option	Description
Sent Fax Fwd	You can set your printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number. When a fax arrives at your printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the printer dials the fax number that you have specified and sends the fax. Select `Off` not to forward incoming faxes. Select `Forward` to forward incoming faxes without printing. If an error occurs during forwarding a received fax, the printer prints the fax. Select `Print and Forward` to forward and print incoming faxes.
Fax Fwd Number	You enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	You can specify whether or not to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	You can set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PBX).
Discard Size	When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your printer, you can set the printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and `Discard Size` is set to `Auto Reduction`, the printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If `Discard Size` is set to other than `Auto Reduction`, the data within the margin will be discarded.
ECM	You can set whether to enable or disable the ECM (Error Correction Mode).
Modem Speed	You can set the modem speed.
Country	You can select the country where the printer is used. You can change this setting when: • No jobs in operation • No fax jobs waiting in the memory
Fax Activity	You can set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Option	Description
Fax Transmit	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple locations.
Fax Protocol	You can set whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.

NOTE: Prefix Dial supports only the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
5. Press button until `Line Type` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
6. Press button until `PBX` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
7. Press button until `Prefix Dial` is highlighted, and then press **(Set)** button.
8. Press button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
9. Press button until `Prefix Dial Num` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
10. Enter a maximum of five-digit prefix number from 0–9, *, and #, and then press the **(Set)** button.
11. Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on again.

Advanced Fax Settings

NOTE: The advanced fax settings are only meant for advanced users. Incorrect settings on the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer may damage the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you are experiencing fax send or receive errors, there is an advanced fax settings menu which you can access and change the settings accordingly.

To enter the Diagnostic Menu (Customer Mode), follow the instructions.

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Disconnect all network, phone line, and USB cables from the device.

3 Turn on the printer while holding down ^ and v buttons to start in `Customer Mode`.

After all the advanced fax settings have been made, you will need to turn off and on the printer for the new settings to be effective.

Fax Data Encoding Method

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) data encoding method. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this data encoding method. You can disable the JBIG and select the Modified Huffman (MH), Modified Read (MR), or Modified Modified Read (MMR) encoding with the following instructions.

You can change the modem transmission encoding with the following instructions.

1 Turn on the printer while holding down ^ and v buttons to start in Customer Mode.

2 Press v button to select `Fax/Scanner Diag`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press v button until `Parameter` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `FAX Parameter` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press v button until `G3M TX Coding` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press v button until the desired encoding appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

You can select `MH`, `MR`, or `MMR`.

You can change the modem receive encoding with the following instructions.

1 Turn on the printer while holding down ^ and v buttons to start in Customer Mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Press ⌄ button to select `Fax/Scanner Diag`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Parameter` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `FAX Parameter` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until `G3M RX Coding` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until the desired encoding appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

You can select `MH`, `MR`, or `MMR`.

Diagnosing the Fax Connection

You can diagnose the Fax connection using the FAX Line Diagnosis feature that can detect the abnormalities of telephone line connection.

1 Turn on the printer while holding down ^ and ⌄ buttons to start in Customer Mode.

2 Press ⌄ button to select `Fax/Scanner Diag`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `FAX Test` appears, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 When the message `Check FAX Connection` appears, press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 When the message `Ready to Start` appears, press the ✓ **(Set)** button to start diagnosing the FAX connection.

One of the following diagnosing result is displayed.

Diagnosing result	Description
`Connection not Detected` `Please Reconnect Telephone Line`	The telephone line cord is not connected. Make sure that the telephone line cord is securely connected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cable Connected Wrongly Reconnect Telephone Line from Wall Jack to Line Connection	The telephone line cord is connected to the wrong connector. Make sure that the telephone line cord is connected at one end to the wall jack connector (LINE) of your printer and at the other end to an active wall jack. If you use a telephone or answering machine, connect to the phone connector ( ).
Fax Connection OK Please Check Setting of Tone/Pulse in Admin Menu after Restart Printer	The telephone line cord is properly connected. Check the Tone/Pulse setting. For information on Tone/Pulse setting, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer. You can also directly fax data transferred from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system.

Loading an Original Document

You can use the ADF or the document glass to load an original document for faxing. Using the ADF, you can load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) paper at a time. Using the document glass, you can load one sheet at a time.

NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

To fax a document using the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF):

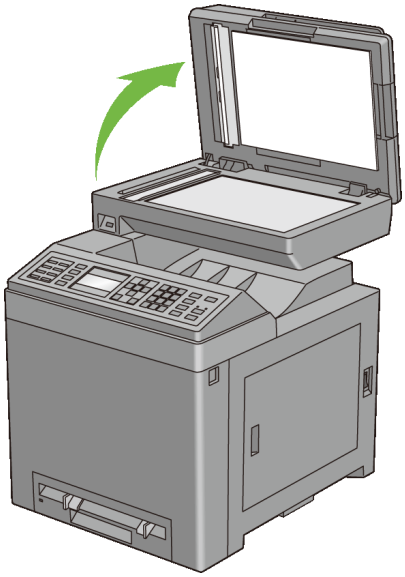
1 Place the document(s) facing up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")

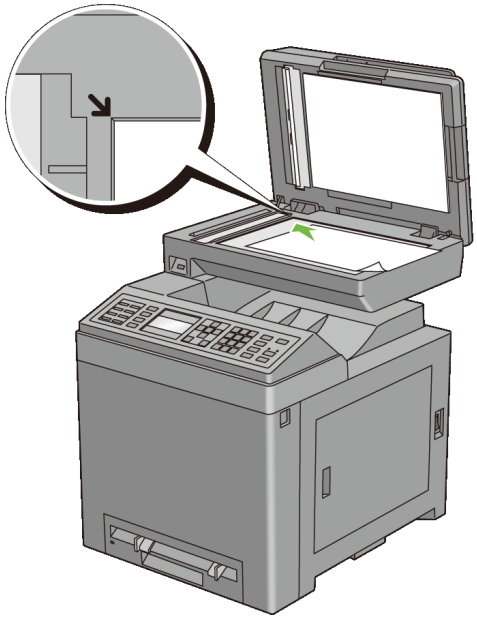
To fax a document from the document glass:

1 Open the document cover.



2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")

4 Close the document cover.

NOTE: Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.

NOTE: If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

Adjusting the Document Resolution

You can improve the quality of the fax document by adjusting the resolution, especially for the document in low-quality or containing the photographic image.

1 Press the **(Fax)** button.

2 Press button until `Resolution` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Standard*	Used for documents with normal sized characters.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fine	Used for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Used for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the note below.
Photo	Used for documents containing photographic images.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

NOTE: Faxes scanned in the Super Fine resolution transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Adjusting the Document Contrast

You can adjust the contrast of the fax document to be lighter or darker than the original.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the **(Fax)** button.

3 Press button until `Lighter/Darker` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press or button to move for adjusting the darkness level, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sending a Fax Automatically

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the **(Fax)** button.

3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

4 To select a fax number, do one of the followings:

- Ensure that `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

  Press button until `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

- Press the One Touch Dial button, and go to step 6.

  You need to register a speed dial number before you can use the One Touch Dial button. (For details, see "Setting Speed Dial.")

- Press the **(Contacts)** button, and select one of the followings:
  - `All Entries` - Displays a list of registered fax numbers.
  - `Group Dial` - Displays a list of registered group dial numbers.
  - `Search Local` - Searches a fax number from the local Phone Book.
  - `Search Server` - Searches a fax number from the LDAP server. This item is displayed when `Server Phone Book` is `On`.
- Press the **(Redial/Pause)** button to redial, and go to step 6.
- Press the **(Speed Dial)** button. (For details, see "Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial.")

5 Press button until the desired recipient is highlighted, and then press button to select the recipients. Press the **(Set)** button to confirm.

6 Press the **(Start)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Press ^ or v button to select Yes to add more documents or to select No to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The printer starts dialing the number, and then sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

NOTE: You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by pressing the X **(Cancel)** button.

NOTE: Pressing the ▷ **(Start)** button does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax service is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax service.)

Sending a Fax Manually

1. Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

   OR

   Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2. Press the **(Fax)** button.
3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
4. Press v button until OnHook is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
5. Press ^ or v button until On is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
6. Enter the remote fax machine's fax number using the numeric keypad.
7. If the document is loaded on the ADF, press the ▷ **(Start)** button.

   If the document is not loaded on the ADF, press the ▷ **(Start)** button, press ^ or v button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by pressing the **(Cancel)** button.

NOTE: Pressing the **(Start)** button does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax service is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax service.)

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display.

If you receive an error message, press the **(Cancel)** button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For further details, see "Printing a Report."

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

NOTE: The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the **(Fax)** button.

3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

4 Press button until `Delayed Start` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press or button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Enter the start time using the numeric keypad or press or button, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Press or button until `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

8 Ensure that `Keypad` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

9 Enter the number of the remote machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

You can also use speed or group dial numbers. (For details, see "Automatic Dialing.")

10 Press the **(Start)** button to scan data.

Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

NOTE: If you turn off and on the printer, the stored documents are sent as soon as the printer is activated.

NOTE: If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax service, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax service.)

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

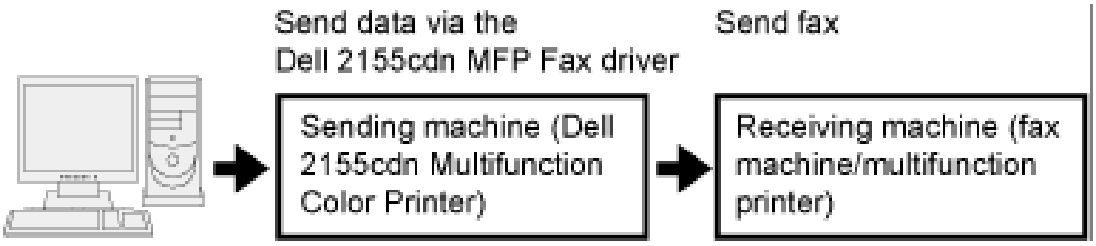
You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.

NOTE: Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax service, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax service.)

Example


Send data via the
Dell 2155cdn MFP Fax driver
Send fax
Sending machine (Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer)
Receiving machine (fax machine/multifunction printer)

Procedure

NOTE: The names of the dialog boxes and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

NOTE: To use this feature, you must install the fax driver. (For details, see "Inserting the Drivers and Utility CD" for Windows or "Installing the Drivers and Software" for Macintosh.)

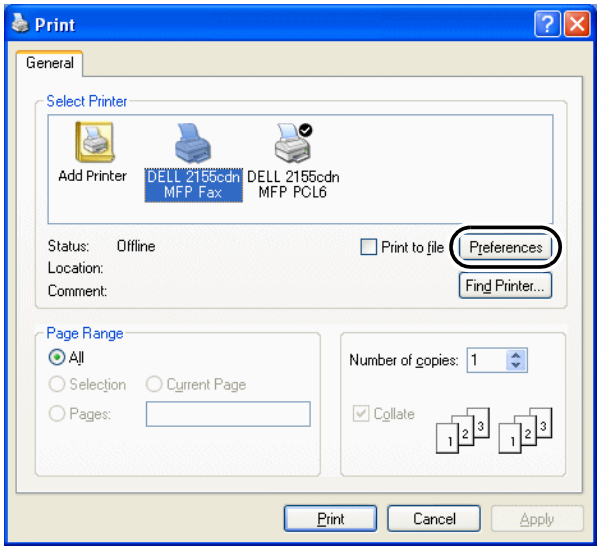
1 Open the file you want to send by fax.

2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell 2155cdn MFP Fax**.

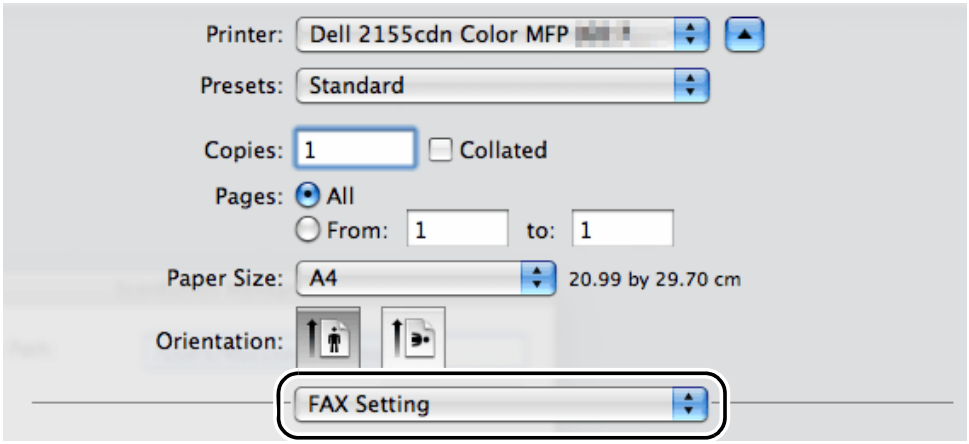
3 Click **Preferences** in Windows, or select **FAX Setting** in Macintosh.

For Microsoft Windows:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



For Apple Macintosh:

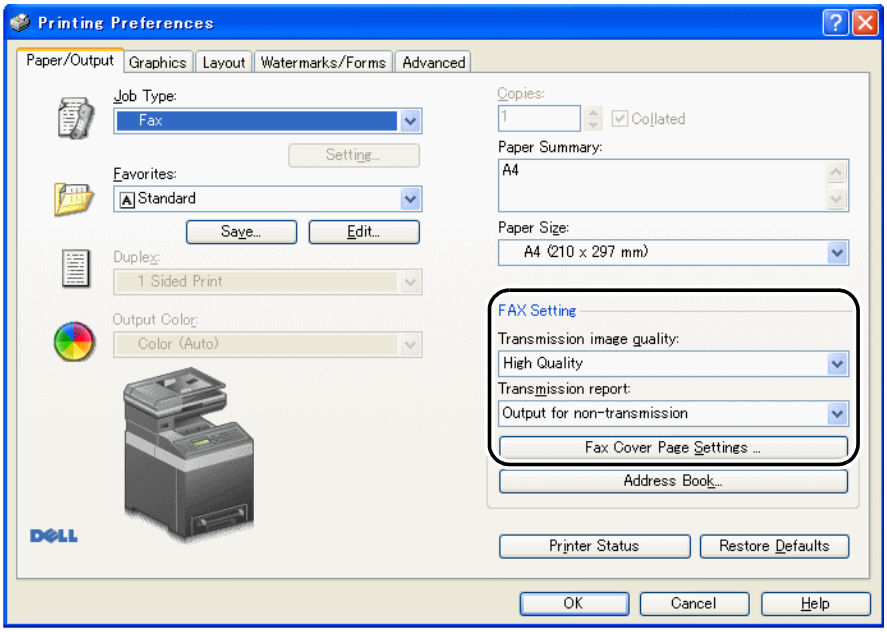


4 When the setting dialog box appears, specify the following settings.

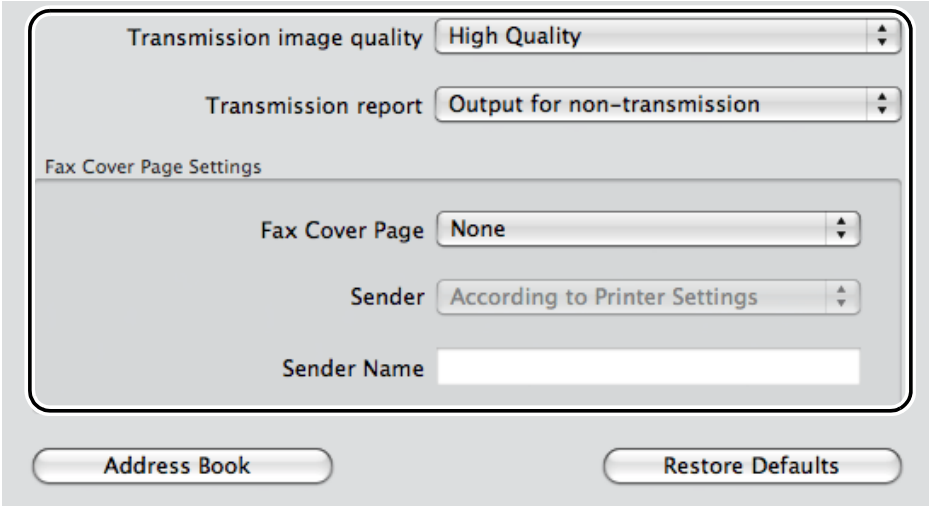
NOTE: The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



a. Transmission image quality

Purpose:

To set the output quality.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Standard	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality*	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super-high image quality	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports Super Fine resolution. See the notes below.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

NOTE: Faxes printed in the Super-high image quality by Direct Fax driver transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

b. Transmission report

Purpose:

To specify whether to print a fax transmission result.

Values:

Output regularly	Prints a transmission result after every fax transmission.
Output for non-transmission*	Prints a transmission result only when an error occurs.
Do not output	Does not print fax transmission results.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

c. Fax Cover Page Settings

Click **Fax Cover Page Settings** button in Windows or select **Fax Cover Page Settings** for Feature Sets in Macintosh.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to attach a cover page to your fax.

Values:

According to Printer Settings	Determines whether to attach a cover page to your fax depending on the setting you specify in `Fax Cover Page` on the operator panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Attach	Attaches a cover page to your fax.
None*	Does not attach a cover page to your fax.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Sender

Purpose:

To specify whether to print the sender's name on the fax cover page.

Values:

According to Printer Settings*	Determines whether or not to print the sender's name on the fax cover page based on the printer settings.
Enter a sender name	Allows you to enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page in **Sender Name**.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Sender Name

Purpose:

To enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page.

The sender's name can be up to 30 characters. If it exceeds 30 characters, only the first 30 characters will be printed.

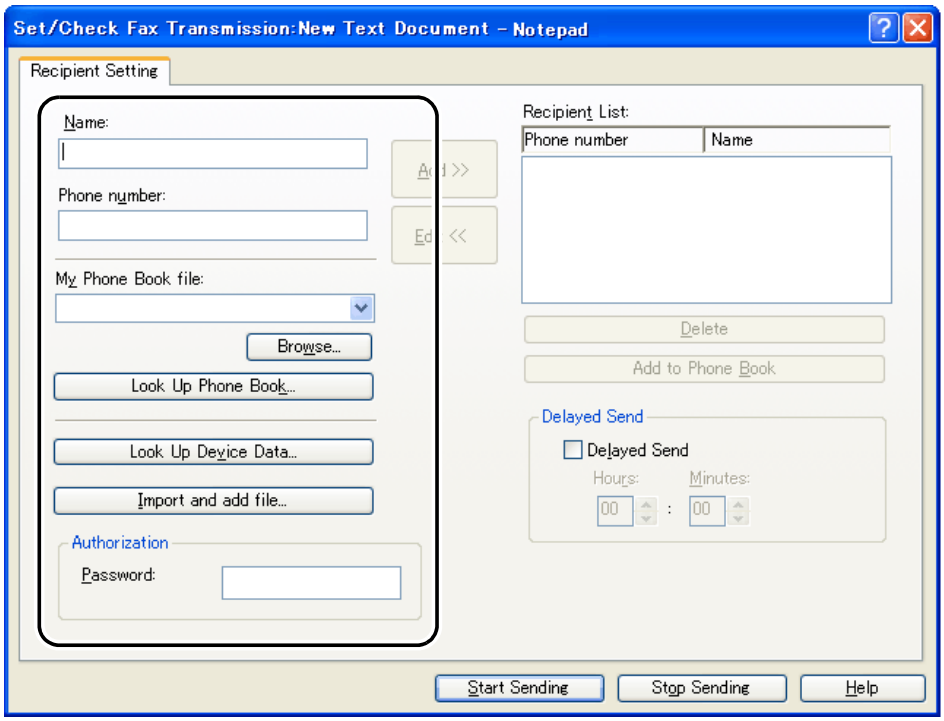
5 For Windows, click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, and then click **Print**.

For Macintosh, click **Print**.

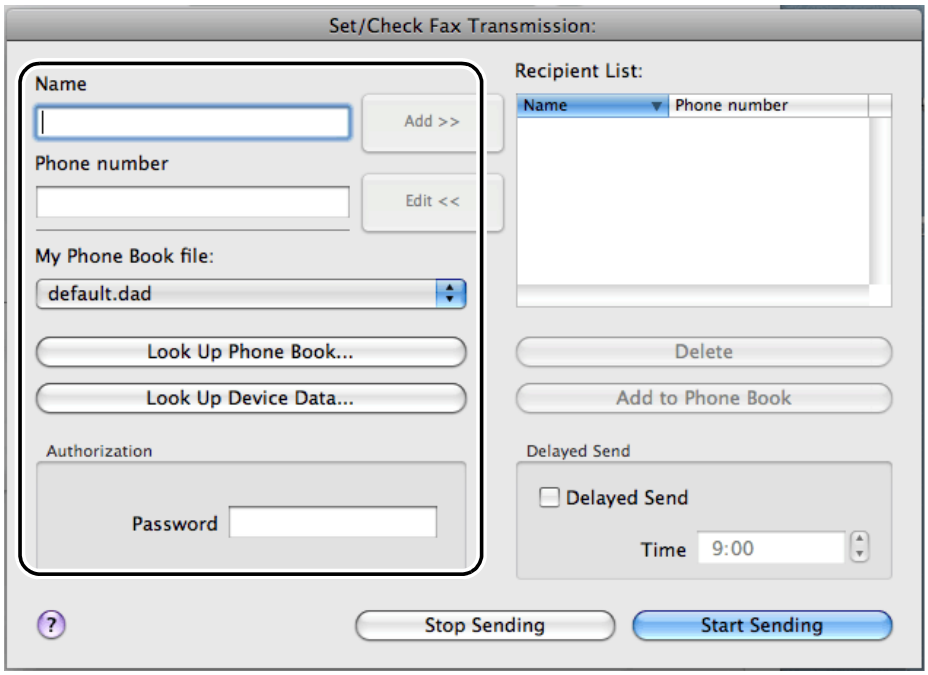
The **Set/Check Fax Transmission** dialog box appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6 Enter the destination for the recipient. The following procedure is for entering the destination. For details on how to enter the destination, please refer to the Help file for the driver.

a Enter the name and fax number directly.

b Select a fax number from a phone book.

- **Look Up Phone Book**: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the file specified for **My Phone Book file**.
- **Look Up Device Data**: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the Phone Book on the 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.
- **Import and add file** (Windows only): Allows you to select a source file such as a CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, or a LDAP server. (For details on LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "Server Phone Book.")

NOTE: Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the fax service is locked with a password.

To lock the fax service with a password:

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Function Enabled` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press button until `Fax` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Press button until `On(Password)` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

8 Enter a password, and then press the **(Set)** button.

To check whether the fax has been sent:

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ⌄ button until `Job History` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The job history report is printed.

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes

NOTE: To use the `Telephone/Fax` or `Ans Machine/Fax`, connect an answering machine to the phone connector ( ) on the back of your printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the `Telephone` mode.

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-sized, A4-sized, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your printer is preset to the fax mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Settings Options"), or by setting `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the ▷ **(Start)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone/Fax or Ans Machine/Fax

To use the `Telephone/Fax` or `Ans Machine/Fax` mode, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector ( ) on the back of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

NOTE: If you have set your printer to `Ans Machine/Fax` and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the `Fax` mode after a predefined time.

Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector ( ) on the back of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone, or set `OnHook` to `Off` and then press the **(Start)** button.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

The remote receive code is set to `Off` at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

NOTE: Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD

The DRPD is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your FAX number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
5. Press button until `DRPD Pattern` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
6. Press or button until the desired pattern is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
7. Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on again.

   To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD. For details, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

   Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the printer automatically prints the fax.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

1 Press the **(Fax)** button.

2 Press button until `Polling Receive` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press or button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Enter the number of the remote machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

NOTE: For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "Sending a Fax Automatically" or "Sending a Fax Manually."

5 Press the **(Start)** button.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (001–200).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Setting Speed Dial

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Ensure that `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Ensure that `Speed Dial` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6 Press button until the desired speed dial number between 001 and 200 is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Ensure that `Name` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

8 Enter the name, and then press the **(Set)** button.

9 Press button until `Phone Number` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

10 Enter the number you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

To insert a pause between numbers, press the **(Redial/Pause)** button. "-" appears on the display.

To assign a name to the number, enter the name. For details about how to enter names, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters."

11 Press button until `Apply Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

When a message prompting you to apply settings, press button to select `Yes`, and then press the **(Set)** button.

To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 6 to 11.

To return to the top screen of the **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 To enter the speed dial number do one of the followings after pressing the **(Fax)** button:

- Ensure that `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button. Press button until `Speed Dial` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
- Press the **(Speed Dial)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Enter the speed dial number between 001 and 200 using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The corresponding entry's name briefly displays. To confirm the name again, press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button.

The document scans into the memory.

When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Press ^ or v button to select `Yes` to add more documents or to select `No` to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

NOTE: Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

NOTE: You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

1 Press the ☰ **(Menu)** button.

2 Press v button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press v button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4 Ensure that `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until `Group Dial` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until the desired group dial number between 1 and 6 is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

If a number is already stored in the location you chose, the display shows the number to allow you to change it. To start over with another group-dial number, press the ↺ **(Back)** button.

7 Ensure that `Name` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Enter the name that you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button. For details about how to enter names, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters."

9 Press ⌄ button until `Speed Dial No` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

10 Press ⌄ button until the desired number is highlighted, and then press › button to select the speed dial numbers. Press the ✓ **(Set)** button to confirm.

11 Press ⌄ button until `Apply Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

When a message prompting you to apply settings, press ⌄ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 6 to 11.

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

1 Press the ☰ **(Menu)** button.

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4 Ensure that `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until `Group Dial` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until the group dial number that you want to edit is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Ensure that `Name` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Enter a new name, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

9 Press ⌄ button until `Speed Dial No` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

10 Press ⌄ button until the speed dial number that you want to edit is highlighted, and then press › button to select or deselect the speed dial number. Press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

11 Press ⌄ button until `Apply Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

When a message prompting you to apply settings, press ⌄ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

To delete an existing group dial number, press the X **(Cancel)** button.

NOTE: When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.

If you want to edit another group dial number, repeat steps 6 to 11.

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dial (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for Broadcasting or Delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation. (For Delayed transmission, see "Specifying the Fax Settings Options.")

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the Automatic Document Feeder or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing a Speed Dial List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Speed Dial list.

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Speed Dial` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

A list of your speed dial entries is printed.

Phone Book

You can select or search the registered phone numbers from the phone books.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the **(Fax)** button.

3 Ensure that `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 To select a destination, do either one of the followings:

- Select from the local phone book:

  Press button until `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

- Search from the local phone book or the server phone book:

  Press button until `Search Local Phone Book` or `Search Server Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

  NOTE: For more information on phone book and server phone book, see "Address Books."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If you are using the server phone book, `Server Phone Book` must be set to `On`. For details, see "Server Phone Book" and "LDAP Server."

NOTE: The phone numbers need to be registered before you can select `Phone Book` on the operator panel.

5 Press button to select or enter a keyword to search destinations, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press the **(Start)** button.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the **Secure Receive** option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will go in memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

NOTE: Before operation, ensure Panel Lock is enabled.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Secure Receive` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Ensure that `Secure Receive Set` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Press or button to select `Enable`, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8 Enter a four-digit password using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

9 Ensure that `Enable` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the `JOB STATUS` screen displays "`Secure Receive`" to let you know that there is a fax stored.

To print received documents:

1 Press the ☰ **(Menu)** button.

2 Press ⌄ button until `JOB STATUS` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Secure Receive` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Enter the password, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

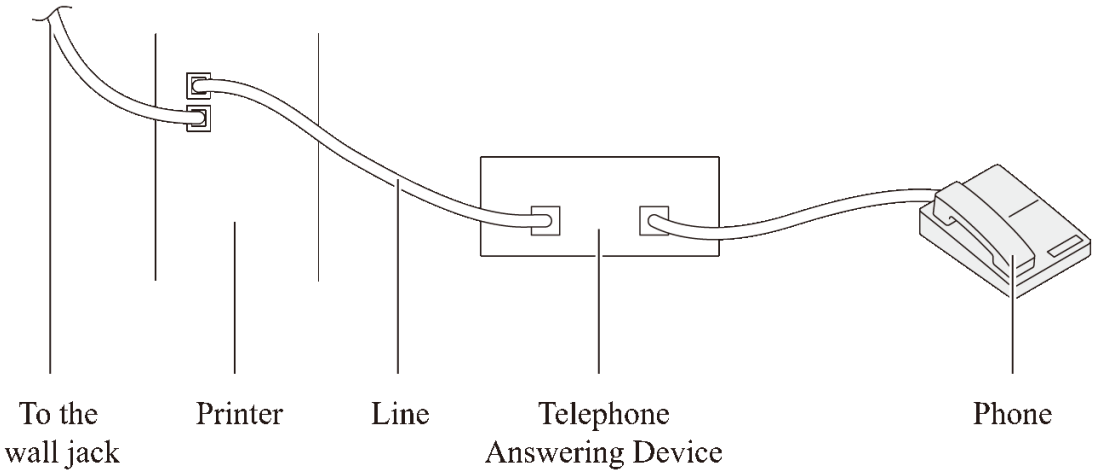
1 Follow the same steps from 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:" and select `Secure Receive Set`.

2 Press ⌃ or ⌄ button to select `Disable`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

To return to the top screen of the ☰ **(Menu)** menu, press the AC **(All Clear)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using an Answering Machine



You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans Machine/Fax` and set `Auto Rec Ans/Fax` to specify the time for the TAD.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the `Fax` after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you

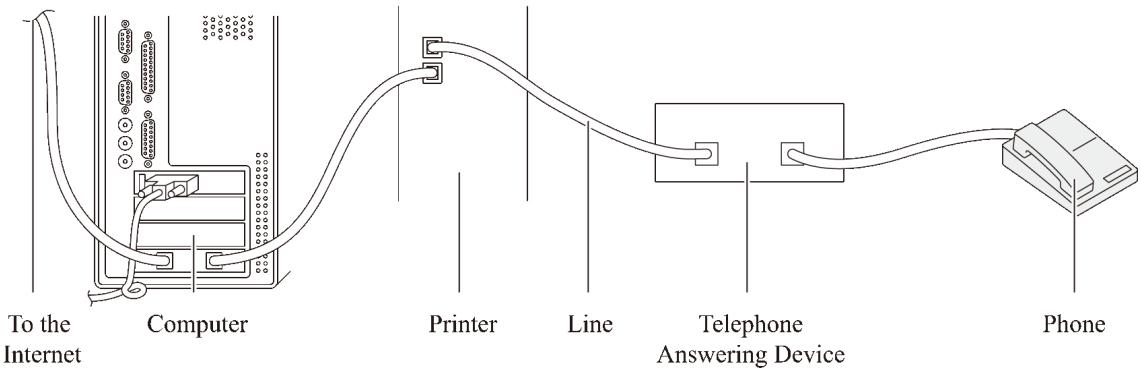
  Set `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the ▷ **(Start)** button and hang up the receiver.

  OR

  Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans Machine/Fax` and set `Auto Rec Ans/Fax` to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

NOTE: For more information on other reports, see "Reports."

- Speed Dial
- Address Book
- Server Address
- Fax Activity
- Fax Pending
- Print Meter

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speed Dial

This list shows all the numbers currently stored in the memory of your printer as speed dial numbers.

You can print this Speed Dial list from the operator panel. (For details, see "Printing a Speed Dial List.")

Address Book

This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the printer's memory as **Address Book** information.

Server Address

This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as Server Address information.

Fax Activity

This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Fax Pending

This list shows the status of pending faxes. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing any settings.

Print Meter

This report shows the total number of pages printed. The report will be titled **Dell ColorTrack Report**.

Procedures:

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Ensure that `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until the report or list you want to print is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   The selected report or list is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- `Speed Dial`: Speed Dial list
- `Address Book`: Address Book list
- `Server Address`: Server Address list
- `Fax Activity`: Fax activity information
- `Fax Pending`: Pending faxes
- `Print Meter`: Print volume report

Changing Setting Options

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
3. Press button until `Defaults Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
4. Press button until `Fax Defaults` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
5. Press button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.
6. Press or button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **(Set)** button.

   To return to the top screen of the **(Menu)** menu, press the **(All Clear)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Know Your Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

21

Understanding the Tool Box Menus

The Tool Box allows you to view, specify, and diagnose the system settings.

The Tool Box consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

NOTE: A **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on **Tool Box** when **Panel Lock** is set on the printer. In this case, input the password that you have already specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab includes the **Printer Information**, **Menu Settings**, **Reports**, **TCP/IP Settings**, **Defaults Settings**, and **Fax Settings** pages.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the system information of the printer.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays the service tag number of your printer.
Express Service Code	Displays the express service code number.
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of your printer.
Printer Type	Displays the type of printing for the printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag number of your printer.
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.
Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
Network Firmware Version	Displays the NIC version.
MCU Firmware Version	Displays the version of the Machine Control Unit (MCU) firmware.
Printing Speed (Color)	Displays the speed for color printing.
Printing Speed (Monochrome)	Displays the speed for monochrome printing.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the menu settings of the printer.

Values:

System Settings	**Power Saver Timer Sleep**	Displays the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
	Power Saver Timer Deep Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
	Power Saver Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from the Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when **OnHook** is **Off**.
	Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than copying is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Out of Paper Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Base Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel is returned to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Fault Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Job Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
Panel Language	Displays the language that is used on the operator panel screen.
Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
Print ID	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
Print Text	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position[*3]	Displays where to insert the banner sheet.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray[*3]	Displays the banner sheet tray.
RAM Disk[*1]	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the disk file system for the Secure Print and Proof Print features.
Substitute Tray	Displays an indication to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
mm/inch	Displays the measurement unit used on the operator panel.
Default Print Paper Size	Displays the default print paper size.
ColorTrack Error Report	Displays whether to print the error report on the ColorTrack
Letterhead Duplex Mode[*3]	Displays whether to print both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
Low Toner Alert Msg	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Email From Field	Displays whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.
	Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
	Server Phone Book	Displays whether to specify the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
Date & Time	**Date Format**	Displays the selected date format.
	Time Format	Displays the selected time format; **24H** or **12H**.
	Time Zone	Displays the selected time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Paper Density	**Plain**	Displays the plain paper density settings.
	Label	Displays the label paper density settings.
Auto Registration Adjustment	**Auto Registration Adjustment**	Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Adjust Altitude	**Adjust Altitude**	Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner	**Non-Dell Toner**	Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tray Settings	**Tray 1 Paper Type**	Displays the paper type setting of the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 1 Display Popup	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 2 Paper Type[*2]	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Paper Size[*2]	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Display Popup[*2]	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.

[*1] This item is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

[*2] This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

[*3] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of the printer.

The reports are printed in the paper size specified in system settings. The default is **A4**.

Values:

System Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the system settings.
Panel Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the panel settings.
PCL Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) Fonts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PCL Macro List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL Macro.
PDF Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PDF fonts.
Job History	Click this button to print the Completed Jobs history of the printer.
Error History	Click this button to print the error history of the printer.
Print Meter	Click this button to print the report for the total number of pages printed.
Color Test Page	Click this button to print a color test page.
Stored Documents[*1]	Click this button to print a list of the Stored Documents.
Protocol Monitor	Click this button to print the Protocol Monitor report.

[*1] You can print the list only when RAM disk is enabled.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

Values:

IP Address Mode	Displays the method for acquiring the IP address.
IP Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.

Defaults Settings

Purpose:

To display the default settings for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print from USB services of the printer.

Values:

Copy Defaults	**Color**	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the input tray.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SSF Paper Size	Displays the paper size loaded in the single sheet feeder.
SSF Paper Type	Displays the paper type loaded in the single sheet feeder.
Collated	Displays whether to collate the copy.
Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
Document Size	Displays the default paper size.
Original Type	Displays the type of the original document.
Lighter/Darker	Displays the default copy density level.
Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
Color Saturation	Displays the default color saturation level.
Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Expo. Level	Displays the background suppression level.
Color Balance (Yellow Low Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
Color Balance (Yellow Middle Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
Color Balance (Yellow High Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
Color Balance (Magenta Low Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
Color Balance (Magenta Middle Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
Color Balance (Magenta High Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Color Balance (Cyan Low Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Color Balance (Cyan Middle Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Color Balance (Cyan High Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Color Balance (Black Low Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Color Balance (Black Middle Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Color Balance (Black High Dens.)	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
	2Sided[*1]	Displays whether to copy on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Multiple-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
Scan Defaults	**Scan To Network**	Displays whether to save scanned documents on a network server or on a computer.
	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Color Button Set (Black & White Button)	Displays whether to scan in black and white or in grayscale when **Black & White** is selected for a color mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Color Button Set (Color Button)	Displays whether to scan in color or in color (Photo) when **Color** is selected for a color mode
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Document Size	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Expo. Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the TIFF file format; **TIFF V6** or **TTN2**.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max Email Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
Fax Defaults	**Resolution**	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Start	Displays the fax transmission start time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print from USB Defaults	**Color**	Displays the default color mode.
	Select Tray	Displays the default tray.
	SSF Paper Size	Displays the default paper size when the single sheet feeder is used.
	SSF Paper Type	Displays the default paper type when the single sheet feeder is used.
	2Sided[*1]	Displays whether to copy on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Layout	Displays the default paper layout when **Multiple - Up** is selected.

[*1] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To display the fax settings of the printer.

Values:

Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
Auto Rec Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Rec Fax/Tel	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
Line Type	Displays the line type; **PSTN** or **PBX**.
Tone/Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
Redial Delay	Displays the redial interval.
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Displays the tone to start **Remote Receive**.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
Duplex Print[*1]	Displays whether to print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Sent Fax Fwd	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Fwd Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.
Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to automatically print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.

*1 This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab includes the **System Settings**, **Date & Time**, **Paper Density**, **Color Registration Adjustment**, **Adjust Altitude**, **Reset Defaults**, **Non-Dell Toner**, **Initialize Print Meter**, **Tray Settings, TCP/IP Settings**, **Network Settings**, **Copy Defaults**, **Scan Defaults**, **Fax Defaults**, **Print from USB Defaults,** and **Fax Settings** pages.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the power management of the printer, auto clear time, alarm tones, time-out time, mm/inch setting, job log auto print, position of the Print ID, setting of the dump print, setting of the additional memory, setting of the substitute sheet, and operator panel language settings.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Saver Timer	**Sleep**[*1]	**1–30 minutes**	Sets the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
		3 minutes[*]	
	Deep Sleep[*1]	**5–60 minutes**	Sets the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
		10 minutes[*]	
Power Saver Wake Up		**Off**[*]	Sets whether to wake up from the Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when **OnHook** is **Off**.
		On	
Auto Reset		**45 seconds**[*]	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
		1 minute	
		2 minutes	
		3 minutes	
		4 minutes	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio Tone	**Control Panel**	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Invalid Key	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Machine Ready	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when the printer becomes ready.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer becomes ready.
		Normal*	
		Loud	
	Copy Completed	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when copying is complete.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when copying is complete.
		Normal*	
		Loud	
	Job Completed	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when any other job except copying is complete.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when any other job except copying is complete.
		Normal*	
		Loud	
	Fault Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job ends abnormally.
		Normal*	
		Loud	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Alert Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
		Normal*	
		Loud	
	Out of Paper	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
		Normal*	
		Loud	
	Low Toner Alert	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when the toner is low.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the toner is low.
		Normal*	
		Loud	
	Auto Clear Alert	**Off***	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Base Tone	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel display is returned to the default setting.
		Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel display is returned to the default setting.
		Normal	
		Loud	
Fault Time-out	**0**		Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job when the job stops abnormally.
	3–300 seconds		
	60 seconds*		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Job Time-out	**0**		Sets the amount of time the printer waits for additional data from the computer before it cancels the job.
	5–300 seconds		
	30 seconds*		
Auto Log Print	**Off***		Does not automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	On		Automatically prints a job history report after every 20 jobs.
Print ID	**Off***		Does not print the user ID.
	Top Left		Prints the user ID on the specified location.
	Top Right		
	Bottom Left		
	Bottom Right		
Print Text	**Off**		Does not print the received PDL data as text data.
	On*		Prints the received PDL data as text data.
Banner Sheet*3	**Insert Position**	**Off***	Does not insert the banner sheet.
		Front	Sets where to insert the banner sheet.
		Back	
		Front & Back	
	Specify Tray	**Tray1***	Sets the tray for the banner sheet.
		Tray2*2	
RAM Disk*4	**Disable**		Does not allocate RAM for the disk file system. Secure Print and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
	50-500MBytes		Allocates RAM for the disk file system automatically. (in 50MBytes increments)
	300MBytes*		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Substitute Tray	**Off**	No tray size substitute accepted.
	Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
	Nearest Size*	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
mm/inch	**Millimeters(mm)***	Selects millimeter or inch as the default measurement unit.
	Inches(")	
Default Print Paper Size	**A4***	Sets the default print paper size.
	Letter	
ColorTrack Error Report	**Off***	Does not automatically print error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.
	On	Automatically prints error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.
Letterhead Duplex Mode*3	**Disable***	Does not prints on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
	Enable	Prints on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
Low Toner Alert Msg	**On***	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.
	Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
Email From Field	**Enable***	Displays whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.
	Disable	
Server Address Book	**On**	Enables the server address book.
	Off*	Disables the server address book.
Server Phone Book	**On**	Enables the server phone book.
	Off*	Disables the server phone book.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Panel Language	**English***	Sets the language to be used on the operator panel.
	French	
	Italian	
	German	
	Spanish	
	Danish	
	Dutch	
	Norwegian	
	Swedish	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

*1 Enter 3 to put the printer in the power saver timer mode 3 minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 3 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.
Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.
The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver timer mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

*2 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

*3 This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

*4 This item is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

Date & Time

Purpose:

To specify the date and time.

Values:

Date Format	Sets the date format.
Time Format	Sets the time format in **24H** or **12H**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Time Zone	Sets the time zone.
Set Date	Sets the date.
Set Time	Sets the time. You can select **AM** or **PM** when **Time Format** is set to **12H**.
Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density settings.

Values:

Plain	**Light**	Sets plain paper density.
	Normal*	
Label	**Light**	Sets label paper density.
	Normal*	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Color Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To set **Color Registration Adjustment** (individual yellow, magenta, cyan correction) settings. When **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **On**, the printer prints the color registration chart and adjusts the color registration by using the chart. Color registration adjustments need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auto Registration Adjustment	**Auto Registration Adjustment**		**Off**	Does not perform color registration automatically.
			On*	Performs color registration automatically.
Manual Registration Adjustments *1	**Auto Correct**			Click **Start** to perform color registration automatically.
	Print Color Regi Chart			Click **Start** to print a color registration chart.
	Registration Adjustments	**PY(Process Yellow)**	**-9** to **+9**	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values that are found in the color registration chart individually for **Yellow**, **Magenta**, and **Cyan**.
			0*	
		PM(Process Magenta)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		PC(Process Cyan)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		LY(Left Yellow)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		LM(Left Magenta)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		LC(Left Cyan)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		RY(Right Yellow)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		RM(Right Magenta)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
		RC(Right Cyan)	**-9** to **+9**	
			0*	
Apply New Settings				After you complete change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings				Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 This item is available only when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The method for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

Values:

Adjust Altitude	**0 meter***	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
	1000 meters	
	2000 meters	
	3000 meters	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

Reset Defaults	**System Section**	Initializes the system parameters.
	User Fax Section	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	User Scan Section	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Non-Dell Toner

NOTICE: Using a non-Dell toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Values:

Non-Dell Toner	**Off***	Disables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.
	On	Enables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Initialize Print Meter

Purpose:

To initialize the Print Meter. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to 0.

Values:

Initialize Print Meter	Click **Start** to initialize the PrintMeter.

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To specify the paper types and sizes for the standard 250-sheet tray and the optional 250-sheet feeder respectively.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tray 1 Paper Type	**Plain***	Sets the type of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Covers Thick	
	Label	
	Envelope	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
Tray 1 Paper Size	**A4***	Sets the size of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
	Envelope #10	
	Monarch	
	Monarch Landscape	
	DL	
	DL Landscape	
	C5	
	Custom Size	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	**127–355 mm (5.0-14.0 inch)**	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	297 mm* (11.7 inch)	
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	**77–215 mm (3.0–8.5 inch)**	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	210 mm* (8.3 inch)	
Tray 1 Display Popup	**On***	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set **Paper Type** and **Paper Size** when the paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 2 Paper Type*1	**Plain***	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	Plain Thick	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
Tray 2 Paper Size*1	**A4***	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
Tray 2 Display Popup*1	**On***	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set **Paper Type** and **Paper Size** when the paper is loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

IP Address Mode	**AutoIP***	Automatically sets the IP address. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Manually sets the IP address.
IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer. It is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask. It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address. It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Network Settings

NOTE: Network Settings is not available when the printer is connected using a USB cable.

Purpose:

To configure the setup of the printer using your web browser.

Values:

Print Server Settings[*1]	**Display**	Click to display the Print Server Setup page on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Display of EWS	**Off**	Does not display the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
	On*	Displays the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

[*1] This item is available only when **Display of EWS** is se to **On**.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own copy settings.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color	**Black & White**	Prints in black and white mode.
	Color*	Prints in color mode.
Select Tray	**Tray 1***	The paper is fed from the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 2*1	The paper is fed from the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	SSF	The paper is fed from the single sheet feeder.
SSF Paper Size	**A4***	Sets the document size loaded in the single sheet feeder.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
	Envelope #10	
	Monarch	
	DL	
	C5	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SSF Paper Type	**Plain***	Sets the document type loaded in the single sheet feeder.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Covers Thick	
	Coated	
	Coated Thick	
	Envelope	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
Collated	**Off**	Does not sort copy job.
	On	Sorts the copy job.
	Auto*	Automatically sorts the copy job.
Reduce/Enlarge mm series	**Custom**	Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to the custom size.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	A4→A5 (70%)	
	B5→A5 (81%)	
	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	A5→B5 (122%)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	A5→A4 (141%)	
	200%	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

inch series	**Custom**	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	50%	
	Ledger→Letter (64%)	
	Legal→Letter (78%)	
	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	Statement→Letter (129%)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	Statement→Legal (154%)	
	200%	
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	**25–400%**	Reduces or enlarges the image to the custom size when you set **Reduce/Enlarge** to **Custom**.
	100%*	
Document Size	**Auto***	Detects the document size automatically.
	A4	Sets the document size.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
Original Type	**Text**	Improves the image quality of documents with text.
	Text & Photo*	Improves the image quality of documents with both text and photos /gray tones.
	Photo	Improves the image quality of documents with photos.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighter/Darker	**Lighter 3**	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter 2	
	Lighter 1	
	Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker 1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker 2	
	Darker 3	
Sharpness	**Sharper**	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
	Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Color Saturation	**High**	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
	Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
	Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.
Auto Exposure	**On***	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Auto Expo. Level	**Normal***	Sets the background suppression level to **Normal**.
	Higher(1)	Sets the background suppression level to **Higher(1)**.
	Higher(2)	Sets the background suppression level to **Higher(2)**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color Balance	**Yellow Low Dens.**	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Yellow Middle Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta
	Magenta Middle Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Middle Den.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Middle Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Dens.	**-3 to 3** **0***	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2Sided[*2]	**1->1Sided**[*]	Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
Multiple-Up	**Off**[*]	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified in **Reduce/Enlarge**.
Margin Top/Bottom	**0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inch)**	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
	4 mm[*] (0.2 inch)	
Margin Left/Right	**0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inch)**	Sets the value of the left and right margins.
	4 mm[*] (0.2 inch)	
Margin Middle	**0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inch)**	Sets the value of the middle margin.
	0 mm[*] (0.0 inch)	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

[*1] This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

[*2] This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own scan settings.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scan To Network		**Server (FTP)**	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.
		Computer (Network)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
File Format		**PDF***	Saves the scanned image in **PDF**.
		Multi Page TIFF	Saves the scanned image in **Multi Page TIFF**.
		TIFF	Saves the scanned image in **TIFF**.
		JPEG	Saves the scanned image in **JPEG**.
Color		**Black & White**	Scans in black and white mode.
		Color*	Scans in color mode.
Color Button Set	**Black & White Button**	**Black & White***	Scans in black and white.
		GrayScale	Scans in grayscale.
	Color Button	**Color***	Scans in color.
		Color (Photo)	Scans in color (Photo). This is suitable for photographic images.
Resolution		**200 x 200 dpi***	Scans an image at 200 dpi.
		300 x 300 dpi	Scans an image at 300 dpi.
		400 x 400 dpi	Scans an image at 400 dpi.
		600 x 600 dpi	Scans an image at 600 dpi.
Document size		**A4**	Sets the document size.
		A5	
		B5	
		Letter*	
		Folio	
		Legal	
		Executive	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighter/Darker	**Lighter 3**	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter 2	
	Lighter 1	
	Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker 1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker 2	
	Darker 3	
Sharpness	**Sharper**	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
	Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
	Softer	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Contrast	**High**	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
	Medium*	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
	Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.
Auto Exposure	**On***	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Auto Expo. Level	**Normal***	Sets the background suppression level to **Normal**.
	Higher(1)	Sets the background suppression level to **Higher(1)**.
	Higher(2)	Sets the background suppression level to **Higher(2)**.
Margin Top/Bottom	**0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inch)**	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
	2 mm* (0.1 inch)	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Margin Left/Right	**0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inch)**	Sets the value of the left and right margins.
	2 mm* (0.1 inch)	
Margin Middle	**0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inch)**	Sets the value of the middle margin.
	0 mm* (0.0 inch)	
TIFF File Format	**TIFF V6***	Sets the TIFF file format to **TIFF V6**.
	TTN2	Sets the TIFF file format to **TTN2**.
Image Compression	**High**	Sets the image compression level to **High**.
	Medium*	Sets the image compression level to **Medium**.
	Low	Sets the image compression level to **Low**.
Max Email Size	**50–16384**	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.
	2048*	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own fax settings.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resolution	**Standard***	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the **Super Fine** resolution.
	Photo	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing photographic images.
Lighter/Darker	**Lighter 3**	Makes the documents lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter 2	
	Lighter 1	
	Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker 1	Makes the documents darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker 2	
	Darker 3	
Delayed Start	**00:00–23:59*1**	Sets the fax transmission start time in 24-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.
	21:00*	
	01:00–12:59*2 **AM** / **PM**	Sets the fax transmission start time in 12-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.
	9:00 PM*	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **24H** in the **Date & Time** page.

*2 This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **12H** in the **Date & Time** page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print from USB Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own settings for Print from USB Defaults.

Values:

Color	**Black & White**	Prints in black and white mode.
	Color*	Prints in color mode.
Select Tray	**Tray 1***	The paper is fed from the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 2* [1]	The paper is fed from the optional 250-sheet feeder.
	SSF	The paper is fed from the single sheet feeder.
SSF Paper Size	**A4***	Sets the document size loaded in the single sheet feeder.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SSF Paper Type	**Plain***	Sets the document type loaded in the single sheet feeder.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Covers Thick	
	Coated	
	Coated Thick	
	Envelope	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
2Sided*2	**1->1Sided***	Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
Layout	**1Up***	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2Up	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
	4Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

*2 This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To specify the fax settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	**Telephone**	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Telephone**.
	Fax*	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Fax**.
	Telephone/Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Telephone/Fax**.
	Ans Machine/Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Ans Machine/Fax**.
	DRPD	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **DRPD**.
Auto Rec Fax	**0–255**	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call in 0-255 seconds.
	0*	
Auto Rec Fax/Tel	**0–255**	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call in 0-255 seconds.
	6*	
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	**0–255**	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call in 0-255 seconds.
	21*	
Line Monitor	**Off**	Turns off the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
	Medium*	
	High	
Ring Tone Volume	**Off**	Turns the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
	Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
	Medium	
	High*	
Line Type	**PSTN***	Sets the default line type to **PSTN**.
	PBX	Sets the default line type to **PBX**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tone/Pulse	**Tone***	Sets the dialing type to **Tone**.
	Pulse (10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to **Pulse(10PPS)**.
	Pulse (20PPS)	Sets the dialing type to **Pulse(20PPS)**.
Resend Delay	**3–255**	Sets the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds.
	8*	
Redial Attempts	**0-13**	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13.
	3*	
Redial Delay	**1–15**	Sets the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes.
	1*	
Junk Fax Setup	**On**	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
	Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Remote Receive	**On**	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
	Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	**00–99**	Sets the tone to start Remote Receive.
	00*	
Fax Header	**On***	Prints the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
	Off	Does not print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name		Sets the sender's name to be printed on the header on faxes.
Fax Number		Sets the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	**On**	Attaches a cover page to faxes.
	Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	**Pattern 1–7**	Provides a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.
	Pattern 4*	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Duplex Print* [1]	**On**	Prints the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Off*	Does not print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Sent Fax Fwd	**Off***	Does not forward any of the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Forward	Forwards the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Print and Forward	Prints the incoming fax and forwards it to a specified destination.
Fax Fwd Number		Sets the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	**On**	Sets a prefix dial number.
	Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num		Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
Discard Size	**Off***	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
	On	Discards any excess at the bottom of the page.
	Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper.
ECM	**On***	Enables the ECM (Error Correction Mode). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
	Off	Disables the ECM.
Modem Speed	**2.4 Kbps**	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
	4.8 Kbps	
	9.6 Kbps	
	14.4 Kbps	
	33.6 Kbps*	
Fax Activity	**Auto Print***	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	No Auto Print	Does not print a fax activity report automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax Transmit	**Print Always**	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	**Print Always***	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.
Fax Protocol	**Print Always**	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable*	Does not print the protocol monitor report.
Country		Selects the country where the printer is used.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Diagnosis

The **Diagnosis** tab includes the **Chart Print**, **Machine Check**, **Paper Wrinkle Check Mode**, **Environment Sensor Info**, **Clean Developer**, and **Refresh Mode** pages.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Chart Print

Purpose:

To print various charts that can be used for diagnosis of the printer. The chart is printed to A4 or letter size paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Pitch Configuration Chart	Prints full halftone pages for yellow, magenta, cyan, and black. Also prints pages to check the pitch. A total of five pages are output.
Ghost Configuration Chart	Prints a chart to check for ghost printing. One page is printed.
4 Colors Configuration Chart	Bands of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black are printed with varying density. One page is printed.
MQ Chart	Prints charts to check for the binding in A4 or Letter.
Alignment Chart	Prints a chart to check for proper alignment of the print image on the paper. One page is printed.
Drum Refresh Configuration Chart	Prints a chart to check the light fatigue of the drum cartridge.

Machine Check

Purpose:

To check the operation of the printer components.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Machine Check	**Main Motor Operation Check***	Click **Start** to operate the main motor inside the printer. Confirm the motor sound.
	Fuser Motor Operation Check	Click **Start** to operate the fuser motor. Confirm the motor sound.
	Feed Roll Operation Check* [1]	Click **Start** to operate the feed roll. Confirm the motor sound.
	REGI CLUTCH Operation Check	Click **Start** to operate the REGI CLUTCH. Confirm that you can hear the clutch clicking.
	Dispense Motor Check (Yellow)	Click **Start** to operate the dispense motor for each toner cartridge. Confirm the motor sound.
	Dispense Motor Check (Magenta)	
	Dispense Motor Check (Cyan)	
	Dispense Motor Check (Black)	
Play of Sound		Plays back through speakers of your computer a recording of the normal sound for the currently selected **Machine Check** item.
Start		Click this button to check the operation of the items selected with **Machine Check** and output the results to **Result**.
Result		Displays the results of the checked items.

*1 When performing the feed roll operation check, remove the paper tray from the printer.

Paper Wrinkle Check Mode

Purpose:

To determine whether or not paper is wrinkled in the fuser.

This function stops printing before the paper enters the fuser. After you remove the paper inside the printer, check the following:

- If the paper is wrinkled, the wrinkle occurred in the part other than fuser.
- If the paper is not wrinkled, the wrinkle occurred in the fuser.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Paper Size	**A4***	Sets the size of paper to be used by the Paper Wrinkle Check Mode.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
	Envelope #10	
	Monarch	
	DL	
	C5	
Paper Type	**Plain***	Sets the type of paper to be used by the Paper Wrinkle Check Mode.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Covers Thick	
	Label	
	Recycled	
	Envelope	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
Rear side	**Off***	Does not use the print side 2 of the paper.
	On	Uses the print side 2 of the paper.
Color Mode	**Color***	Prints in color mode.
	Black & White	Prints in monochrome mode.
Start	Click this button to print in the specified paper size, type, and color mode.	

Environment Sensor Info

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To print the internal environment sensor information of the printer to **Result**.

Values:

Get Environment Sensor Info	Click this button to confirm the internal environment sensor information of the printer such as temperature and humidity.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Clean Developer	Click **Start** to stir the toner.

Refresh Mode

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge or PHD unit when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

NOTE: Using the Refresh Mode consumes extra toner.

Values:

Toner Refresh Mode	**Yellow**	Click **Yellow** to clean the yellow cartridge.
	Magenta	Click **Magenta** to clean the magenta cartridge.
	Cyan	Click **Cyan** to clean the cyan cartridge.
	Black	Click **Black** to clean the black cartridge.
Drum Refresh Mode	**Drum**	Click **Drum** to clean the drum.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Maintenance** tab is open.

3 Select **Reset Defaults** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reset Defaults** page appears.

4 Click **System Section** button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

22

Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is connected to a network and available to a number of users, the access to the `Admin Menu` can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your printer driver to override user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Report / List

Use the `Report/List` menu to print various types of reports and lists.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

PCL Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

See also:

"Understanding Fonts", "Printing Font Sample List"

PCL Macro List

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

PDF Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PDF fonts.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Print Meter

Purpose:

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed.

Color Test Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as speed dial numbers.

Address Book

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To print the list of all addresses stored as **Address Book** information.

Server Address

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as **Server Address** information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Fax Pending

Purpose:

To print the list of status of pending faxes.

Stored Documents

NOTE: Stored Documents feature is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed on the printer and `RAM Disk` under `System Settings` is enabled.

Purpose:

To print a list of all files stored for `Secure Print`, `Private Mail Box Print`, `Public Mail Box Print`, and `Proof Print` in the RAM disk.

Admin Menu

Use the `Admin Menu` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Phone Book

Use the `Phone Book` menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Group Dial

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to six group dial codes can be registered.

Print Language

Purpose:

To specify the settings for PCL or PDF.

PCL

Use the PCL menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Tray

Purpose:

To specify the default paper tray.

Values:

Auto*
Tray 1
Tray 2*1
SSF

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4*1

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A5
B5
Letter
Folio
Legal
Executive
Envelope #10
Monarch Env.
DL Env.
C5 Env.
Custom Size
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

inch series

Letter*1
Folio
Legal
A4
A5
B5
Executive
Envelope #10
Monarch Env.
DL Env.
C5 Env.
Custom Size
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

NOTE: Selecting a custom size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Orientation

Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

Values:

Portrait*	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

2 Sided

NOTE: 2 Sided print feature is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

2 Sided Print	**Off***	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	On	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Binding Edge	**Flip Long Edge***	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip Short Edge	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

Values:

CG Times	**LetterGothic**	**CourierPS**
CG Times It	**LetterGothic It**	**CourierPS Ob**
CG Times Bd	**LetterGothic Bd**	**CourierPS Bd**
CG Times BdIt	**Albertus Md**	**CourierPS BdOb**
Univers Md	**Albertus XBd**	**SymbolPS**
Univers MdIt	**Clarendon Cd**	**Palatino Roman**
Univers Bd	**Coronet**	**Palatino It**
Univers BdIt	**Marigold**	**Palatino Bd**
Univers MdCd	**Arial**	**Palatino BdIt**
Univers MdCdIt	**Arial It**	**ITCBookman Lt**
Univers BdCd	**Arial Bd**	**ITCBookman LtIt**
Univers BdCdIt	**Arial BdIt**	**ITCBookmanDm**
AntiqueOlv	**Times New**	**ITCBookmanDm It**
AntiqueOlv It	**Times New It**	**HelveticaNr**
AntiqueOlv Bd	**Times New Bd**	**HelveticaNr Ob**
CG Omega	**Times New BdIt**	**HelveticaNr Bd**
CG Omega It	**Symbol**	**HelveticaNrBdOb**
CG Omega Bd	**Wingdings**	**N C Schbk Roman**
CG Omega BdIt	**Line Printer**	**N C Schbk It**
GaramondAntiqua	**Times Roman**	**N C Schbk Bd**
Garamond Krsv	**Times It**	**N C Schbk BdIt**
Garamond Hlb	**Times Bd**	**ITC A G Go Bk**
GaramondKrsvHlb	**Times BdIt**	**ITC A G Go BkOb**
Courier*	**Helvetica**	**ITC A G Go Dm**
Courier It	**Helvetica Ob**	**ITC A G Go DmOb**
Courier Bd	**Helvetica Bd**	**ZapfC MdIt**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Courier BdIt	**Helvetica BdOb**	**ZapfDingbats**

Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

ROMAN-8*	**ISO-17**	**MC TEXT**
SYMBOL	**ISO-21**	**MS PUB**
WIN 3.0	**ISO-4**	**PC-1004**
WINBALT	**ISO-6**	**PC-775**
WINGDINGS	**ISO-60**	**PC-8**
WIN L1	**ISO-69**	**PC-850**
WIN L2	**ISO L1**	**PC-852**
WIN L5	**ISO L2**	**PC-8 DN**
DESKTOP	**ISO L5**	**PC-8 TK**
DNGBTSMS	**ISO L6**	**PI FONT**
ISO-11	**LEGAL**	**PS MATH**
ISO-15	**MATH-8**	**PS TEXT**

Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts.

Values:

12.00*	Sets the values in increments of 0.25.
4.00 – 50.00	

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

NOTE: The `Font Size` menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

See also:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"Pitch and Point Size"

Font Pitch

Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.

Values:

10.00*	Sets the value in increments of 0.01.
6.00–24.00	

Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For nonscalable mono spaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

NOTE: The `Font Pitch` menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

Form Line

Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

Values:

mm series

64*1	Sets the value in increments of 1.
5–128	
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

inch series

60*1	Sets the value in increments of 1.
5–128	
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the `Form Line` and `Orientation` menu items. Select the correct `Form Line` and `Orientation` before changing `Form Line`.

See also:

"Orientation"

Quantity

Purpose:

To set the default print quantity. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the printer driver. Values selected from the printer driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
1–999	

Image Enhance

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

Values:

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
On*	Enables the Image Enhance feature.

Hex Dump

Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

Values:

Disable*	Disables the Hex Dump feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when printing in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

LineTermination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Values:

Off*	The line termination command is not added. CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added. CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added. CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added. CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to `Color` or `Black`. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Black*	Prints in the black and white mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color	Prints in the color mode.

PDF

Use the PDF menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
1–999	

2 Sided Print

NOTE: 2 Sided Print feature is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Value:

1 Sided*	Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
Long Edge Flip	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
Short Edge Flip	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Print Mode

Purpose:

To specify the print mode.

Value:

Normal*	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

High Speed	Prints with the higher speed than the Normal mode, but the quality is less.

PDF Password

Purpose:

To specify the password to print the secure PDF.

Value:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF.

Collated

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Value:

Off*	Does not sort the job.
On	Sorts the job.

Output Size

Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

Value:

A4*1
Letter*1
Auto
*1 The default paper size is displayed.

Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Value:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auto %*
100% (No Zoom)
Booklet
2 Pages Up
4 Pages Up

Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the output color.

Value:

Color (Auto)*
Black & White

Network

Use the `Network` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE- T Half	Uses 10BASE-T Half-duplex.
10BASE- T Full	Uses 10BASE-T Full-duplex.
100BASE- TX Half	Uses 100BASE-TX Half-duplex.
100BASE- TX Full	Uses 100BASE-TX Full-duplex.
1000BASE- T Full	Uses 1000BASE-T Full-duplex.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wireless Status

NOTE: Wireless Status feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To confirm the wireless communication status.

Values:

Connection	**Good**
	Acceptable
	Low
	No Reception
SSID	Displays the name that identifies the wireless network.
Encryption Type	Displays the encryption type.

Wireless Setup

NOTE: Wireless Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Setup	**Enter Network (SSID)**			Specifies a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Infra-structure	Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.		
		No Security		Specifies No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from **WEP**, **WPA-PSK-TKIP**, and **WPA-PSK-AES**.
		WEP(64Bit)		Specifies the WEP 64bit key to use through the wireless network. Up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WEP(128Bit)		Specifies the WEP 128bit key to use through the wireless network. Up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WPA-PSK-TKIP		Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP.
			Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when **WPA-PSK-TKIP** is selected for Encryption.
		WPA2-PSK-AES		Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA2-PSK-AES.
			Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when **WPA-PSK-AES** is selected for Encryption.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.		
		No Security	Select to configure the wireless setting without specifying the security method from **WEP**.	
		WEP(64Bit)	Specifies the WEP 64bit key to use through the wireless network. Up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WEP(128Bit)	Specifies the WEP 128bit key to use through the wireless network. Up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
WPS	**Push Button Control**	**PBC Start**	**Cancel***	Disables the security method of WPS-PBC.
			Start	Configures the wireless setting with the security method of WPS-PBC.
	PIN Code	**Start Configuration***	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.	
		Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your computer.	

Reset Wireless

NOTE: Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Cancel*	Does not reset the wireless setting.
Start	Resets the wireless setting.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

IP Mode	**Dual Stack***	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
	IPv6 Mode	Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IPv4	**Get IP Address**	**Auto IP***	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
		BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
		RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
		DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
		Panel	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
	IP Address		When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
	Subnet Mask		When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address		When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
IPsec	**Disable***		Disables IPsec.

Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LPD	**Disable**	Disables the LPD port.
	Enable*	Enables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
Port9100	**Disable**	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
IPP	**Disable**	Disables IPP port.
	Enable*	Enables IPP port.
SMB TCP/IP	**Disable**	Disables SMB TCP/IP port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB TCP/IP port.
SMB NetBEUI	**Disable**	Disables SMB Net BEUI port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB Net BEUI port.
WSD	**Disable**	Disables WSD port.
	Enable*	Enables WSD port.
Network TWAIN	**Disable**	Disables Network TWAIN.
	Enable*	Enables Network TWAIN.
SNMP UDP	**Disable**	Disables the SNMP UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
E-Mail Alert	**Disable**	Disables the E-Mail Alert feature.
	Enable*	Enables the E-Mail Alert feature.
EWS	**Disable**	Disables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
Bonjour(mDNS)	**Disable**	Disables Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).
Telnet	**Disable**	Disables Telnet.
	Enable*	Enables Telnet.
Update Addr Book	**Disable**	Disables Update Address Book.
	Enable*	Enables Update Address Book.
LLTD	**Disable**	Disables LLTD.
	Enable*	Enables LLTD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HTTP-SSL/TLS	**Disable**	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
	Enable*	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.

IP Filter

NOTE: IP Filter feature is available only for LPD or Port9100.

Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

No. n / Address (n is 1–5.)		Sets the IP address for Filter *n*.
No. n / Mask (n is 1–5.)		Sets the address mask for Filter *n*.
No. n / Mode (n is 1–5.)	**Off***	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter *n*.
	Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
	Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.

IEEE 802.1x

NOTE: IEEE 802.1x feature is available only when the printer is connected using LAN cable and it is available only when the IEEE 802.1 authentication is enabled.

Purpose:

To disable IEEE 802.1x authentication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable	Disables IEEE 802.1x.

Reset LAN

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Yes	Initializes the wired network data stored in NVM.
No*	Does not initialize the wired network data stored in NVM.

Fax Settings

Use the `Fax Settings` menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external phone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by setting `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing ▷.
Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Rec Tel/Fax`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Auto Rec Fax

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.

Values:

0*	Sets the value in increments of 1 second.
0-255	

Auto Rec Tel/Fax

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.

Values:

6*	Sets the interval in increments of 1 second.
0-255	

Auto Rec Ans/Fax

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.

Values:

21*	Sets the interval in increments of 1 second.
0-255	

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Low.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Medium*	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Medium.
High	Sets the volume of the line monitor to High.

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Receive Mode` is set to `Telephone/Fax`.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Low.
Medium	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Medium.
High*	Sets the volume of the ring tone to High.

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the default line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

Tone/Pulse

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Uses tone dialing.
Pulse (10PPS)	Sets "DP (10PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
Pulse (20PPS)	Sets "DP (20PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resend Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between re-send attempts.

Values:

8*	Sets the interval in increments of 1 second.
3-255	

Redial Attempts

Purpose:

To specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy within the range of 0 to 13. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.

Values:

3*	Sets the number of redial attempts in increments of 1.
0-13	

Redial Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes.

Values:

1*	Sets the interval in increments of 1 minute.
1-15	

Junk Fax Setup

Purpose:

To reject unwanted faxes by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.

Values:

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.

Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:

To specify the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Fax Header

Purpose:

To print the information of the sender on the header of the faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the sender's information on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.

NOTE: If `United States` is selected for the setting of `Country`, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to `On` and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."

Fax Header Name

Purpose:

To set the sender name to be printed on the header on faxes.

Fax Number

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To set the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of a fax message.

NOTE: Ensure to specify `Fax Number` before using `Junk Fax Setup`.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

DRPD Pattern

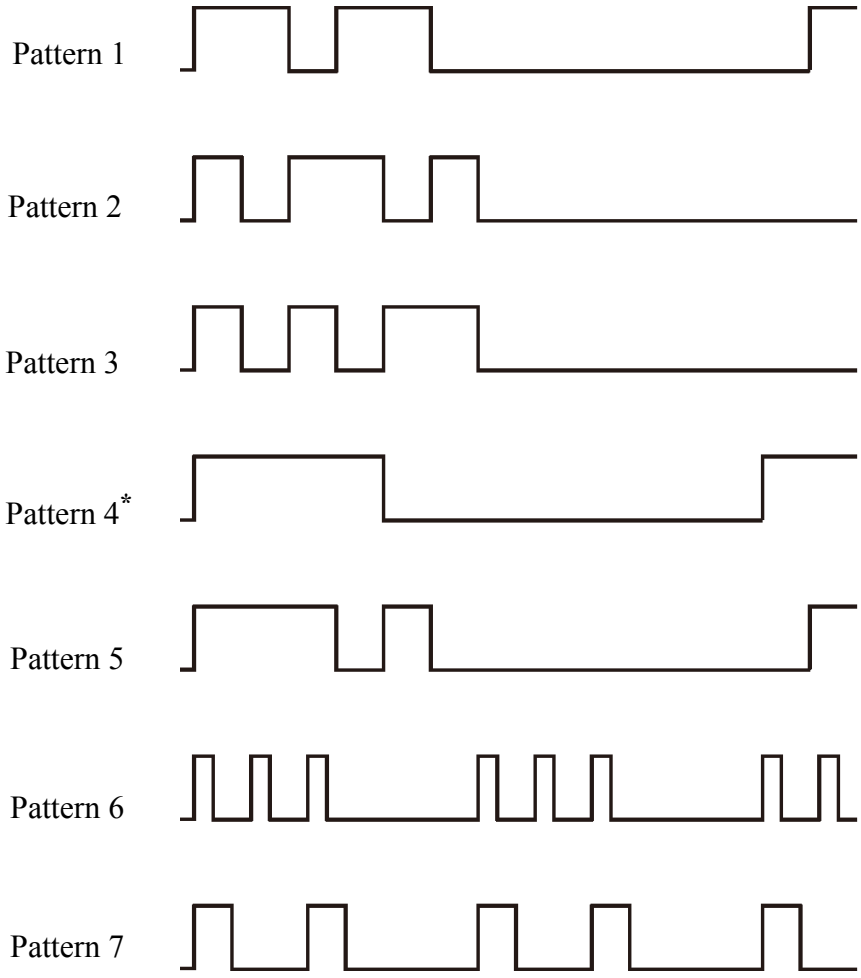
Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pattern1–7 DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:



Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern 7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400 ms, stops for 800 ms, rings for 400 ms and stops for 1400 ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Duplex Print

NOTE: Duplex Print feature is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

To set the duplex printing for fax.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform duplex printing.
On	Performs duplex printing.

Sent Fax Fwd

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off*	Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination. Prints incoming faxes if an error occurs during the transfer.
Print and Forward	Prints incoming faxes and also forwards them to a specified destination.

Fax Fwd Number

Purpose:

To enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Prefix Dial Num

Purpose:

To set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set the printer to discard images or any text at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit the output paper.

Values:

Off*	Prints excess images or text at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess images or text.
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate paper size.

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable or disable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disables the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

Country

Purpose:

To select the country where the printer is used.

Values:

Algeria	**Hungary**	**Puerto Rico**
Australia	**Iceland**	**Romania**
Austria	**Ireland**	**Russia**
Belgium	**Italy**	**Saudi Arabia**
Bulgaria	**Jamaica**	**Slovakia**
Canada	**Jordan**	**Slovenia**
Colombia	**Latvia**	**South Africa**
Costa Rica	**Liechtenstein**	**Spain**
Cyprus	**Lithuania**	**Sweden**
Czech Republic	**Luxembourg**	**Switzerland**
Denmark	**Malta**	**Tunisia**
Dominican Republic	**Mexico**	**Turkey**
Egypt	**Netherlands**	**U.A.E.**
Estonia	**New Zealand**	**United Kingdom**
Finland	**Nicaragua**	**United States**
France	**Norway**	**Unknown***
Germany	**Panama**	
Greece	**Poland**	
Guatemala	**Portugal**	

Fax Activity

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Fax Protocol

Purpose:

To set whether to print the protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable*	Does not print the protocol monitor report.

System Settings

Use `System Settings` to configure the power saving mode, warning tones, time-out duration, device display language, and job log auto print settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Power Saver Timer

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

Values:

Sleep	**3min***	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	1–30 min.	
Deep Sleep	**10min***	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
	5–60 min.	

Enter 3 to put the printer in power saver mode 3 minutes after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 3 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for power save mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Saver Wake Up

Purpose:

To specify whether to wake up from the Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when `OnHook` is set to `Off`.

Values:

OffHook Wake Up	**Off***	Does not wake up from the Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when `OnHook` is set to `Off`.
	On	Wakes up from the Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when `OnHook` is set to `Off`.

Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for `COPY`, `SCAN`, or `FAX` to the default settings and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45sec*
1min
2min
3min
4min

Fault Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On*	**60sec***	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	3-300 sec.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Job Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	**30sec***	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5–300 sec.	

Date & Time

Purpose:

To specify the date and time formats.

Values:

Set Date & Time	**Time Zone**	Sets the time zone.
	Set Date	Sets the date depending on the `Date Format` settings.
	Set Time	Sets the time.
Date Format		Sets the date format.
Time Format	**12H**	Sets the time in 12-hour format.
	24H*	Sets the time in 24-hour format.

Audio Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Control Panel	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Invalid Key	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Machine Ready	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Copy Completed	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Job Completed	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Fault Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Normal*	
	Loud	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Alert Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Out of Paper	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a toner is low.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a toner is low.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Auto Clear Alert	**Off***	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Soft	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Base Tone	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel display is returned to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel display is returned to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu.
	Normal	
	Loud	
All Tones	**Soft**	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Disables all the alert tones.

mm / inch

Purpose:

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Millimeters (mm)*	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
Inches (")	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

NOTE: The default for `mm/inch` varies depending on other settings, such as `Country` and `Document Size`.

Default Print Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4*1
Letter
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

A4
Letter*1
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

Auto Log Print

Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically print a job history report.
On	Automatically prints a job history report.

Print logs can also be printed using the `Admin Reports` menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print ID

Purpose:

To specify a location where the user ID is printed.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the user ID.
Top Left	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.
Top Right	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.
Bottom Left	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.
Bottom Right	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.

NOTE: When printing on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

Print Text

Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs PDL data, which is not supported by the printer, as text when the printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

Values:

Off	Does not print the received data.
On*	Prints the received data as text data.

Banner Sheet

NOTE: Banner Sheet feature is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed to Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Insert Position	**Off***	Does not print the banner sheet.
	Front	Inserted before the first page of every copy.
	Back	Inserted after the last page of every copy.
	Front & Back	Inserted before the first page of every copy and after the last page of every copy.
Specify Tray	**Tray 1***	The banner sheet is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 2	The banner sheet is loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.

RAM Disk

NOTE: RAM Disk feature is available only when the optional 512 MB memory module is installed on the printer.

Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print, Mailbox Print, and Proof Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable		Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
Enable*	**300MB***	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 50 MB.
	50-500MB	

NOTE: Restart your printer when you change the settings for the `RAM Disk` menu.

Substitute Tray

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Off	No tray size substitute accepted.
Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
Nearest Size*	Substitutes paper of nearest size.

Set Available Time

Purpose:

Sets the available time for the Print, Copy, Scan, and Fax services.

Values:

Off*	Does not set the time when printing is available.	
On	Sets the time when printing is available.	
	Start Time	Sets the start time of the available time.
	End Time	Sets the end time of the available time.
	Recurrence	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.

NOTE: `Set Available Time` can be configured when `Print`, `Copy`, `Scan`, or `Fax` is set to `On`.

Secure Job Expiration

NOTE: Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

Expiration Mode	**Off***	Does not set the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	On	Sets the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Expiration Time	Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recurrence	**Daily**	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAN disk daily.
	Weekly*	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk weekly.
	Monthly	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print monthly.
Weekly Settings	**Monday**	Sets the day of the week to delete the files stored as Secure Print.
	Tuesday	
	Wednesday	
	Thursday	
	Friday	
	Saturday	
	Sunday*	
Monthly Settings	**1 Day***	Sets the day of the month to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	2-28 Day	

ColorTrack Mode

Purpose:

To specify who has access to color printing.

Values:

Off*	Does not limit access to color printing.
On	Limits access to color printing.

No Account User Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.

Values:

Off*	Does not permit non-account user to print the data.
On*1	Permits non-account user to print the data.

*1 Set **No Account User Password** using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color Track Error Rep

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically print error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the error report when printing with Color Track results in an error.
On	Prints the error report when printing with Color Track results in an error.

Letterhead Duplex Mode

NOTE: Letterhead Duplex Mode feature is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides when using letterhead.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print on both sides of letterhead.
Enable	Prints on both sides of letterhead.

Low Toner Alert Msg

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

Email From Field

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

NOTE: You can search the e-mail addresses only from the Address Book that is local when `Server Address Book` is set to `Off`.

Server Phone Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.

NOTE: You can search the phone numbers only from the local Phone Book when `Server Phone Book` is set to `Off`.

Power on Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial setup for the printer.

Values:

Yes	Performs the initial setup for the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

No*	Does not perform the initial setup for the printer.

Maintenance

Use the `Maintenance` menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

F/W Version

Purpose:

To confirm the current F/W version.

Service Tag

Purpose:

To confirm the service tag.

Express Code

Purpose:

To confirm the express service code.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify paper density settings.

Values:

Plain	**Light**
	Normal*
Label	**Light**
	Normal*

Adjust BTR

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Purpose:

To specify the transfer roller voltage adjustment for each paper type.

Values:

Plain	**0***	Sets the transfer roller voltage in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.
	-6 to +6	
Plain Thick	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Covers	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Covers Thick	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Label	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Coated	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Coated Thick	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Envelope	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Recycled	**0***	
	-6 to +6	

Adjust Fuser

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Purpose:

To adjust the fuser temperature setting for each paper type.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Plain	**0***	Sets the fuser temperature in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.
	-6 to +6	
Plain Thick	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Covers	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Covers Thick	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Label	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Coated	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Coated Thick	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Envelope	**0***	
	-6 to +6	
Recycled	**0***	
	-6 to +6	

Auto Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically perform color registration adjustment.
On*	Automatically performs color registration adjustment.

Color Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To manually perform color registration adjustment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

NOTE: The `Color Reg Adjust` feature can be configured when `Auto Reg Adjust` is set to `Off`.

Values:

Auto Correct	**Yes**		Automatically performs color registration correction.
	No*		Does not perform color registration correction.
Color Reg Chart	**Yes**		Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under `Lateral Adjustment` and `Process Adjustment`.
	No*		Does not print a color registration chart.
Enter Number	**LY**	**-9 to +9**	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan. Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Press the ✓ **(Set)** button to save all the settings.
	LM		
	LC		
	RY	**-9 to +9**	
	RM		
	RC		
	PY	**-9 to +9**	
	PM		
	PC		

NOTE: Ensure that you remove the paper from the single sheet feeder before performing `Auto Correct`.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Yes	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
No*	Does not stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Toner Refresh

Purpose:

To clean the toner in each toner cartridge.

Values:

Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black	**Yes**	Cleans the toner in the selected toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in each toner cartridge.

Drum Refresh

Purpose:

To clean the surface of the PHD unit.

Values:

Yes	Cleans the surface of the PHD unit.
No*	Does not clean the surface of the PHD unit.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Values:

User Fax Section	**Yes**	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	**Yes**	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System Section	**Yes**	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

Init Print Meter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to zero.

Clear Storage

NOTE: Clear Storage feature is available only when the additional 512 MB memory module is installed.

Purpose:

To clear all files stored as Secure Print, Mailbox Print, Proof Print, and Stored Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

All Clear	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print, Mailbox Print, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.
Secure Document	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print and Mailbox Print in the RAM disk.
Stored Document	Deletes all files stored as Stored Print in the RAM disk.

Non-DELL Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

NOTICE: Using a non-Dell toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

Values:

Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE: An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner, etc.

Values:

0m*	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

See also:

"Panel Lock"

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To set a limited access to `Admin Menu` with a password, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	**Disable***	Disables password protection for `Admin Menu`.
	Enable	Enables password protection for `Admin Menu`.
Change Password*1	**0000–9999**	Sets or changes the password required to access `Admin Menu`.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 This item is available only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Function Enabled

NOTE: Function Enabled feature is available only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable or disable each of the printer services, or to require a password to use the services.

Values:

Copy	**On***	Enables the Copy service.
	On (Password)	Enables the Copy service, but requires a password to use the service.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the Copy service.
Fax	**On***	Enables the Fax service.
	On (Password)	Enables the Fax services, but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
	Off	Disables the Fax service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
Scan	**On***	Enables the Scan service.
	On (Password)	Enables the Scan service, but requires a password to use the service.
	Off	Disables the Scan service.
Print from USB	**On***	Enables the Print from USB service.
	On (Password)	Enables the Print from USB service, but requires a password.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the Print from USB service with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the Print from USB service.
Change Password*1		Changes the password that is set under the Function Enabled menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1 This item is available only when On (Password) or On (Color Password) is enabled.

Secure Receive

NOTE: Secure Receive feature is available only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	**Disable***	Does not require a password to receive faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to receive faxes.
Change Password*1	**0000–9999**	Sets or changes the password required to receive faxes.

*1 This item is available only when Secure Receive Set is set to Enable.

Login Error

NOTE: Login Error feature is available only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Purpose:

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the Admin Menu and Report/List menu.

Values:

Off*		Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	**5**	Sets the number of error entry attempts allowed when an administrator logs in.
	1-10	

USB Settings

Use the USB Settings menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USB Port

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the USB port. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

Defaults Settings

Use `Defaults Settings` to modify the `COPY`, `SCAN`, or `FAX` menu defaults.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the `COPY` menu defaults.

`Copy Defaults` allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the `COPY` menu.

Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Color*	Prints in color mode.

Auto Expo. Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
Higher (1)	Sets the background suppression level to Higher (1).
Higher (2)	Sets the background suppression level to Higher (2).

Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Values:

Yellow Low Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
	-3 to +3	
Yellow Med. Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	-3 to +3	
Yellow High Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
	-3 to +3	
Magen. Low Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
	-3 to +3	
Magen Med. Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	-3 to +3	
Magen High Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
	-3 to +3	
Cyan Low Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
	-3 to +3	
Cyan Med. Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	-3 to +3	
Cyan High Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
	-3 to +3	
Black Low Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
	-3 to +3	
Black Med. Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
	-3 to +3	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Black High Dens.	**0***	Sets the color balance level of high density black.
	-3 to +3	

Scan Defaults

To modify the SCAN menu defaults.

Scan Defaults allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the SCAN menu.

Color

Purpose:

To specify whether to print in color or black and white.

Values:

Color	**Black & White***	Prints in black and white.
	Color	Prints in color.

Color Button Set

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

B&W Button	**Black & White***	Sets whether to scan in black and white when Black & White is selected for a color mode.
	GrayScale	Sets whether to scan in gray scale when Black & White is selected for a color mode.
Color Button	**Color***	Sets whether to scan in color when Color is selected for a color mode.
	Color (Photo)	Sets whether to scan in color (Photo) when Color is selected for a color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

Auto Expo. Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
Higher (1)	Sets the background suppression level to Higher (1).
Higher (2)	Sets the background suppression level to Higher (2).

TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6*	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
TTN2	Sets the default Tiff file format to TTN2.

Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to High.
Medium*	Sets the image compression level to Medium.
Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.

Max Email Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.

Values:

2048 KB*	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, in increments of 1.
50-16384	

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To modify the Fax menu defaults. See "Fax Menu" for more details.

Print from USB Defaults

To modify the defaults for the Print from USB Defaults menu.

Print from USB Defaults allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the Print from USB menu.

Color

Purpose:

To specify whether to print in black and white or in color.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in black and white.
Color*	Prints in color.

Tray Settings

Use the Tray Settings menu to define the print media loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray and the optional 250-sheet feeder.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Tray 1

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Paper Size	**A4**[*1]
mm series	**A5**
	B5
	Letter
	Folio
	Legal
	Executive
	Envelope #10
	Monarch Env.
	Monarch Env. L
	DL Env.
	DL Env. L
	C5 Env.
	Custom Size
inch series	**Letter**[*1]
	Folio
	Legal
	A4
	A5
	B5
	Executive
	Envelope #10
	Monarch Env.
	Monarch Env. L
	DL Env.
	DL Env. L
	C5 Env.
	Custom Size

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Paper Type	**Plain***	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Covers Thick	
	Label	
	Envelope	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain S2	
	Plain Thick S2	
	Recycled S2	
	Color S2	
Display Popup	**Off**	Does not display a popup message that prompts to set `Paper Type` and `Paper Size` when paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	On*	Displays a popup message that prompts to set `Paper Type` and `Paper Size` when paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

NOTE: For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

Tray 2

NOTE: Tray 2 feature is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 250-sheet feeder.

Values:

Paper Size	**A4*1**
mm series	**A5**
	B5
	Letter
	Folio
	Legal
	Executive
inch series	**Letter*1**
	Folio
	Legal
	A4
	A5
	B5
	Executive
Paper Type	**Plain***
	Plain Thick
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2
	Color S2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Display Popup	**Off**	Does not display a popup message that prompts to set `Paper Type` and `Paper Size` when paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet feeder.
	On*	Displays a popup message that prompts to set `Paper Type` and `Paper Size` when paper is loaded in the standard 250-sheet feeder.

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the operator panel screen.

Values:

English*
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

Print Menu

Use the Print Menu to print a job using the Secure Print, Private Mail Box, Public Mail Box, and Proof Print features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Secure Print

NOTE: Secure Print feature is available only when `RAM disk` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To print confidential jobs. The printer can hold the job in memory until you arrive at the printer and type the password on the operator panel.

Values:

Select User ID	Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.		
	All Documents[*1]	**Print and Delete**	Deletes all documents from print memory after printing them.
		Delete	Deletes all documents from print memory.
	document n[*2]	**Print and Delete**	Deletes the specified document from print memory after printing it.
		Delete	Deletes the specified document from print memory.

*1 This item is available only when the multiple print jobs are stored.

*2 The document name is displayed. The save date and time are displayed if the document name is not specified.

Private Mail Box

NOTE: Private Mail Box feature is available only when `RAM disk` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Private Mail Box.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Select User ID	Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.		
	All Documents[*1]	**Print and Delete**	Deletes all documents from print memory after printing them.
		Print	Prints all documents and saves them in memory.
		Delete	Deletes all documents from print memory.
	document n[*2]	**Print and Delete**	Deletes the specified document from print memory after printing it.
		Print	Prints the specified document and saves it in memory.
		Delete	Deletes the specified document from print memory.

*1 This item is available only when the multiple print jobs are stored.

*2 The document name is displayed. The save date and time are displayed if the document name is not specified.

Public Mail Box

NOTE: Public Mail Box feature is available only when `RAM disk` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Public Mail Box.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Select User ID	**All Documents*1**	**Print and Delete**	Deletes all documents from print memory after printing them.
		Print	Prints all documents and saves them in memory.
		Delete	Deletes all documents from print memory.
	document n*2	**Print and Delete**	Deletes the specified document from print memory after printing it.
		Print	Prints the specified document and saves it in memory.
		Delete	Deletes the specified document from print memory.

*1 This item is available only when the multiple print jobs are stored.

*2 The document name is displayed. The save date and time are displayed if the document name is not specified.

Proof Print

NOTE: Proof Print feature is available only when `RAM disk` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To print only one copy and check the print result before printing all of the copies. This prevents a large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Select User ID	**All Documents**[*1]	**Print and Delete**	Deletes all documents from print memory after printing them.
		Print	Prints all documents and save them in memory.
		Delete	Deletes all documents from print memory.
	document n[*2]	**Print and Delete**	Deletes the specified document from print memory after printing it.
		Print	Prints the specified document and save it in memory.
		Delete	Deletes the specified document from print memory.

*1 This item is available only when the multiple print jobs are stored.

*2 The document name is displayed. The save date and time are displayed if the document name is not specified.

Secure Receive

NOTE: Before enabling `Secure Receive`, ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is enabled.

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Password	Enters the password to access the confidential job.

Copy Menu

Use the `COPY` menus to configure a variety of copy features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

Tray1*	The paper is fed from the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray2*1	The paper is fed from the optional 250-sheet feeder.
SSF	The paper is fed from the single sheet feeder.

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

SSF Paper Size

NOTE: SSF Paper Size feature is available only when print media is inserted in the single sheet feeder.

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size of the single sheet feeder.

Values:

mm series

A4*1
A5
B5
Letter
Folio
Legal
Executive
Envelope #10
Monarch Env.
DL Env.
C5 Env.

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

Letter*1

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folio
Legal
A4
A5
B5
Executive
Envelope #10
Monarch Env.
DL Env.
C5 Env.

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

SSF Paper Type

NOTE: SSF Paper Type feature is available only when print media is inserted in the single sheet feeder.

Purpose:

To specify the default paper type of the single sheet feeder.

Values:

Plain*
Plain Thick
Covers
Covers Thick
Coated
Coated Thick
Envelope
Recycled
Letterhead
Preprinted
Prepunched

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Color
Plain S2
Plain Thick S2
Recycled S2
Color S2

Collated

Purpose:

To sort the copy job. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete set of three page documents is printed one by one.

Values:

Off	Does not sort a copy job.
On	Sorts a copy job.
Auto*	Automatically sorts a copy job only when you use the ADF.

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image.

Values:

mm series

Custom 100%
50%
A4→A5 (70%)
B5→A5 (81%)
100%*
A5→B5 (122%)
A5→A4 (141%)
200%

inch series

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Custom 100%
50%
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
100%*
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
200%

NOTE: You can set the value in a percentage for `Custom`.

Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

Auto*1
A4
A5
B5
Letter
Folio
Legal
Executive

inch series

Auto*1
Letter
Folio

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Legal	
A4	
A5	
B5	
Executive	
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

NOTE: When `Auto` is selected, the printer assumes that the document size is the size of the print media loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray or single sheet feeder.

Original Type

Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the type of the original document.

Values:

Text	Used for documents with text.
Text & Photo*	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Sharper	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.

Color Saturation

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

High	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

2Sided

Purpose:

To specify whether to make duplex copy and select the binding position.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1 -> 1Sided*	Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Multiple-Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

Values:

0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the left and right margins of the copy.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the middle margin of the copy.

Values:

0.0 inch*(0 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

Scan Menu

Use the SCAN menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Scan to USB Memory

Save to

Purpose:

To save the scanned image to a USB memory attached to the printer.

Values:

Save to	Saves the scanned image to root or folders in a USB memory.

Scan to E-Mail

Email to

Purpose:

To specify the recipient of the e-mail to attach the scanned image.

Values:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recipient	**Keypad**	Enters an e-mail address using a keypad.
	Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the Address Book.
	Email Group	Searches an e-mail address from the Email Group in the Address Book.
	Search Local Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the Local Address Book.
	Search Server Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the Server Address Book.

From Setting

Purpose:

To specify the sender of the e-mail.

Values:

Keypad	Enters an e-mail address using a keypad.
Local Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the Local Address Book.
Server Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the Server Address Book.

Scan to Network

Scan to

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or a computer.

Values:

Network (Computer)	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Network (Server)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.
Search Address Book	Searches for a server address and specifies it as the transfer destination.

Scan to Application

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To save scanned data on a computer.

The **Scan to Application** feature allows you to import scanned data from the printer to a computer connected via a USB cable. The computer must have ScanButton Manager installed to receive the data.

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
MultiPageTIFF
TIFF
JPEG

Color Mode

Purpose:

To select color or black and white scanning.

Values:

Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. Works well with texts.
GrayScale	Scans in grayscale mode. Works well with texts and photos.
Color*	Scans in color mode. Works well with texts and photos.
Color (Photo)	Scans in color mode. Works well with photos.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution of the scanned image.

Values:

200 x 200 dpi*
300 x 300 dpi

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

400 x 400 dpi
600 x 600 dpi

Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4*
A5
B5
Letter
Folio
Legal
Executive
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

Letter*
Folio
Legal
A4
A5
B5
Executive
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the scanned image lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Sharper	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

Contrast

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Medium*	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the top and bottom margins of the scanned image.

Values:

0.1 inch* (2 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the left and right margins of the scanned image.

Values:

0.1 inch* (2 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the middle margin of the scanned image.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Values:

0.0 inch* (0 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
0.0–2.0 inch (0–50 mm)	

Fax Menu

Use the FAX menus to configure a variety of fax features.

NOTE: The FAX service cannot be used unless you set up a country code under Country. If Country is not set up, a message Set Fax Country appears on the display.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Fax to

Purpose:

To specify the recipient.

Values:

Recipient	**Keypad***	Enters the fax number using a keypad.
	Speed Dial	Enters the speed dial number stored.
	Phone Book	Searches the fax number from the Phone Book.
	Group Dial	Searches the fax number from the Group Dial in the Phone Book.
	Search Local Phone Book	Searches the fax number from the local Phone Book.
	Search Server Phone Book	Searches the fax number from the Server Phone Book.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the scan resolution to improve the output quality.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The `Super Fine` mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the `Super Fine` mode. See the notes below.
Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE: Faxes scanned in the `Super Fine` mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	

OnHook

Purpose:

To send or receive faxes manually.

Values:

Off*	Does not send or receive faxes manually.
On	Sends or receives faxes manually.

Delayed Start

Purpose:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To send a fax at a later time.

Values:

Off*	Does not send a fax at a later time.
On	Sends a fax at a later time.

NOTE: A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in the Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Polling Receive

Purpose:

To receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive faxes using Polling Receive.
On	Receives faxes using Polling Receive.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Print from USB Menu

NOTE: Print from USB Menu feature is available only when a USB memory is inserted in the USB port.

Document

Purpose:

To specify the document stored in the root, file, or folder in a USB memory.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Select Tray

Purpose:

Values:

Tray 1*
Tray 2*1
SSF

*1 This item is available only when the optional 250-sheet feeder is installed.

SSF Paper Size

Purpose:

Values:

mm series

A4*1
A5
B5
Letter
Folio
Legal

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

Letter*1
Folio
Legal
A4
A5
B5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*1	Denotes country-specific factory default values.

SSF Paper Type

Purpose:

Values:

Plain*
Plain Thick
Covers
Covers Thick
Coated
Coated Thick
Envelope
Recycled
Letterhead
Preprinted
Prepunched
Color
Plain S2
Plain Thick S2
Recycled S2
Color S2

2Sided

NOTE: 2Sided feature is available only for Dell 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Purpose:

To print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 -> 1Sided*	Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

1Up*	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
2Up	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
4Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print the secure PDF job.

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF job.

Panel Lock

This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing the settings made by the administrator. For regular printing, items can be selected from the menu and printer settings remain unchanged. For regular printing, items can be configured using the printer driver.

NOTE: Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the Stored Print and Tray Settings menus.

Enabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Ensure that `Panel Lock` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Press button until `Enable` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

8 Enter the new password, and then press the **(Set)** button.

NOTICE: Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password, but the settings for Address Book and Phone Book are cleared.

- Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the **(Menu)** button, turn on the printer. Perform steps 8 and 9.

9 Re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The password has been changed.

NOTE: If you change the password while `Panel Lock` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 5 above. Press button until `Change Password` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button. Perform steps 8 and 9 above to change the password. This will change the password.

Disabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Ensure that `Panel Lock` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Ensure that `Disable` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

8 Enter the current password, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The setting has been changed.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the (**Menu**) button.

2 Press ⌄ button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

3 Press ⌄ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

4 Press ⌄ button until `Maintenance` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

5 Press ⌄ button until `Reset Defaults` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

6 Press ⌄ button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

7 Press ⌄ button until `YES` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The printer is restarted automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

23

Understanding Your Printer Software

Use the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

Printer Status Window

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches only when an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Printer Status** window. You can set the **Printer Status** window to always launch when printing in **Printing Status Window Properties**.

You can also check toner level, quantity of paper remaining or the configuration of options for the local printer.

Status Monitor Console

Use the **Status Monitor Console** to manage multiple instances of the **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Select a printer from the list view (or **Printer Selection**) by clicking its name to open a **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Dell Supplies Management System

You can launch the **Dell Supplies Management System** dialog box from the **All Programs** menu or the desktop icon.

You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

1. Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Additional Color Laser Software→ Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2. Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
3. If you are ordering from the web:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a When you cannot get information from the printer automatically by two-way communication, a window prompting you to type the Service Tag appears. Type the Service Tag of your Dell printer in the field provided.

   Your Service Tag is located inside the toner access cover of your printer.

b Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.

c Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

4 If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

User Setup Disk Creating Tool

The **User Setup Disk Creating Tool** program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Drivers and Utilities* CD and the printer drivers located on the *Drivers and Utilities* CD are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved printer driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the printer driver with the same settings on multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the printer driver.

- Install the Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

Software Update

The firmware and/or driver updates can be downloaded from the Dell Support web site located at **support.dell.com**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer Settings Utility

You can open the **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Updater**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter** using the **Quick Launch Utility** window.

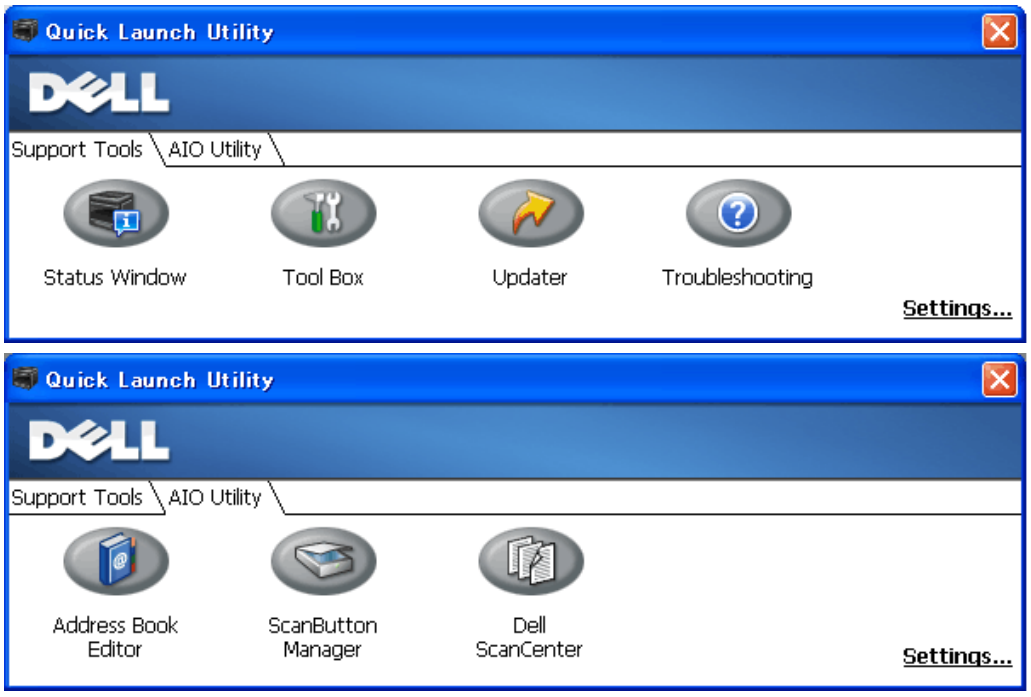
NOTE: **Quick Launch Utility** is only supported on Windows.

To use the **Quick Launch Utility**, select to install the **Quick Launch Utility** when you install the Dell software.

For information about installing the software, see "Setting Up for Shared Printing."

To open the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Additional Color Laser Software→ Quick Launch Utility**.



The **Quick Launch Utility** window provides seven buttons: **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Updater**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter**.

To exit the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

1 Click the X button at the top-right of the window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For details, click the **Help** button of each application.

Status Window

The **Status Window** button opens the **Printer Status** window. For more information about using Status Window, refer to "Printer Status Window."

Tool Box

The **Tool Box** button opens the Tool Box. For more information about using Tool Box, refer to "Understanding the Tool Box Menus."

Updater

The **Updater** button updates the Dell software and printer firmware.

Troubleshooting

The **Troubleshooting** button opens the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to solve problems by yourself.

Address Book Editor

The **Address Book Editor** button opens the **Address Book Editor**, which allows you to register the contact information such as phone number and e-mail address. For more information about using Address Book Editor, refer to "Using Address Book Editor."

ScanButton Manager

The **ScanButton Manager** button opens the **ScanButton Manager**, which allows you to specify how the ScanButton Manager behaves for scan events that the device generates (USB connection only). For more information about using ScanButton Manager, refer to "Scanning From the Operator Panel."

Dell ScanCenter

The **Dell ScanCenter** button opens the Dell ScanCenter, which is a PaperPort application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without running the PaperPort program first. For more information about using Dell ScanCenter, refer to "Dell ScanCenter" or PaperPort's Help menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Address Books

There are several address books available for Scan and Fax services. Address books help you organize contact information, such as e-mail addresses, fax numbers and server information, and quickly choose the recipient or locate the address. The address book data can be obtained from the printer or a remote LDAP server.

NOTE: Phone Book is described as one of Address Books in this section.

NOTE: For information on how to setup the LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "LDAP User Mapping." For information on the LDAP Address Books, see "Server Address Book" and "Server Phone Book."

Types of Address Books

- E-mail Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)

  E-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- Email Group (for Scan to E-mail)

  Groups of e-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- LDAP Server Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)

  E-mail addresses registered in the address book data through the LDAP server for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- Network Address Book (for Scan to Network)

  Computer and FTP server information registered for sending the scanned document to a computer or ftp server

- Phone Book (for Fax)

  Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer

- Group Dial (for Fax)

  Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer

- LDAP Server Phone Book (for Fax)

  Fax numbers registered in the phone book data through the LDAP server for sending documents from your printer

- PC Fax Address Book (for Direct Fax)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer

- PC Fax Address Book for group (for Direct Fax)

  Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer

Adding and Editing Entries to the Address Books

There are following three ways to add or edit entries to the address books:

- Operator panel of the printer
- Address Book Editor
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Services	Features	Types of Address Books	Entry Registration		
			Operator Panel on the Printer	Address Book Editor	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool
Scan	**E-mail**	Address Book	-	●	●
		Email Group	-	●	●
		Server Address Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Network	Address Book	-	●	●
Fax	**Fax**	Phone Book	●	●	●
		Group Dial	●	●	●
		Server Phone Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Direct Fax	PC Fax Address Book	-	●	-
		PC Fax Address Book - group	-	●	-

Using Operator Panel of the Printer

You can directly enter the fax numbers on the operator panel.

NOTE: For information on how to add a new entry, see "Setting Speed Dial."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using Address Book Editor

You can use **Address Book Editor** installed on your computer to add or edit entries. **Address Book Editor** is synchronized with the address books of your printer and updated simultaneously as you save changes to the entries in **Address Book Editor**.

NOTE: This tool is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

NOTE: When the printer and your computer is connected via USB, you must install the scanner driver.

With **Address Book Editor**, you can:

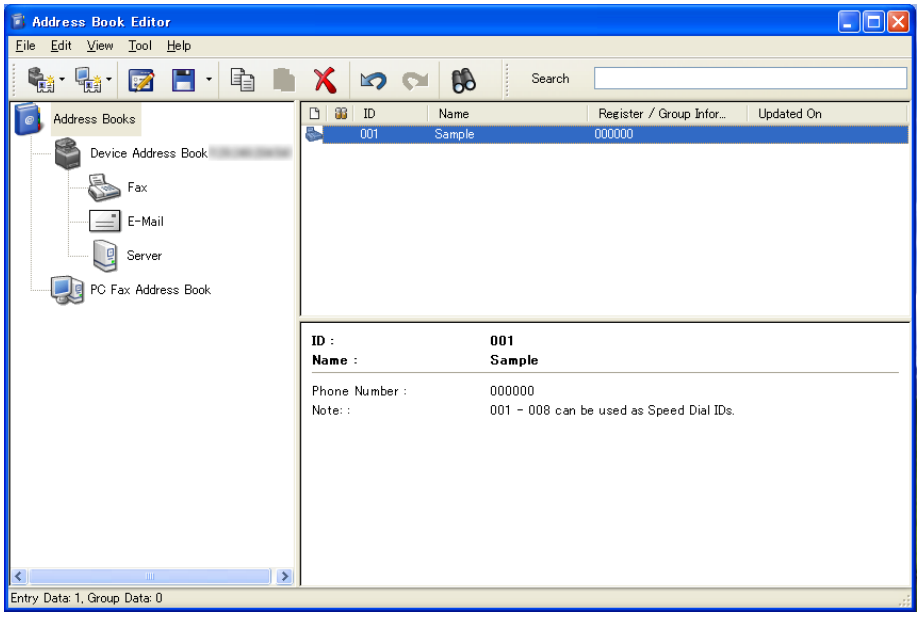
- Automatically retrieves data from the address books of your printer at startup
- Synchronizes with the printer
- Allows you to import the Address Book data from CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, and LDAP server
- Allows you to export the Address Book data into a CSV file

Address Book Panel

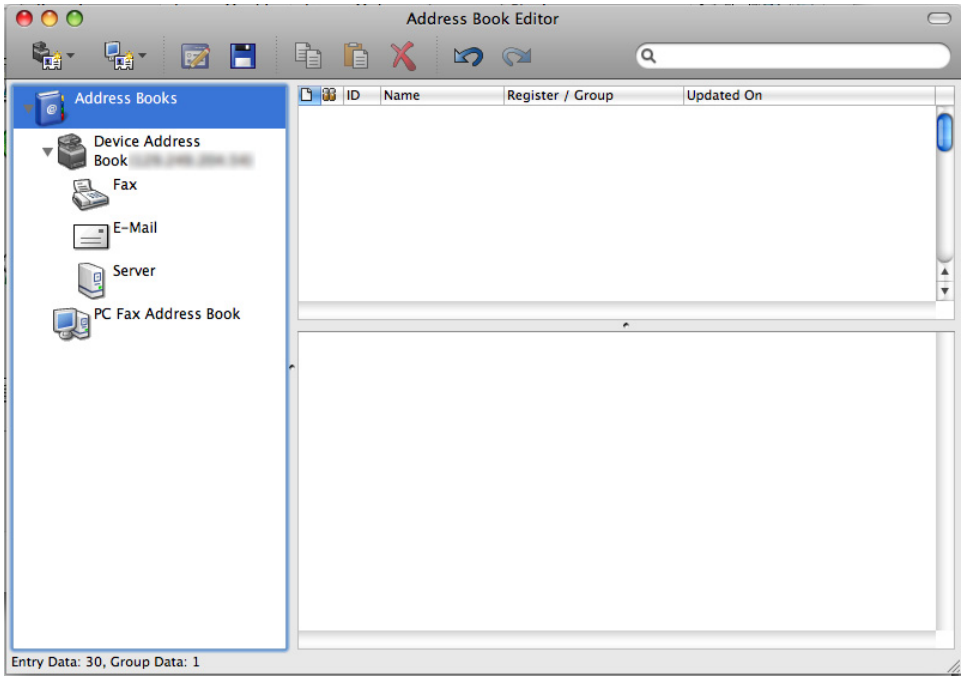
There are two address books you can manage in the **Address Book Editor**: Device Address Book for Fax, E-mail, and Server and PC Fax Address Book for Direct Fax.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



- **Device Address Book**
  - **Fax**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Links to the printer's Address Book for Fax feature. You can register up to 200 fax numbers and 6 groups with 200 fax numbers.

- **E-Mail**

  Links to the printer’s Address Book for Scan to E-mail feature. You can register up to 100 e-mail addresses and 10 groups with 10 e-mail addresses.

- **Server**

  Links to the printer’s Address Book for Scan to Network feature. You can register up to 32 server information.

- **PC Fax Address Book**

  You can manage the PC Fax Address Book for using Direct Fax feature on your computer. You can register up to 500 fax numbers and 500 groups with 500 fax numbers.

Editing an entry:

1. Select an Address Book that the entry you want to edit is stored.
2. Select an entry that you want to edit.
3. Click the **Edit** button, and enter new information.
4. Click the **Save** button to save changes.

NOTE: When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

You can use **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** using a general web browser.

NOTE: For information on how to add a new entry, see "Address Book."

NOTE: When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh

Status Monitor Widget is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Macintosh and the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Status Monitor Widget Feature

- Monitoring Dell Printers

  Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Macintosh

- Receiving Alerts

  Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner

- Ordering Supplies

  Allows you to access the web site to order supplies

Before Installing the Status Monitor Widget

Operating systems

- Mac OS X 10.4.11
- Mac OS X 10.5
- Mac OS X 10.6

Network protocols and interfaces

- LPR
- Socket 9100
- Bonjour
- USB 2.0 and 1.1 (When connecting with multiple printers of the same model via USB cables, only the printer recognized first can be monitored in the **Status Monitor Widget**.)

Installing the Status Monitor Widget

1 Double-click the **Status Monitor Installer** icon in the **Finder** window.

2 Follow the on-screen instructions.

When the **Install Succeeded** screen appears, the installation is complete.

NOTE: Entering the administrative login name and password are required during the installation process.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening and Closing the Status Monitor Widget

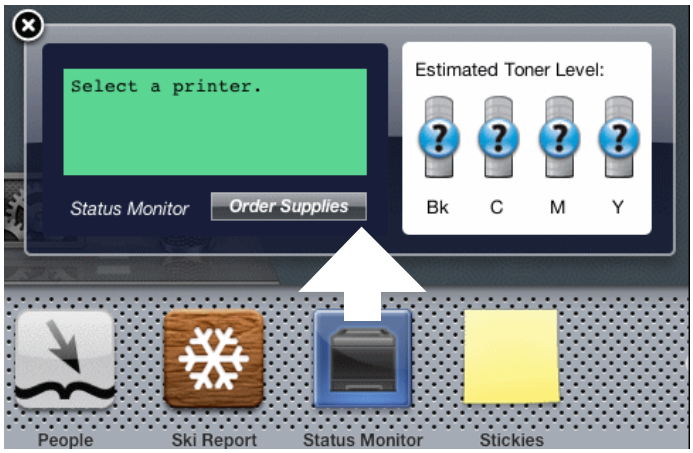
Opening the Status Monitor Widget

1 Click the Dashboard icon in the Dock to launch Dashboard.

2 Click the Plus (+) sign to display the Widget Bar.

3 Click the icon of **Status Monitor** in the Widget Bar. The **Printer Status** window appears.

NOTE: If the message **Select a printer** is displayed, select your printer in **Preferences**. (For more information on Preferences, see "Preferences.")



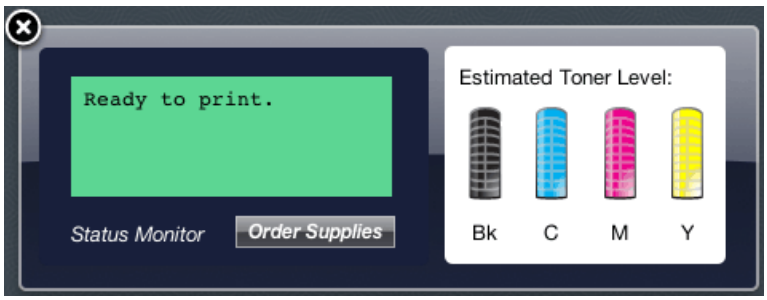
Closing the Status Monitor Widget

1 Click the Close (x) button in the upper-left corner of the **Printer Status** window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer Status Window

When the **Status Monitor Widget** is activated, the **Printer Status** window appears on Dashboard.



Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.

NOTE: The **Status Monitor Widget** automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in **Preferences**. Also, the printer status is refreshed when Dashboard is launched or **Preferences** is closed.

NOTE: If the **Status Monitor Widget** receives no response from the printer, the message **Cannot get printer information** is displayed.

NOTE: When the printer is connected via USB cable, you cannot check the status of the printer during a print or scan job.

Printer Status Image Area

Displays the image of printer condition.

- Estimated Toner Level image

  Displays the estimated toner level of each color if the printer is functioning properly.

NOTE: If the utility does not receive a response from the printer, the **Unknown** toner image is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Printer error image

  Displays an indication image when an error occurs.

An error has occurred and the printer requires your attention to correct a problem.

An error has occurred and the printer cannot be used.

An unknown error has occurred and the printer cannot be used.

Order Supplies button

Click this button to display the **Order** window.
To hide the **Order** window, click **Order Supplies** again.

Info (i) button

Click this button to open **Preferences**.

NOTE: The **info (i)** button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the **Printer Status** window. The **info (i)** button is a standard used across all widgets.

Order Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.

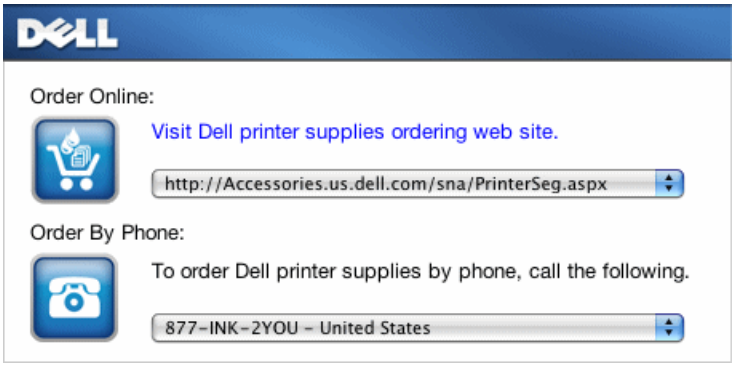
To open the **Order** window:

1 Click the **Order Supplies** in the **Printer Status** window.

  The **Order** window appears.

  NOTE: The **Order** window appears when low toner is detected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


Order Online:
Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site.
http://Accessories.us.dell.com/sna/PrinterSeg.aspx
Order By Phone:
To order Dell printer supplies by phone, call the following.
877-INK-2YOU - United States

Order Online

- **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink

  Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies.

- URL list

  Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies.

  Select a URL address to use when the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink is clicked.

Order By Phone

- Phone number list

  Displays a list of available phone numbers that you can call to order Dell printer supplies.

Preferences

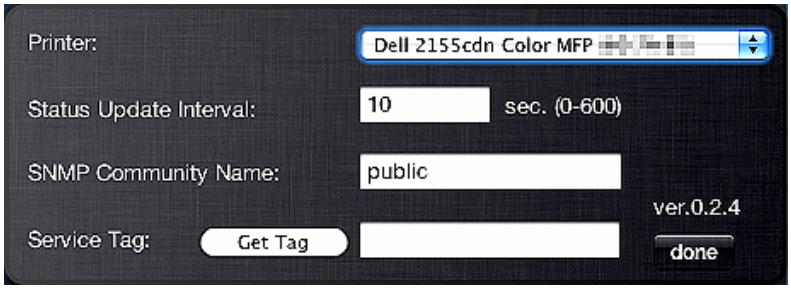
To open **Preferences**:

1 Click the **info (i)** button in the **Printer Status** window.

Preferences appears.

NOTE: The **info (i)** button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the **Printer Status** window. The **info (i)** button is a standard used across all widgets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Printer

Displays a list of available printer names in the pull down menu. The first printer displayed in this list is set as default.

Status Update Interval

You can specify the update interval of the printer status. By default, it is set to obtain the printer information every 10 seconds. It can be set from 0 second to 600 seconds.

SNMP Community Name

You can change the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) community name if using default community name (public). Up to 31 characters can be entered.

Service Tag button

Click this button to obtain the service tag.

NOTE: You cannot retrieve the service tag when the printer is connected via USB cable.

done button

Click this button to return to the **Printer Status** window.

Status Monitor Console for Linux

Status Monitor Console is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Linux and the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Status Monitor Console Feature

- Monitoring Dell Printers

  Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Linux.

- Receiving Alerts

  Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner.

- Ordering Supplies

  Allows you to access the web site to order supplies.

Before Installing the Status Monitor Console

NOTE: The Status Monitor Console requires the following modules installed.

- Python, PyGTK, Net-SNMP, cups-libs, and xog-open

Please confirm that these modules are installed before you install the Status Monitor Console.

NOTE: The Status Monitor Console is available when the printer is connected to a network (LPR or Socket 9100). USB connection is not supported.

Distributions

- Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® WS 4
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop
- SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

Printing system

- CUPS (Common Unix Printing System)

Installing the Status Monitor Console

1 Activate the terminal, and log in as a super user.

2 Type the following rpm command in the terminal window.

```
# rpm -ivh (Type the package file name)
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Status Monitor Console

1 Click **Dell Printers→ Status Monitor Console**

The **Printer Selection** window appears.

For more information on Printer Selection window, see "Printer Selection Window."

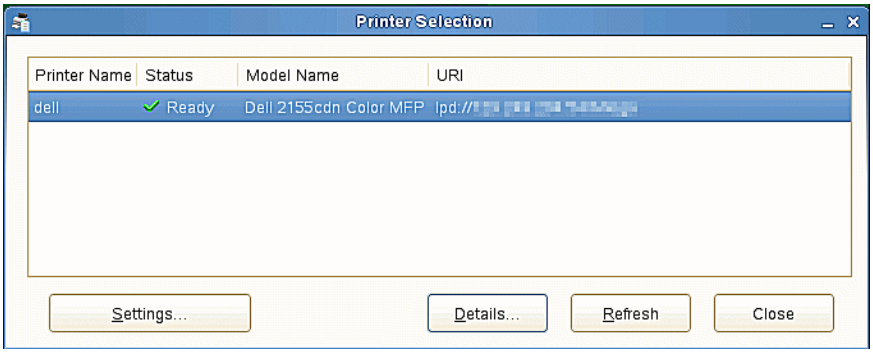
2 Select your printer.

The **Printer Status** window appears.

For more information on Printer Status window, see "Printer Status Window."

- You can order supplies from the **Dell Supplies Management System** window. See "Dell Supplies Management System Window."

Printer Selection Window



Printers list

All the printers registered in the CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) are displayed in a list.

- Status icons:

  Ready

  Unknown/Offline/Toner Low/Paper Low

  Door Open/Paper Jam/No Toner/Out Of Paper

Settings button

Click this button to open the **Settings** window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Details button

Click this button to open the **Printer Status** window. If a non-supported printer is selected, it opens the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.** For details on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, see "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."

Refresh button

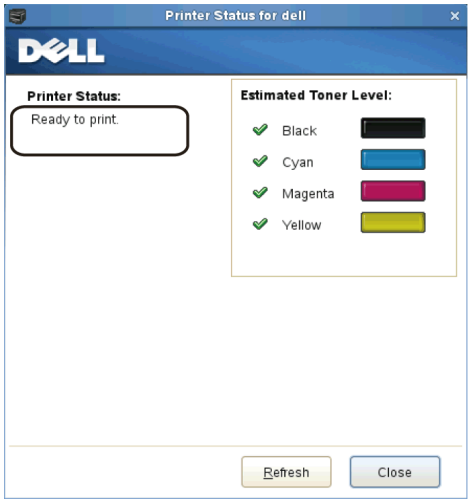
Click this button to update the information of printers.

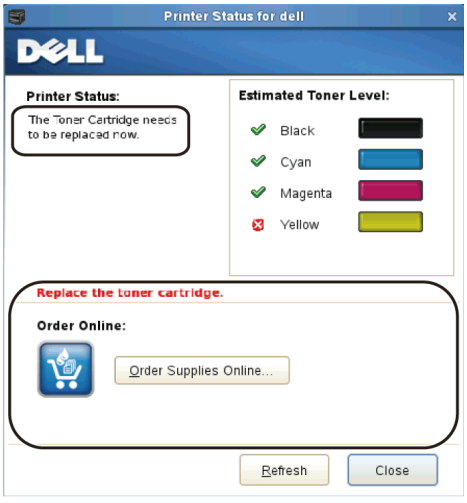
Close button

Click this button to close the **Printer Selection** window.

Printer Status Window

When the printer is specified in the **Printer Selection** window, the **Printer Status** window appears.





Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.

NOTE: The **Status Monitor Console** automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in the **Settings** window. Also, the printer status is refreshed when the **Refresh** is clicked.

NOTE: If the **Status Monitor Console** receives no response from the printer, the message **Cannot get printer information** is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer Status Image Area

- Current Toner Status icons

  Displays icons of the current status of each toner.

  The toner level is more than 30%.

  The toner level is less than 29%.

  The toner level is less than 9%.

  The toner level is unknown.

- Estimated Toner Level images

  Keeps you informed about the amount of toner that remains for each color.

Toner Alert

Displays an alert message when any remaining toner is low, empty, or unknown.

Order Online

- **Order Supplies Online** button

  Click this button to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies. This button appears when the amount of toners becomes less than 30%.

Refresh button

Click this button to update the status of the printer.

Close button

Click this button to close the **Printer Status** window.

Dell Supplies Management System Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.

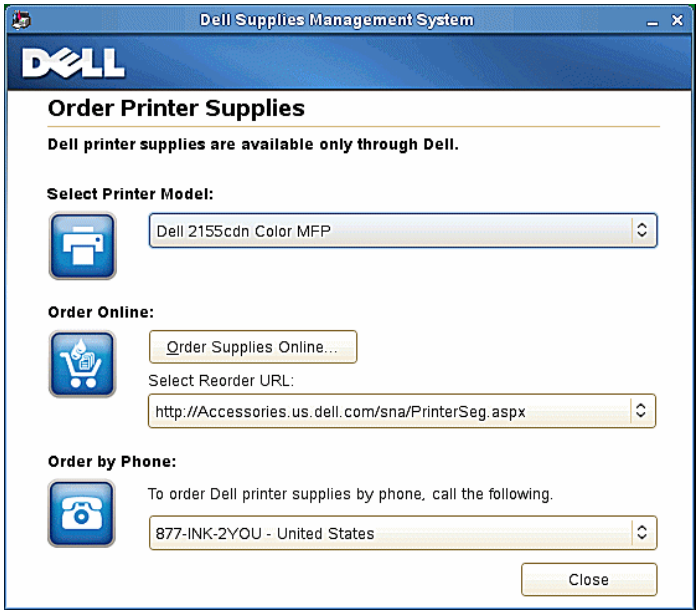
To open the **Dell Supplies Management System** window:

1 Click **Order Supplies Online** button in the **Printer Status** window.

  OR

  Click **Dell Printers→ Dell Supplies Management System**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Select Printer Model

Select your printer model name.

Order Online

- **Order Supplies Online** button
  - When the Regular URL is selected in the **Select Reorder URL**:

    Click this button to open the **Service Tag** window.
  - When the Premier URL is selected in the **Select Reorder URL**:

    Click this button to open the procurement and support web site.
- **Select Reorder URL**

  Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies. Select a URL address to use when the **Order Supplies Online** button is clicked.
  - Regular URL: http://Accessories.us.dell.com/sna/PrinterSeg.aspx
  - Premier URL: http://premier.dell.com

Order by Phone

- **To order Dell printer supplies by phone, call the following**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Select your country with phone number from the list, and call the displayed telephone number to order supplies.

Close button

Click this button to close the **Dell Supplies Management System** window.

Service Tag Window

1 Enter the Dell printer service tag.

NOTE: For information on the service tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

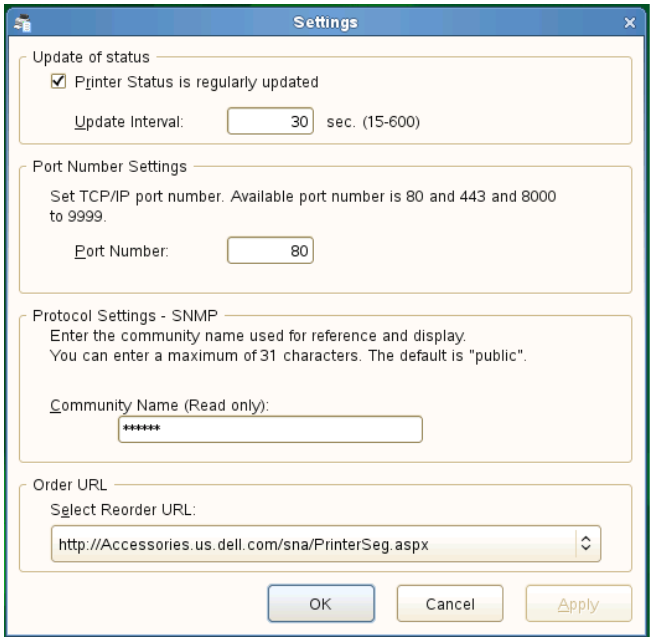
Settings Window

To open the **Settings** window:

1 Click the **Settings** button in the **Printer Selection** window.

The **Settings** window appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Update of status

- **Printer Status is regularly updated** check box

  Select the check box to enable/disable the Printer Status to be updated by the specified interval.

- **Update interval** text box

  Specify the update interval of the printer status.

Port Number Settings

- **Port Number**

  Specify the port number in the **Port Number** text box to open the setting page of your printer in a web browser.

Protocol Settings - SNMP

- **Community Name**

  Enter the Community name of SNMP in the **Community Name** text box.

Order URL

- **Select Reorder URL**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The selected URL address is set as default web site for the **Select Reorder URL** in the **Dell Supplies Management System** window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

24

Understanding Fonts

Typefaces and Fonts

A font is a set of characters and symbols created with a distinct design. The distinct design is called a *typeface*. The typefaces you select add personality to a document. Well-chosen typefaces make a document easier to read.

The printer has numerous resident fonts in PCL 5/PCL 6. See "Resident Fonts" for a listing of all resident fonts.

Weight and Style

Typefaces are often available in different weights and styles. These variations modify the original typeface so you can, for example, emphasize important words in text or highlight book titles. The different weights and styles are designed to complement the original typeface.

Weight refers to the thickness of the lines that form the characters. Thicker lines result in darker characters. Some words commonly used to describe the weight of a typeface are bold, medium, light, black, and heavy.

Style refers to other typeface modifications, such as tilt or character width. Italic and oblique are styles where the characters are tilted. Narrow, condensed, and extended are three common styles that modify the character widths.

Some fonts combine several weight and style modifications; for example, Helvetica BdOb. A group of several weight and style variations of a single typeface is called a *typeface family*. Most typeface families have four variations: regular, italic (oblique), bold, and bold italic (bold oblique). Some families have more variations, as the following illustration for the Helvetica typeface family shows:

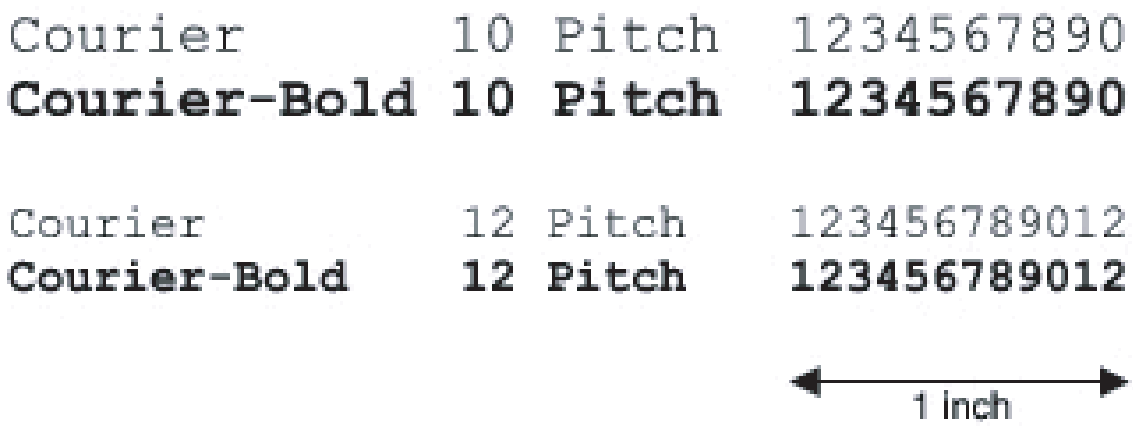
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Helvetica	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890
Helvetica Oblique	*ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890*
Helvetica Bold	**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890**
Helvetica Bold Oblique	***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890***
Helvetica Narrow	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890
Helvetica Narrow Oblique	*ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890*
Helvetica Narrow Bold	**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890**
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890***

Pitch and Point Size

The size of a font is specified as either a pitch or point size, depending on whether the font is fixed space or proportional.

In *fixed space* fonts, each character has the same width. *Pitch* is used to specify the size of fixed space fonts. It is a measure of the number of characters that will print in one horizontal inch of type. For example, all 10-pitch fonts print 10 characters per inch (cpi) and all 12-pitch fonts print 12 cpi:



In *proportional* (or *typographic*) fonts, every character can have a different width. Since proportional fonts have characters with different widths, the font size is specified in point size, not pitch. *Point size* refers to the height of the characters in the font. A *point* is defined as 1/72 inch. The characters in a font printed at 24 point will be twice as large as the characters in the same font printed at 12 point.

The following illustration shows samples of a font printed in different point sizes:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

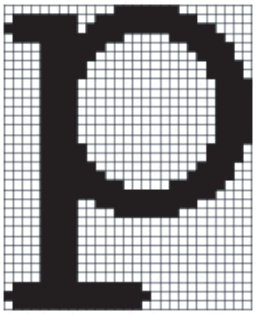
The point size of a font is defined as the distance from the top of the tallest character in the font to the bottom of the lowest character in the font. Due to the definition of point size, different fonts printed at the same point size may appear quite different in size. This is because there are other font parameters that affect how the font looks. However, the point size of a font is an excellent specification of the relative size of a font. The following examples illustrate two very different proportional fonts at 14 point:

Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts

The printer uses both bitmapped and scalable fonts.

Bitmapped fonts are stored in print memory as predefined patterns of bits that represent a typeface at a specific size, style, and resolution. The following illustration shows an example of a character from a bitmapped font.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Bitmapped fonts are available in different type styles and point sizes as downloadable fonts.

Scalable fonts (also called *outline* fonts) are stored as computer programs that define the outlines of the characters in the font. Each time you print characters from a scalable font, the printer creates a bitmap of the characters at the point size you choose and saves it temporarily in print memory.

These temporary bitmapped fonts are deleted when you turn off or reset the printer. Scalable fonts provide the flexibility of printing in many different point sizes.

Your printer uses different scalable font formats for downloading fonts to the printer. PCL 5/PCL 6 uses Intellifont and TrueType scalable fonts. There are thousands of different scalable fonts available in these different font formats from numerous font suppliers.

If you plan to use many downloadable bitmapped or scalable fonts or if you plan to use many different sizes of scalable fonts, you may need to purchase additional memory for your printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resident Fonts

Your printer is equipped with resident fonts stored permanently in print memory. Different fonts are available in PCL 5/PCL 6. Some of the most popular typefaces, like Courier and TimesNew, are available for all printer languages.

The following table lists all the fonts resident in your printer. See "Printing Font Sample List" for instructions on how to print samples of the fonts. You can select the resident fonts from your software program or from the operator panel.

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts		
PCL 5/PCL 6		
CG Times	CG Omega BdIt	Coronet
CG Times It		
CG Times Bd	Garamond Antiqua	Marigold
CG Times BdIt	Garamond Krsv	
	Garamond Hlb	Arial
Univers Md	Garamond KrsvHlb	Arial It
Univers MdIt		Arial Bd
Univers Bd	Courier	Arial BdIt
Univers BdIt	Courier It	
Univers MdCd	Courier Bd	TimesNew
Univers MdCdIt	Courier BdIt	TimesNew It
Univers BdCd		TimesNew Bd
Univers BdCdIt	LetterGothic	TimesNew BdIt
	LetterGothic It	
AntiqueOlv	LetterGothic Bd	Symbol
AntiqueOlv It		
AntiqueOlv Bd	Albertus Md	Wingdings
	Albertus XBd	
CG Omega		
CG Omega It	Clarendon Cd	
CG Omega Bd		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts		
PCL 5/PCL 6		
Times Roman	Palatino Roman	N C Schbk Roman
Times It	Palatino It	N C Schbk It
Times Bd	Palatino Bd	N C Schbk Bd
Times BdIt	Palatino BdIt	N C Schbk BdIt
Helvetica	ITCBookman Lt	ITC A G Go Bk
Helvetica Ob	ITCBookman LtIt	ITC A G Go BkOb
Helvetica Bd	ITCBookmanDm	ITC A G Go Dm
Helvetica BdOb	ITCBookmanDm It	ITC A G Go DmOb
CourierPS	HelveticaNr	ZapfC MdIt
CourierPS Ob	HelveticaNr Ob	
CourierPS Bd	HelveticaNr Bd	ZapfDingbats
CourierPS BdOb	HelveticaNr BdOb	
SymbolPS		

Symbol Sets

A symbol set is the collection of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special characters available in the font you select. Symbol sets support the requirements for different languages or specific applications, such as math symbols used for scientific text.

In PCL 5/PCL 6, a symbol set also defines which character will print for each key on the keyboard (or more specifically, for each *code point*). Some applications require different characters at some code points. To support multiple applications and languages, your printer has 36 symbol sets for the resident PCL 5/PCL 6 fonts.

Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6

Not all font names support all of the symbol sets listed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roman 8 (Default)	ISO 8859-1 Latin 1	ISO 8859-2 Latin 2
ISO 8859-9 Latin 5	ISO 8859-10 Latin 6	PC-8
PC-8 DN	PC-775 Baltic	PC-850 Multilingual
PC-852 Latin 2	PC-1004 OS/2	PC Turkish
Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Windows 3.1 Latin 2	Windows 3.1 Latin 5
DeskTop	PS Text	MC Text
Microsoft Publishing	Math 8	PS Math
Pi Font	Legal	ISO 4 United Kingdom
ISO 6 ASCII	ISO 11 Swedish:names	ISO 15 Italian
ISO 17 Spanish	ISO 21 German	ISO 60 Norwegian v1
ISO 69 French	Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Windows Baltic
Symbol	Wingdings	ITC ZapfDingbats MS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

25

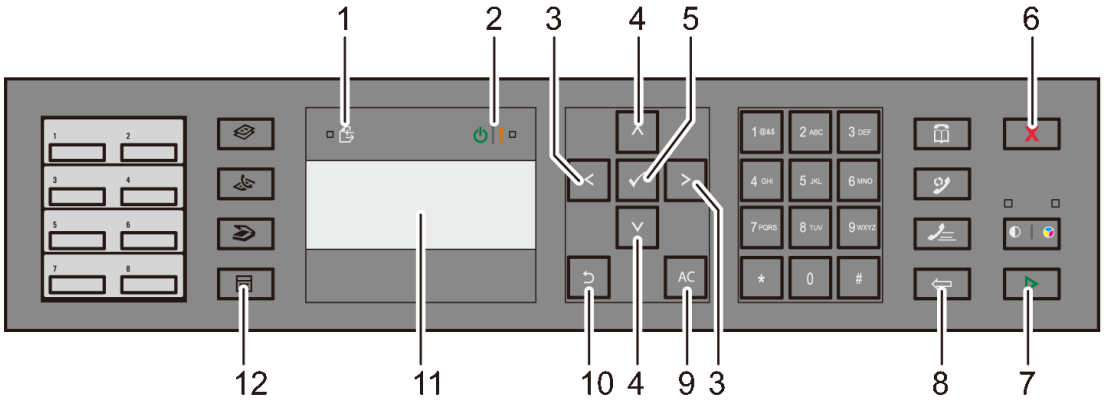
Understanding Printer Messages

The printer operator panel displays error messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This chapter provides a list of error codes and tells you how to clear error messages.

NOTICE: When an error message appears, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secure.

NOTE: An error code is listed in an error message.

NOTE: For error messages that are not listed in this chapter, refer to instructions in each error messages.



1	Data LED	2	Ready / Error LED*[1]
3	button	4	button
5	**(Set)** button	6	**(Cancel)** button
7	**(Start)** button	8	**(Backspace)** button
9	AC **(All Clear)** button	10	**(Back)** button
11	LCD panel*[2]	12	**(Menu)** button

*[1] The Error LED is on the right and blinks when an error occurs.

*[2] Displays up to 4-line by 16-character messages when an error occurs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Error-Code	What you can do
004-310	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the optional 250-sheet feeder is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
004-311	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the duplexer is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
004-312	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
005-110	Remove the remaining documents from the ADF.
005-121	
005-124	
009-360	Turn off the printer. Confirm the yellow cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
009-361	Turn off the printer. Confirm the magenta cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
009-362	Turn off the printer. Confirm the cyan cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
009-363	Turn off the printer. Confirm the black cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
010-317	Turn off the printer and wait for 30 minutes. Open the front cover and make sure that the fuser is fully installed.
010-377	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the fuser is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-316	Turn off the printer. Remove the optional 512 MB memory module from the slot, and then reattach it firmly. Turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-317	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-318	Remove the unsupported additional memory module. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-386	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-387	
016-388	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

016-391	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-392	
016-393	
016-394	
016-404	Contact your system administrator.
016-405	
016-503	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-504	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password for POP3 server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-505	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for POP3 server are set correctly.
016-506	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server or POP server is set.
016-507	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly.
016-520	Contact your system administrator.
016-521	
016-522	
016-523	
016-524	
016-527	
016-531	The account is not registered. Contact your system administrator.
016-532	
016-533	
016-545	
016-535	
016-536	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

016-541	Contact your system administrator.
016-542	
016-543	
016-700	The file size exceeds the maximum for the printer to process. Print the file from your computer.
016-720	The file format is not supported by the USB memory. Print the file from your computer.
016-750	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover.
016-753	
016-755	
016-756	Contact your system administrator.
016-757	The account is not registered. Contact your system administrator.
016-758	The function cannot be used. Contact your system administrator.
016-759	Printable page limit is exceeded. Contact your system administrator.
016-764	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact SMTP server administrator.
016-765	
016-766	
016-767	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-768	
016-786	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the network cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the network cable, contact server administrator.
016-790	
016-791	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover.
016-799	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button to clear the message and cancel the current print job. Confirm the configuration of the printer on the printer driver.
016-920	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button and try again.
016-921	
016-922	
016-930	The device is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-931	The USB hub is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

016-985 016-986	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
024-910	Reload the specified paper on the standard 250-sheet tray.
024-911	Reload the specified paper on the optional 250-sheet feeder.
024-914	Reload the specified paper on the SSF.
024-946	Insert the standard 250-sheet tray.
024-947	Insert the optional 250-sheet feeder.
026-721	Check your USB memory: • If the file size or the number of files exceeds the limit of your USB memory. • If your USB memory is write-protected.
027-452 027-446	Change IP address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
031-521	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-522	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (domain name and user name) and password are correct.
031-523	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the share name you specified.
031-524	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the number of users who use the server at the same time is not exceeding the upper limit.
031-525	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the specified user can read and write file at the storage location.
031-526	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-527	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

031-528	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer can communicate via network with the forwarding destination SMB server. For example, check the following: • Connection of a network cable • TCP/IP setting • Communication with Port 137 (UDP), 138 (UDP), and 139 (TCP). For communication beyond the subnet, contact your system administrator.
031-529	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if password is correct.
031-530	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct. Storage location you specified is DFS setting, and check if it is linked to other server. Specify directly linked server, share name, and storage location.
031-531	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check access right of the folder you specified.
031-532	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-533 031-534	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-535 031-536	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-537	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-539	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if server name is correct.
031-540	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if domain name is correct.
031-541	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) is correct.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

031-542	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while and try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-543	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check login permitted time with your system administrator.
031-544	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the password valid period with your system administrator.
031-545	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check necessity of password change with your system administrator.
031-546	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-547	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-548	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-549	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. On server security settings, check access permission of null password user.
031-550 031-551	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check append access right to the file. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-552	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-574	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of network cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

031-578	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.
031-579	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct.
031-580	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access right.
031-581	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-582	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.
031-584	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585 031-587	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-588	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-590	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-594 031-595	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-598	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check append access right to the file and if server supports FTP append command.
031-599	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check rename access right to the file. Check if server supports FTP rename command.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

033-513	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. • Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature. NOTE: For more information on the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
033-762	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. The printer rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers. NOTE: For more information, see "Junk Fax Setup."
033-788	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. • Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature. NOTE: For more information on the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
034-515	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Try the same operation. • Check the printer or remote machine if the memory is full.
034-791	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the telephone line cord is connected properly. If the line connection is correct, check the following: • If Tone/Pulse setting is correct. NOTE: For more information on Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone/Pulse." If Tone/Pulse setting is correct, check the following: • If the remote machine can receive a fax.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

035-701	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: • Status of the remote machine • Tone/Pulse setting NOTE: For more information on Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone/Pulse."
035-702	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation.
035-708	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Try the same operation. • Reduce the modem speed. NOTE: For more information on modem speed, see "Modem Speed."
035-717	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Reduce the modem speed. NOTE: For more information on modem speed, see "Modem Speed."
035-718	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the status of the remote machine.
035-720	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the features of the remote machine.
035-781	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the remote machine is busy.
042-700	Wait for a while until the printer cools down.
071-100	Remove the standard 250-sheet tray and jammed paper. Open and close the front cover.
071-920	Set side 2 of the sheet to the standard 250-sheet tray.
071-921	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
072-100	Remove the optional 250-sheet feeder and jammed paper. Open and close the front cover.
072-921	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
072-920	Set side 2 of the sheet to the optional 250-sheet feeder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

072-101	Remove the standard 250-sheet tray or the optional 250-sheet feeder, and remove the jammed paper. Open and close the front cover.
072-908	Remove the standard 250-sheet tray or the optional 250-sheet feeder, and remove the jammed paper. Open and close the front cover.
075-920	Set side 2 of the sheet to the SSF.
072-921	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
075-101	Open the front cover and remove the jammed paper, and then open and close the front cover.
075-102	Pull the jammed paper out of the SSF. Open and close the front cover.
075-922	Remove the paper from the SSF.
075-923	Pull the paper out of the SSF. Reload the paper in the SSF.
077-300	Close the front cover.
077-301	Close the toner access cover.
091-912	Remove the ribbon from the PHD unit. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
091-972	Open the front cover, and make sure that the PHD unit is fully installed.
092-310	Clean the CTD sensor.
092-910	
093-919	Remove and shake the yellow cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
093-920	Remove and shake the magenta cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
093-921	Remove and shake the cyan cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
093-922	Remove and shake the black cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
093-930	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used yellow cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-931	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used magenta cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-932	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used cyan cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-933	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used black cartridge, and install a new cartridge.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

093-934	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used yellow cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-935	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used magenta cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-936	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used cyan cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-937	Open the toner access cover. Remove the used black cartridge, and install a new cartridge.
093-960	Open the toner access cover. Remove the unsupported yellow cartridge, and install a supported cartridge.
093-961	Open the toner access cover. Remove the unsupported magenta cartridge, and install a supported cartridge.
093-962	Open the toner access cover. Remove the unsupported cyan cartridge, and install a supported cartridge.
093-963	Open the toner access cover. Remove the unsupported black cartridge, and install a supported cartridge.
093-965	Open the front cover. Remove the unsupported PHD unit, and install a supported unit.
093-970	Open the toner access cover, and make sure that the yellow cartridge is fully installed.
093-971	Open the toner access cover, and make sure that the magenta cartridge is fully installed.
093-972	Open the toner access cover, and make sure that the cyan cartridge is fully installed.
093-973	Open the toner access cover, and make sure that the black cartridge is fully installed.
116-752	Press the ✓ **(Set)** button, or wait for 30 seconds for the printer to recover.
117-361	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

26

Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the new Microsoft® protocol for Microsoft Windows® Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows 7.

Adding Roles of Printer Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

For Windows Server 2008:

1. Click **Start→ Administrative Tools→ Server Manager**.
2. Select **Add Roles** from the Action menu.
3. Check the Print Services check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
4. Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
5. Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1. Click **Start→ Administrative Tools→ Server Manager**.
2. Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.
3. Check the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
6. Click **Install**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft Windows' **Add Printer** wizard.

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers** (**Start→ Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).
2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
4. In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

   NOTE: In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws**/.

   NOTE: If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below.
   For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
   1. Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
   2. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
   3. Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
   4. Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.

   NOTE: Before installing the driver using the Add Printer wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the following:

   - Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
   - Add the printer driver to your computer.
5. If prompted, install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
6. Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click Finish.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Print a test page to verify print installation.

a Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers** (**Start→ Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Properties** (**Printer properties** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

For PCL driver:

On the **Options** tab, set each setting item, and then click **Apply**.

For PS driver:

On the **Device Settings** tab, set each setting item, and then click **Apply**.

c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

27

Specifications

Operating System Compatibility

Your Dell™ 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer is compatible with Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista®, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Mac OS X 10.3.9, 10.4.11, 10.5, 10.6, Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 4 WS/5 Client (x86), and SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86).

Power Supply

Rated Voltage	220 VAC - 240 VAC	110 VAC - 127 VAC
Frequency	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
Current	5 A or less	9 A or less

Dimensions

Height: 413 mm (16.26 inches) Width: 436 mm (17.16 inches) Depth: 451 mm (17.75 inches)

Weight (not including cartridge and PHD unit): 15.0 kg (32.47 lb)

Memory

Base memory	256 MB
Maximum memory	768 MB (256 MB + 512 MB)
Connector	144 pin EP2-2100 DDR2 SDRAM 32b-SO-DIMM
DIMM Size	512 MB
Speed	EP2-2100

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

PDL/Emulations	PCL 6, PCL5e, HBPL, XPS (Host Based)	
Operating Systems	Microsoft Windows XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64/Server 2008/Server 2008 x64/Server 2008 R2 x64/Vista/Vista x64/7/7 XPS, Mac OS X (10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6), Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 WS/5 Client (x86), and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)	
Interfaces	Standard local:	USB 2.0
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T Ethernet
	Optional network:	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n (Wireless)

MIB Compatibility

Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell 2155cn/2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems.

Environment

Operation

Temperature	10 °C - 32 °C
Relative humidity	10 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)

Print Quality Guarantee

Temperature	15 °C - 28 °C
Relative humidity	20 % - 70 % RH (no condensation)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage

Temperature range	-20 °C to 40 °C (0 °F to 104 °F)
Storage humidity range	5 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)

Altitude

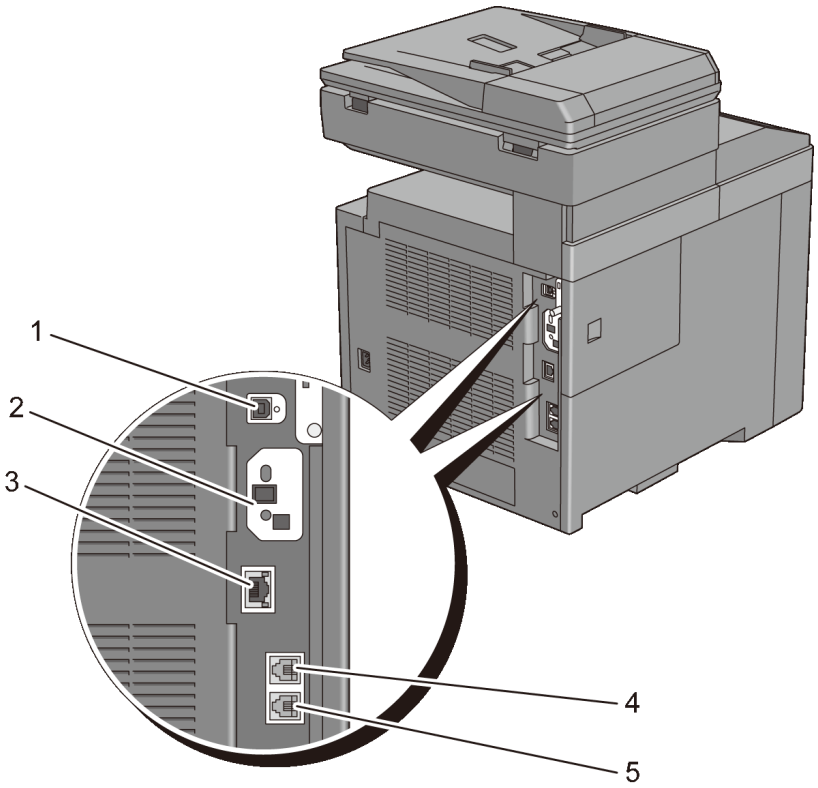
Operating	Up to 3,100 m (10,000 feet)
Storage	70.9275 Kpa

Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols
1	**USB**	**USB 2.0**
2	**Wireless adapter socket**	**IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n**
3	**Ethernet**	**10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T**
4	**Phone connector**	
5	**Wall jack connector**	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Copier Specifications

Item	Description
Copy Resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 600 dpi
Copy Speed	Color 23 cpm or more, Black & White 23 cpm or more (When using the document glass to make sequential copies of a document with pages scanned one by one.) Color 8 cpm or more, Black & White 16 cpm or more (When using the ADF to make sequential copies of multiple documents.)
Paper Size	A4, A5, B5, Executive, Letter, Folio, Legal, Monarch, DL, C5, Envelope #10
Zoom Rate	Document glass: 25 % - 400 %, ADF: 25 % - 400 %
Multiple copies	1 - 99 pages
Copy mode (=Original Type)	Text, Text & Photo, Photo

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Item	Description
Scanning method	Charge coupled device (CCD) module

Scanner Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	TWAIN, Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)
Scan Resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1,200 dpi x 1,200 dpi Enhanced: 9,600 dpi x 9,600 dpi (Gray and Color only in TWAIN)
Color bit depth	24 bit (WIA, TWAIN)
Mono bit depth	1 bit for Line art. 8 bit for Gray scale
Effective scanning length	Document glass: 297 mm. ADF: 355.6 mm
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm
Scan speed (Text mode)	Monochrome: 665 µs/line (600 dpi), 1330 µs/line (1200 dpi) Color: 1330 µs/line (600 dpi), 2660 µs/line (1200 dpi)

Facsimile Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	ITU-T Super G3, ITU-T G3 ECM, ITU-T G3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), behind Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PBX), or Leased line (3.4 KHz/2-wire)
Data coding	MH/MR/MMR/JBIG
Max modem speed	33.6 Kbps
Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data scanned in Standard resolution with ECM using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Item	Description
Scanning speed	Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) ADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Maximum document length	Document glass: 297 mm ADF: 355.6 mm
Paper size	Letter, A4 (depending on a country)
Resolution	Standard: R8 x 3.85 l/mm, Fine: R8 x 7.7l/mm, Super Fine: 400 dpi x 400 dpi, Photo: R8 x 7.71/mm
User Memory	4 MB (320 pages)
Halftone	256 levels

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintaining Your Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

28

Maintaining Your Printer

You need to complete certain tasks to maintain optimum print quality.

NOTE: The images used and procedures described in this manual are those of Dell™ 2155cdn Multifunction Color Printer.

Determining the Status of Supplies

If your printer is connected to the network, the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** can provide instant feedback on remaining toner levels. Type the printer's IP address in your web browser to view this information. To use the **E-Mail Alert Setup** feature that notifies you when the printer requires new supplies, type the desired e-mail address in the e-mail list box.

On the operator panel, you can also confirm the following:

- Any supply or maintenance items that require attention replacing (However, the printer can only display information about one item at a time).
- Amount of toner remaining in each toner cartridge.

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your printer driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	**Toner Saving Mode** in the **Advanced** tab	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. The image quality will be lower when this feature is used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supply	Setting	Function
Print media	**Multiple Up** in the **Layout** tab	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. Values for **Multiple Up** are 2 Up, 4 Up, 8 Up, 16 Up, or 32 Up. Combined with the duplex setting, **Multiple Up** allows you to print up to 64 pages on one sheet of paper. (32 images on the front and 32 on the back)

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell on the Internet when using a networked printer. Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the **Order Supplies at:** to order toner for your printer.

You can also order toner cartridges by the following method.

1. Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Additional Color Laser Software→ Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2. Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
3. If ordering from the web:
   a. When you cannot get information from the printer automatically by two-way communication, a window that prompts you to type the Service Tag appears. Type your Dell printer Service Tag in the field provided.

      Your Service Tag number is located inside the toner access cover of your printer.

   b. Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
   c. Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.
4. If ordering by phone, call the number that appears under the **Order by Phone** heading.

Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 °C (70 °F) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40 °C (104 °F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- A humid environment.

Replacing the Toner Cartridges

⚠ CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide*.

Dell toner cartridges are available only through Dell. You can order cartridges online at **http://www.dell.com/supplies** or by phone. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell."

It is recommended to use Dell toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

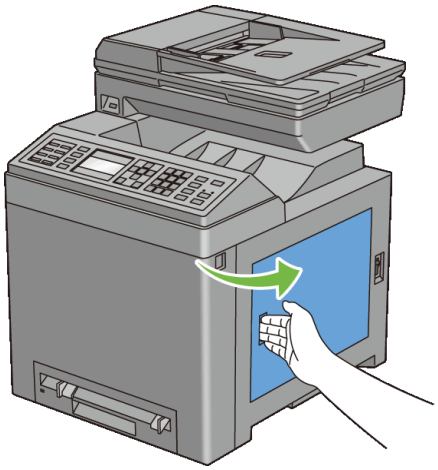
⚠ CAUTION: Never throw used toner cartridges into fire. The residual toner could explode resulting in burns and injuries.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not shake the used toner cartridge. This may cause toner spills.

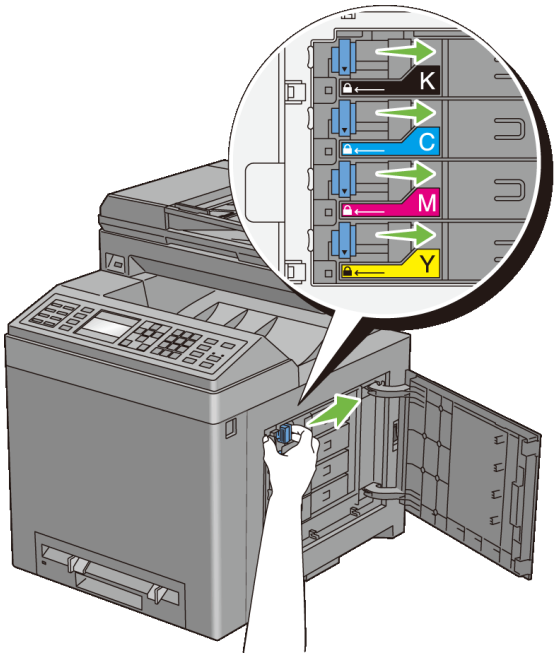
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Toner Cartridge

1 Open the toner access cover.

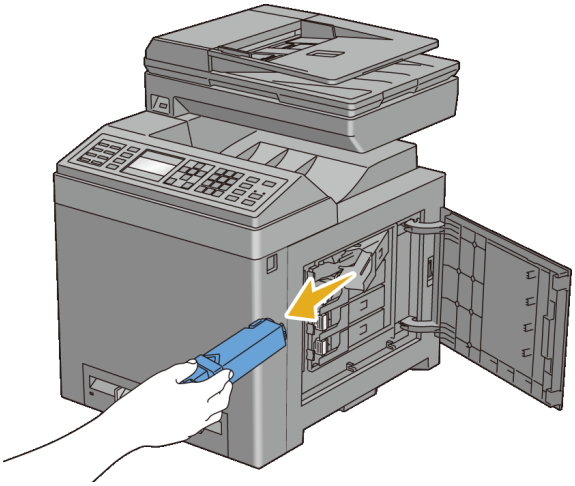


2 Push the latch(es) backwards to pop open the toner cartridge(s) that you want to replace.



3 Pull the cartridge holder until it clicks, and then pull out the toner cartridge.

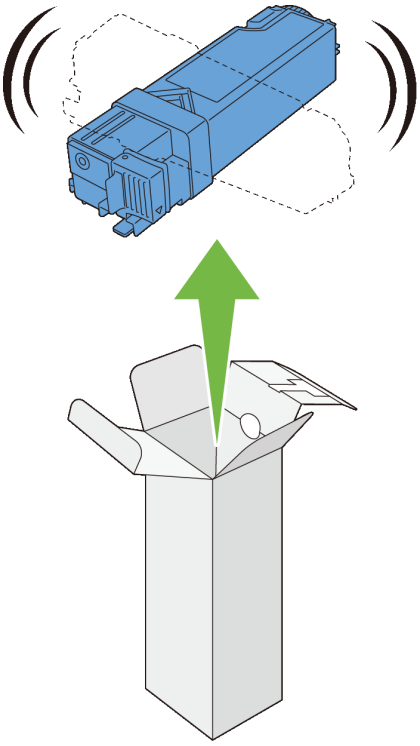
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



CAUTION: Do not shake the toner cartridge as it may cause toner spills.

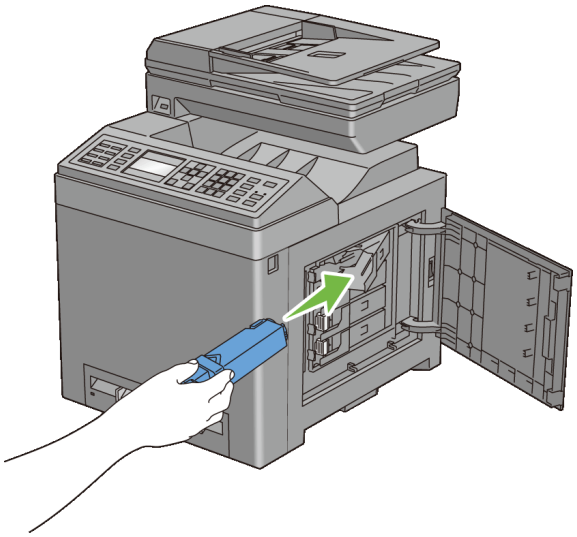
Installing a Toner Cartridge

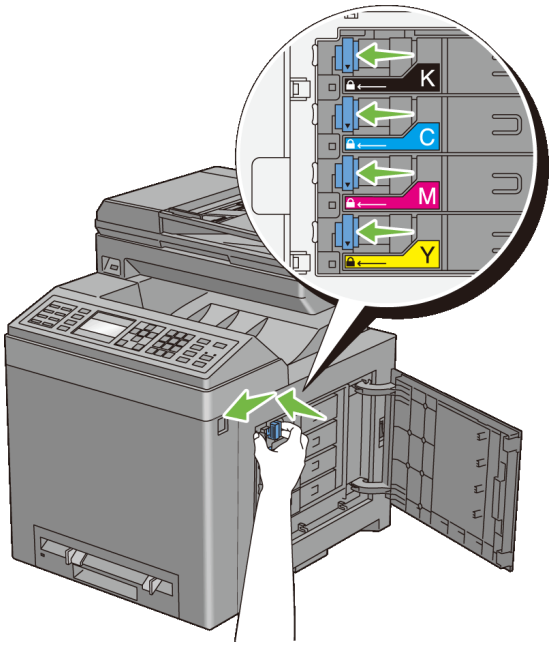
1 Ensure that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it. Shake the new toner cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

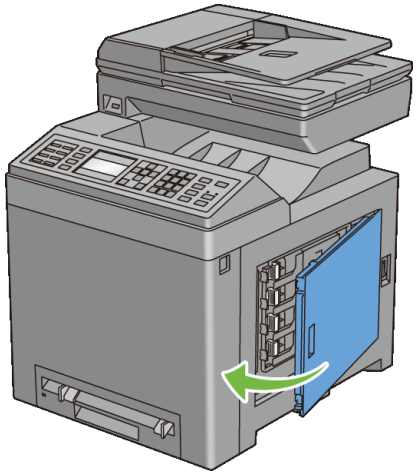
2 Insert the toner cartridge into the associated cartridge holder, and then slide the latch of the toner cartridge.





3 Close the toner access cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit

CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide*.

NOTICE: Protect the drums of the Print Head Device (PHD) against bright light. If the front cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

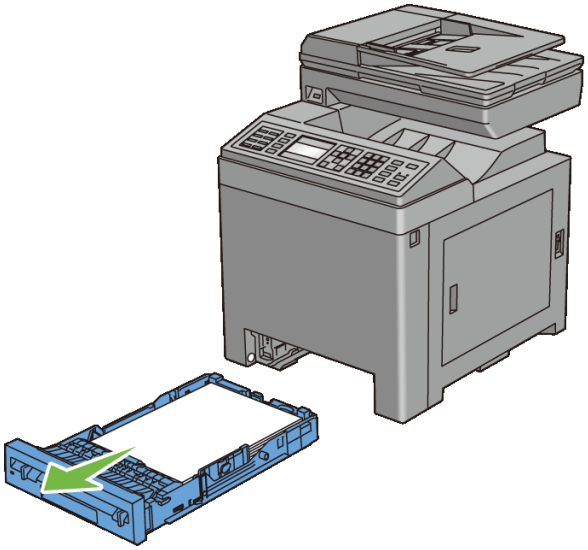
NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the belt unit may reduce print quality.

Removing the PHD Unit

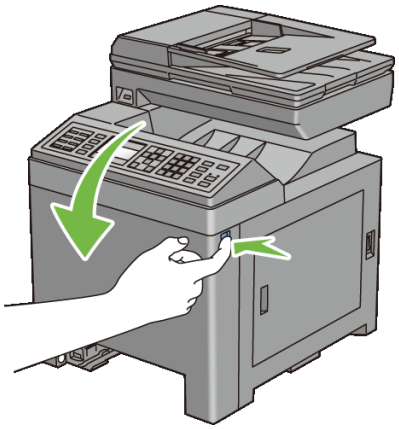
1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 250-sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

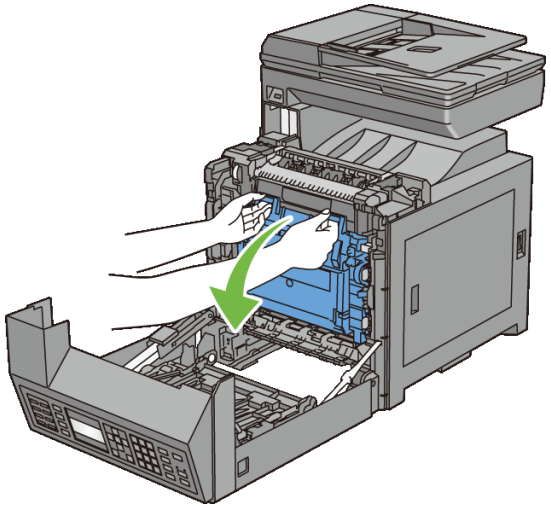


3 Push the side button to open the front cover.

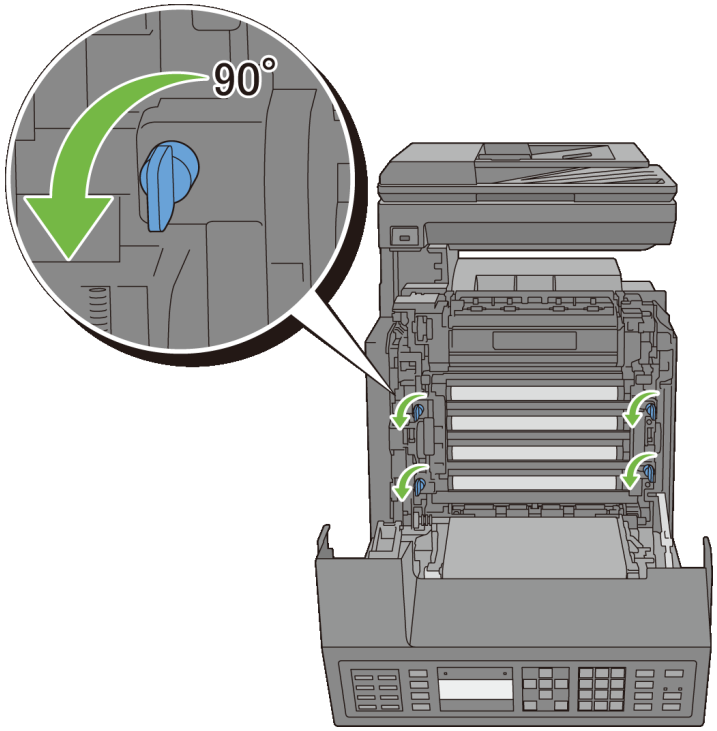


4 Open the belt unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

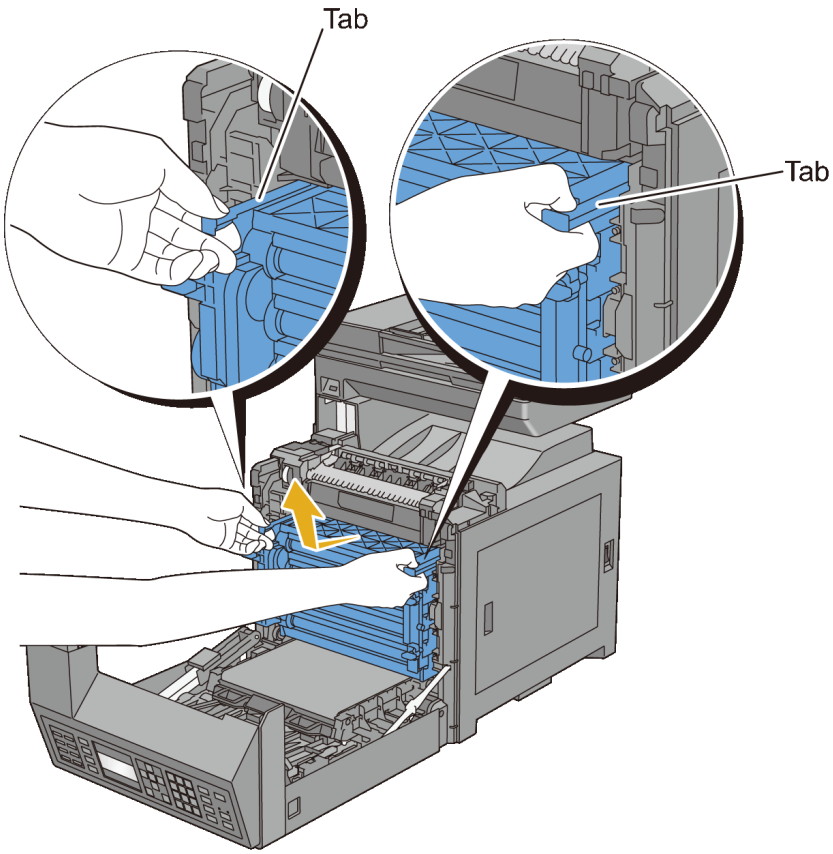


5 Turn the four PHD lock levers 90-degrees counterclockwise.



6 Hold the gray tabs, and then pull the PHD unit out of the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

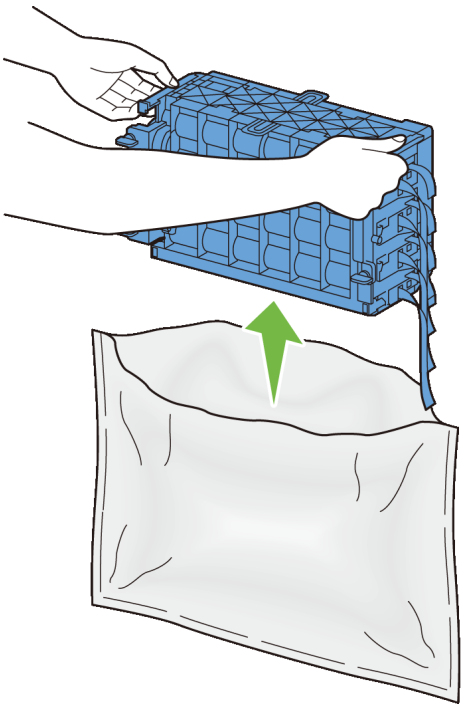


Installing a PHD Unit

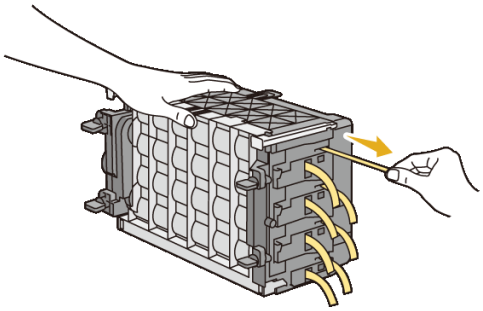
1 Open the PHD packaging.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 Take out the PHD unit from the packaging.



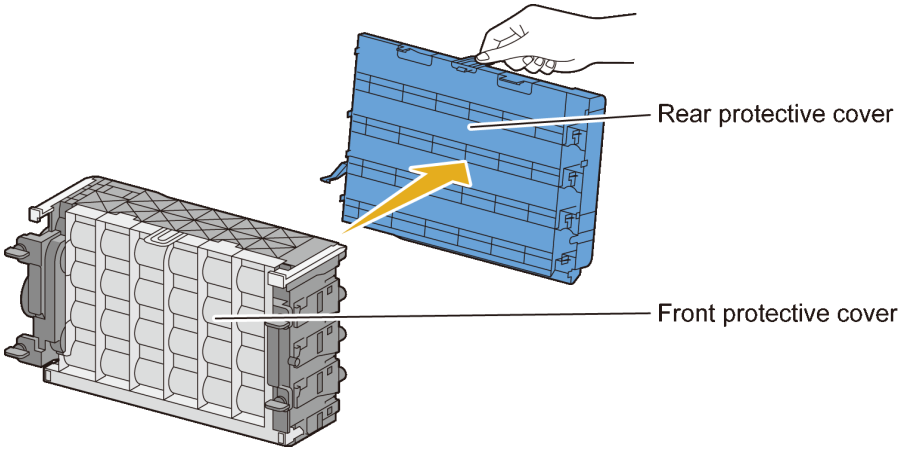
3 Completely pull out the eight yellow ribbons from the PHD unit.



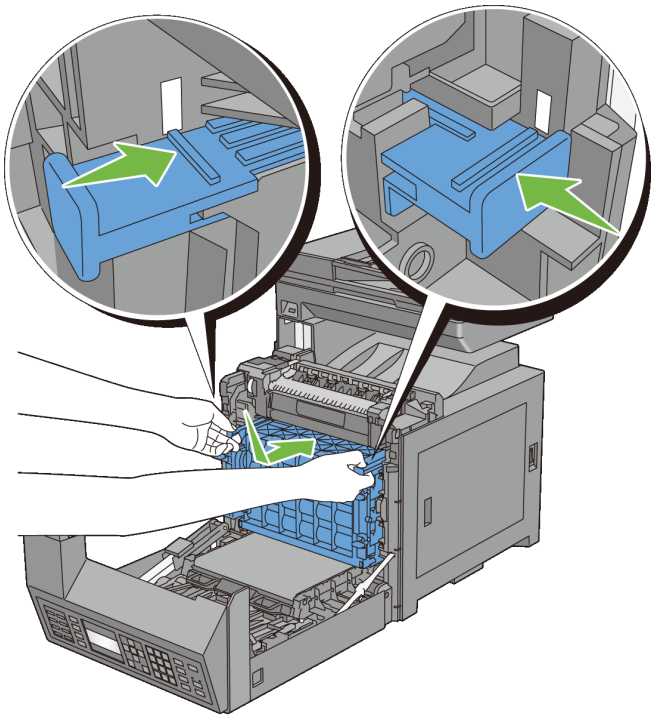
4 Remove the rear protective cover from the PHD unit.

NOTE: Do not remove the front protective cover at this moment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

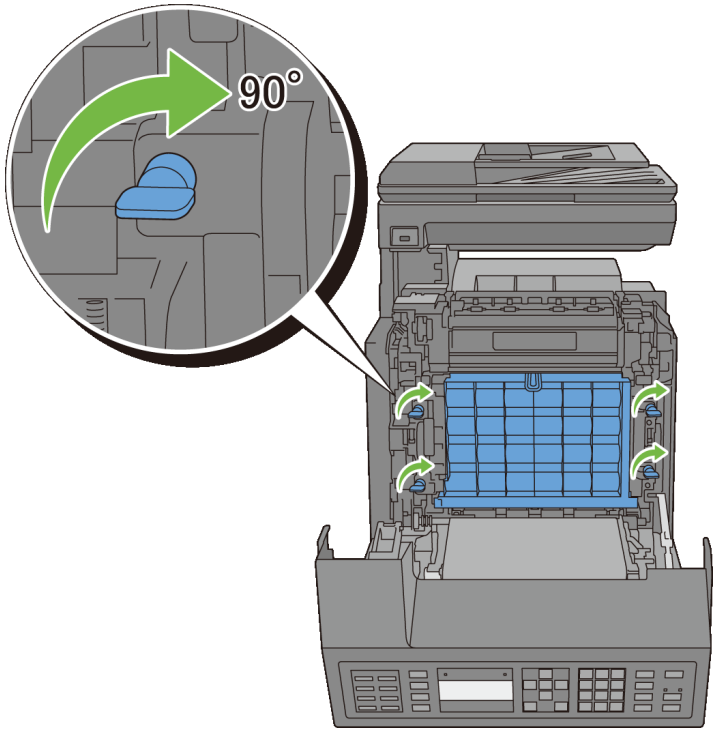


5 Insert the PHD unit until the line on the handle aligns with the white line on the printer.



6 Turn the four PHD lock levers 90-degrees clockwise to lock the PHD unit.

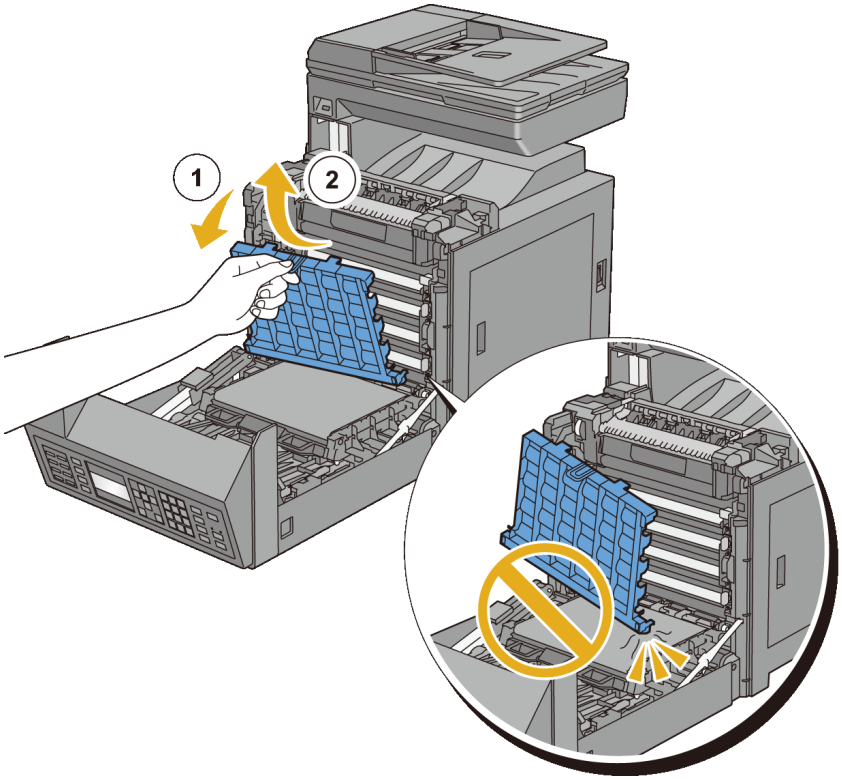
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



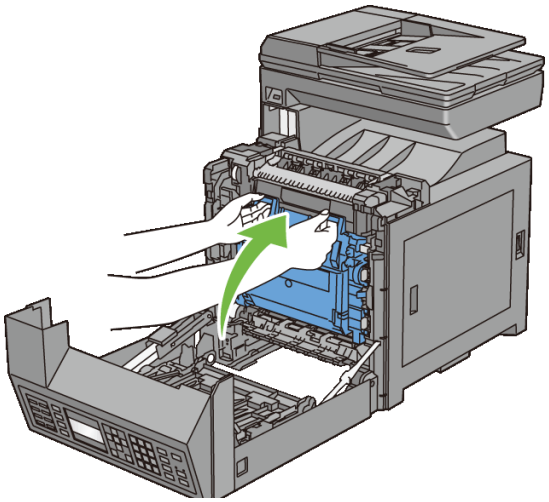
7 Remove the front protective cover from the PHD unit.

NOTICE: Ensure that you do not hit the belt unit when removing the front protective cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

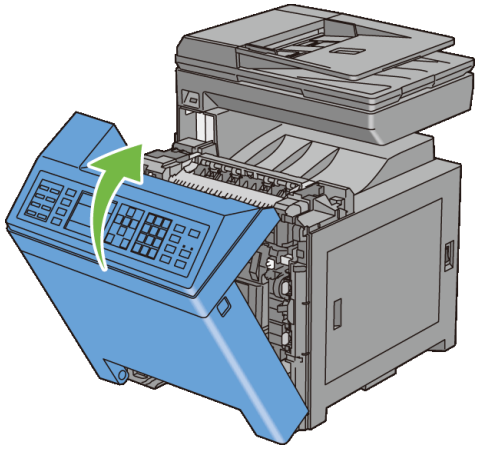


8 Close the belt unit, and push at the top of the unit until it clicks.

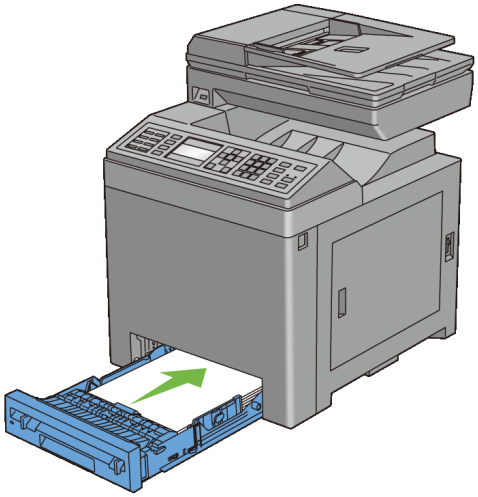


9 Close the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



10 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



Replacing the Retard Roller

Keeping the retard roller in the paper tray clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the retard roller at regular intervals.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.

⚠ CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide*.

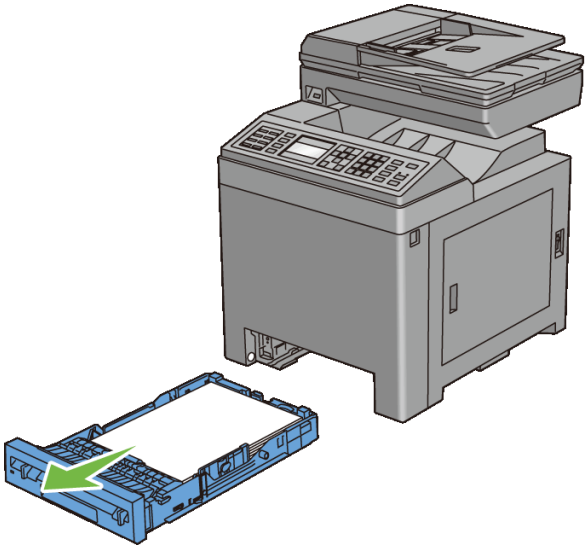
Dell retard rollers are available only through Dell. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It is recommended to use Dell retard rollers for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

Removing the Retard Roller in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray

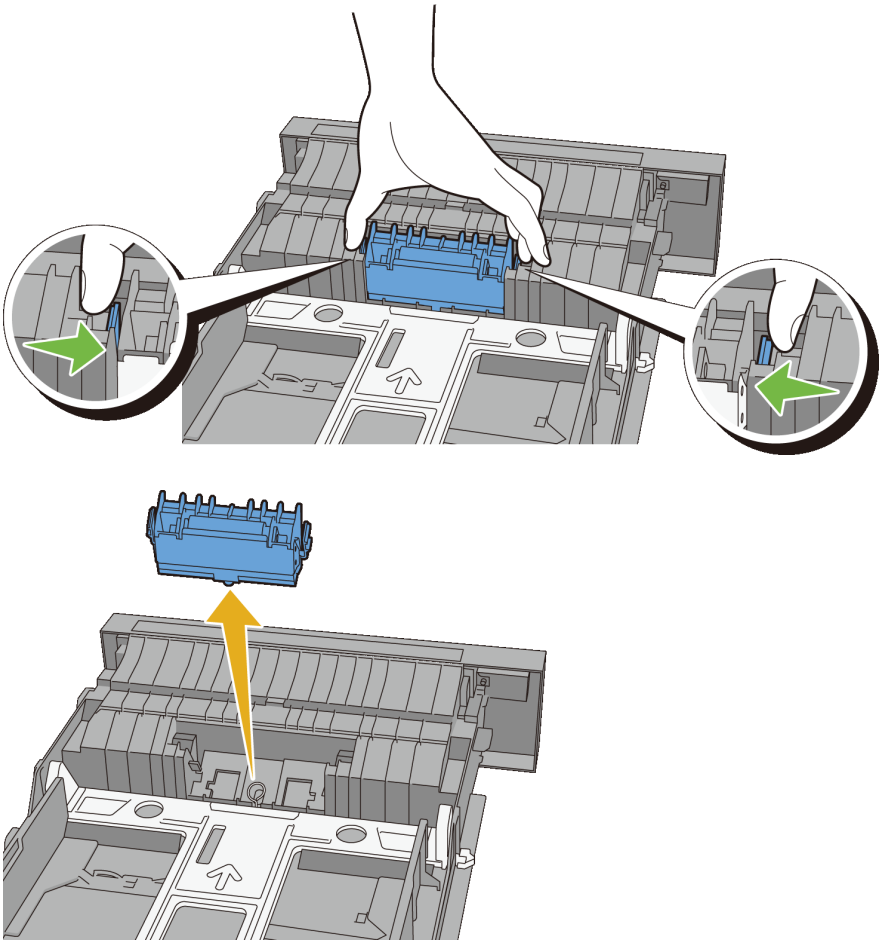
1 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 250-sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



NOTE: Ensure that you remove all the paper from the standard 250-sheet tray before removing the retard roller.

2 Holding the retard roller tabs with your fingers, pull the retard roller out of the groove in the axle.

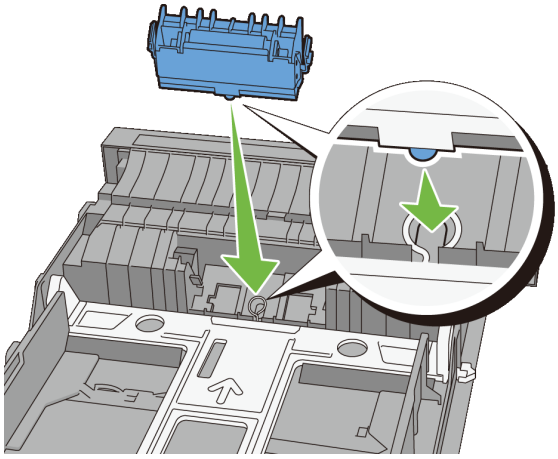
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



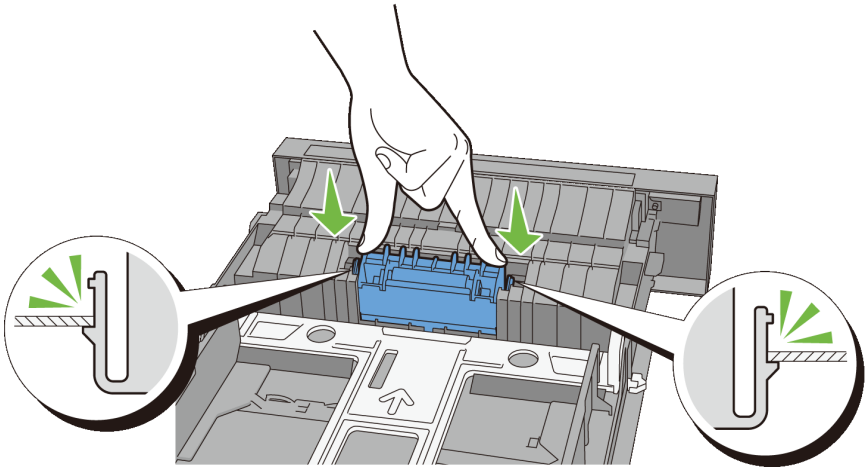
Installing a Retard Roller in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray

1 Align the new retard roller with the groove on the axle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

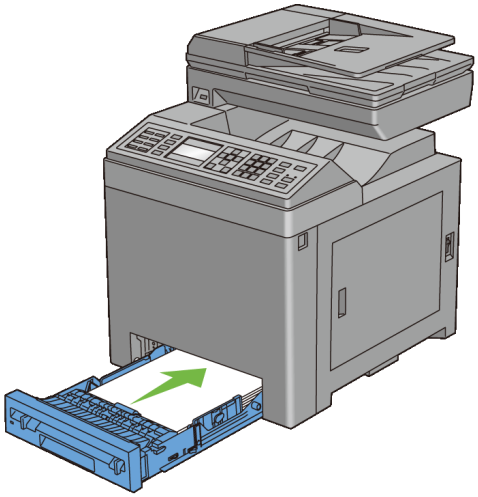


2 Insert the retard roller into the axle until it snaps. The protrusions fit completely into the slots and the roller hook reseats into the groove on the axle.



3 Load paper in the standard 250-sheet tray, and then insert the tray into the printer and push until it stops.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



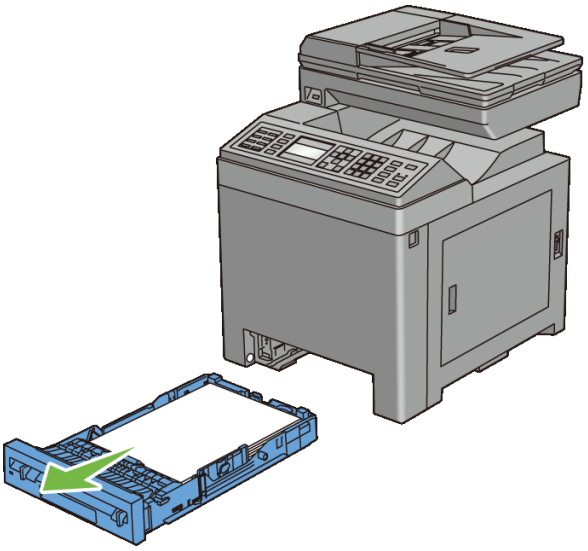
Cleaning Inside the Printer

Cleaning the Feed Roller

Clean the feed roller inside the printer if print media does not feed correctly.

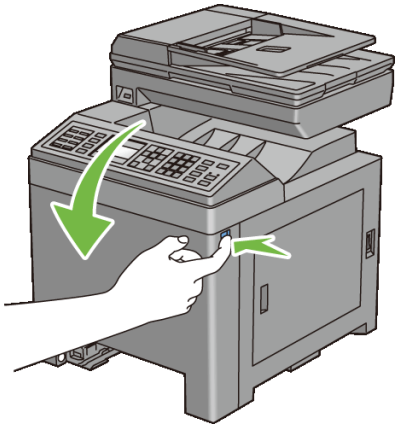
1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 250-sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

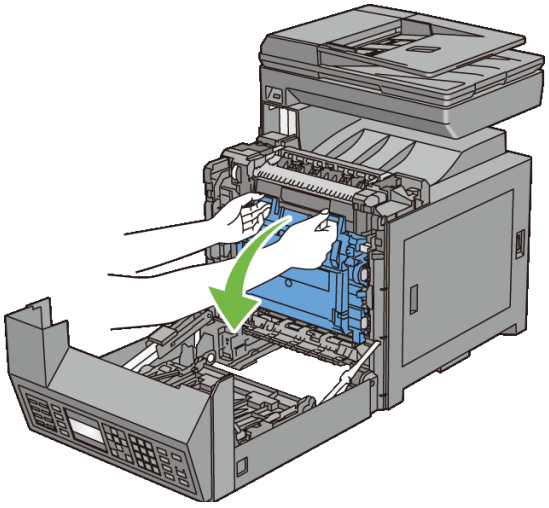


3 Push the side button to open the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

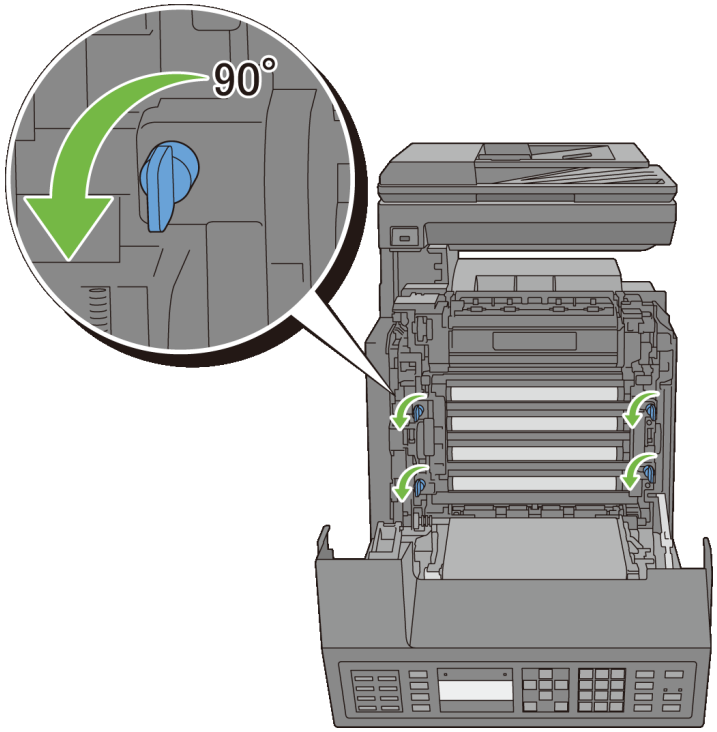


4 Open the belt unit.



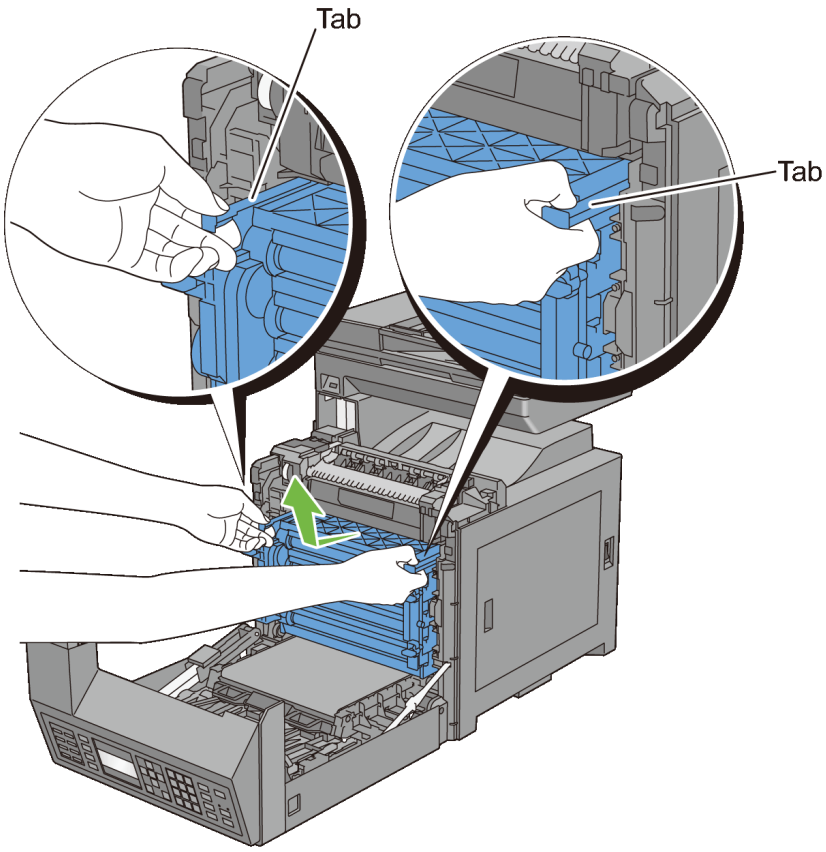
5 Turn the four PHD lock levers 90-degrees counterclockwise.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6 Hold the gray tabs, and then pull out the PHD unit.

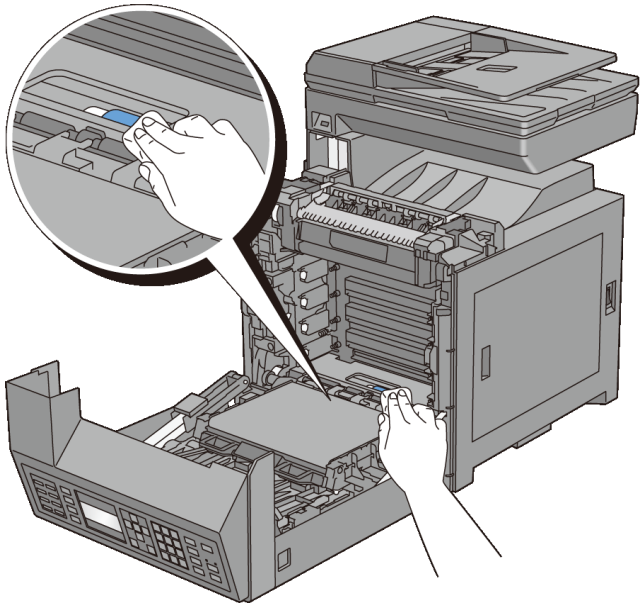
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



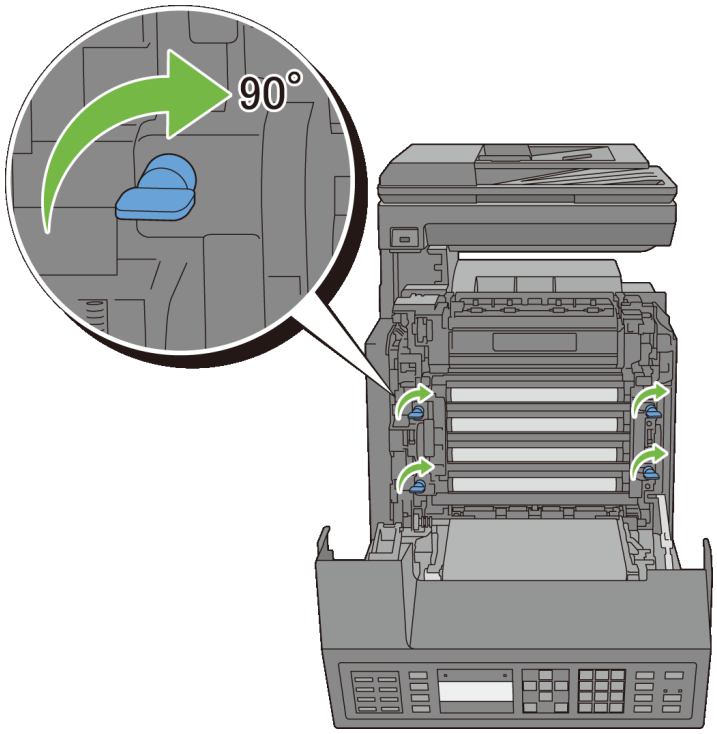
NOTE: Keep the PHD unit in a dark place. If the front cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

7 Clean the feed roller inside the printer with a dry cloth.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

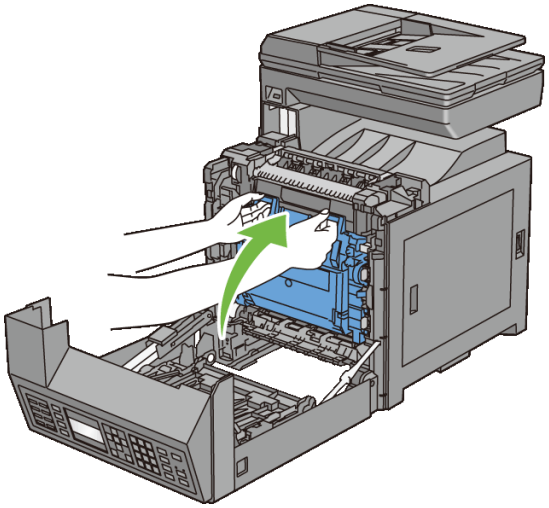


8 Insert the PHD unit until it stops, and then turn the four PHD lock levers 90-degrees clockwise to lock the PHD unit.

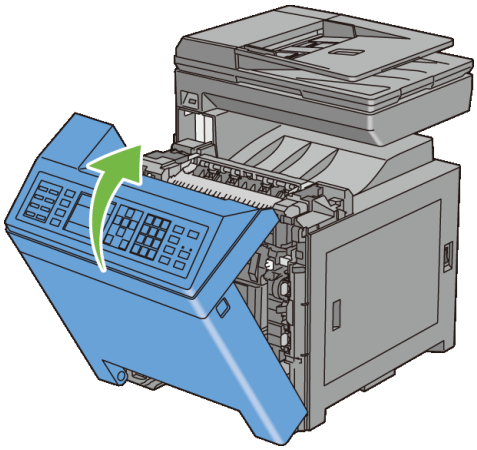


9 Close the belt unit, and push at the top of the unit until it clicks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

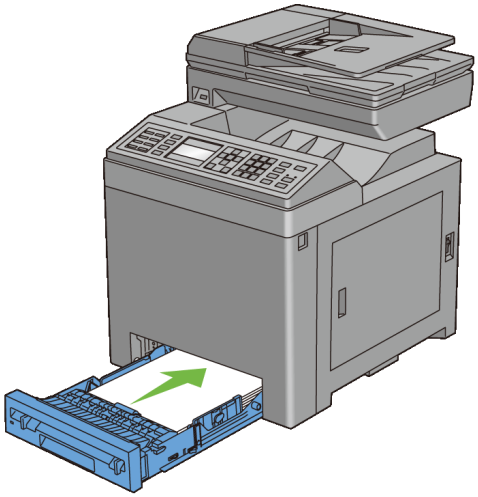


10 Close the front cover.



11 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

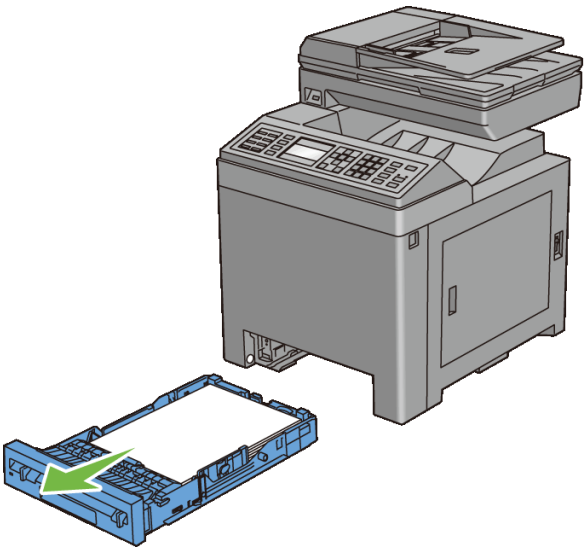


Cleaning the CTD Sensor

Clean the Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Status Monitor or operator panel.

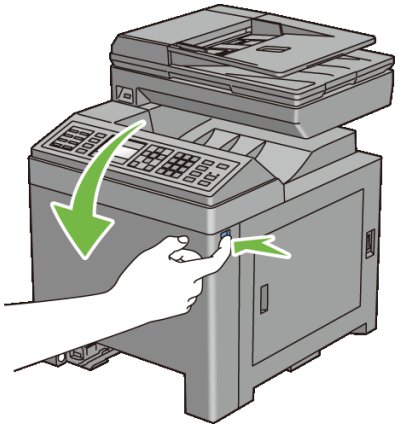
1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 250-sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

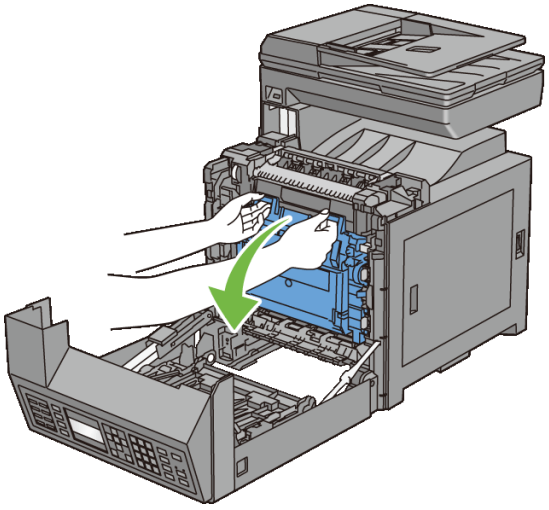


3 Push the side button to open the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

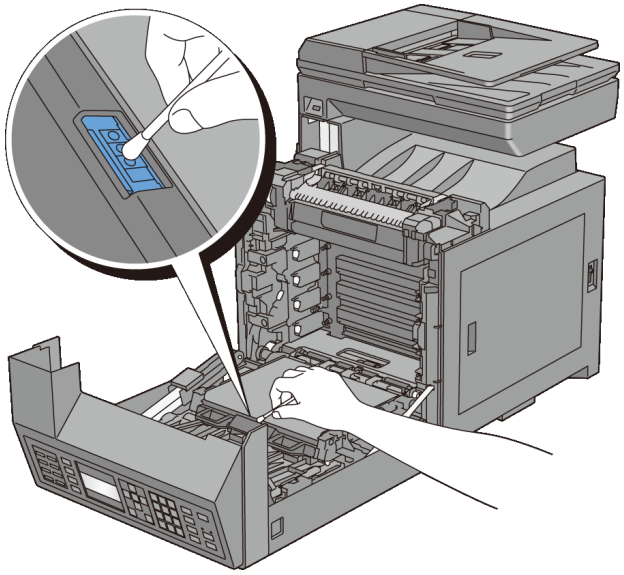


4 Open the belt unit.

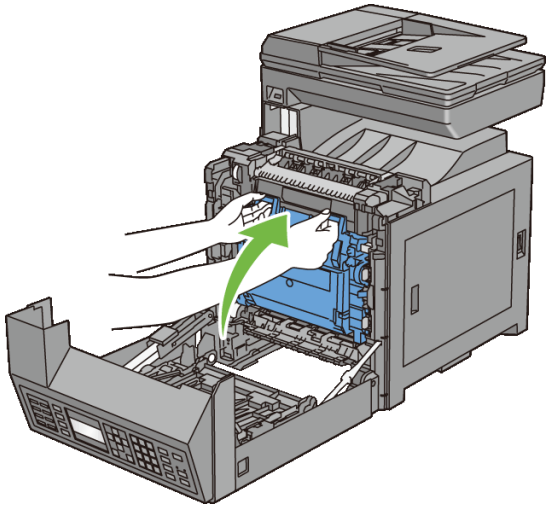


5 Clean the CTD sensor inside the printer with a clean dry cotton swab.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

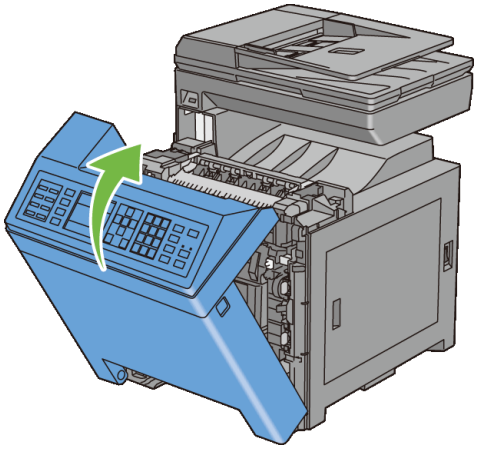


6 Close the belt unit, and push at the top of the unit until it clicks.

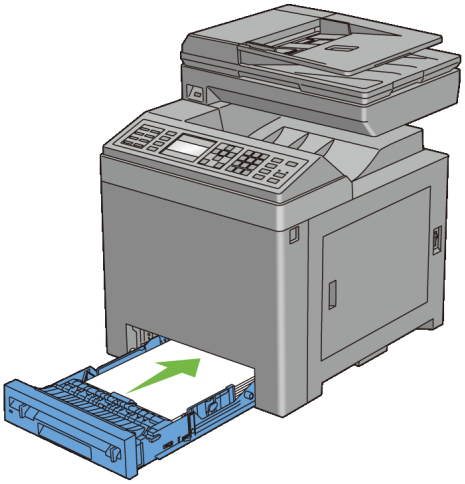


7 Close the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



8 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



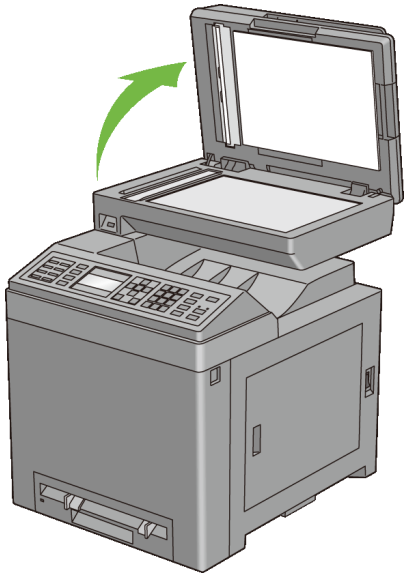
Cleaning the Scanner

Keeping the scanner clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

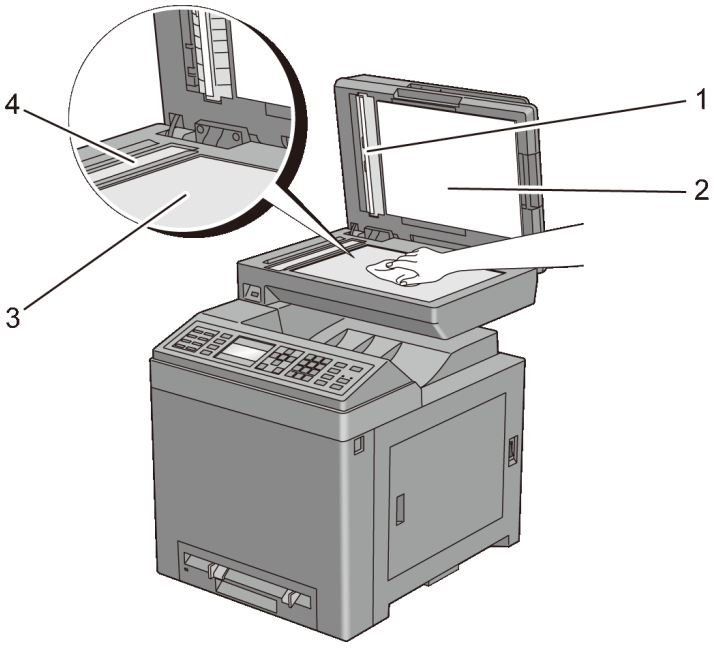
1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

2 Open the document cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3 Wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until it is clean and dry.



1	White Sheet NOTE: Handle with care.
2	Document Cover
3	Document Glass

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

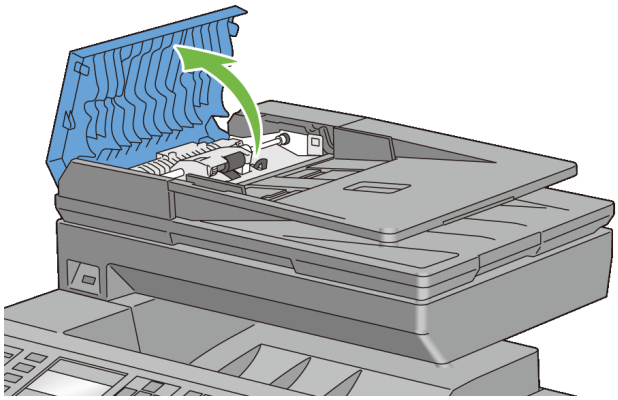
4 Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until it is clean and dry.

5 Close the document cover.

Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller

Keeping the ADF feed roller clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

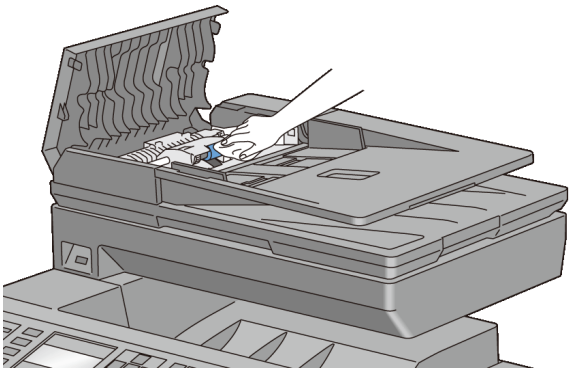
1 Open the ADF cover.



2 Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Adjusting Color Registration

To adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location, follow the procedure below.

- Printing the Color Registration Chart
- Determining Values
- Entering Values

Printing the Color Registration Chart

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the **(Menu)** button.

2 Press button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

3 Press button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

4 Press button until `Maintenance` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

5 Press button until `Color Reg Adjust` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

6 Press button until `Color Reg Chart` is highlighted, and then press the **(Set)** button.

7 Press button to highlight `Yes`, and then press the **(Set)** button.

The color registration chart is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Color Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Color Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.

4 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed.

Determining Values

On the color registration chart, there are two types of charts: Chart 1 (fast scan) and Chart 2 (slow scan).

The Chart 1 is used to adjust the color registration for the fast scan direction, which is vertical to paper feed direction. The Chart 2 is used to adjust the color registration for the slow scan direction, which is horizontal to paper feed direction.

The following sections explain how to determine the adjustment values for the fast scan and the slow scan using Chart 1 and Chart 2.

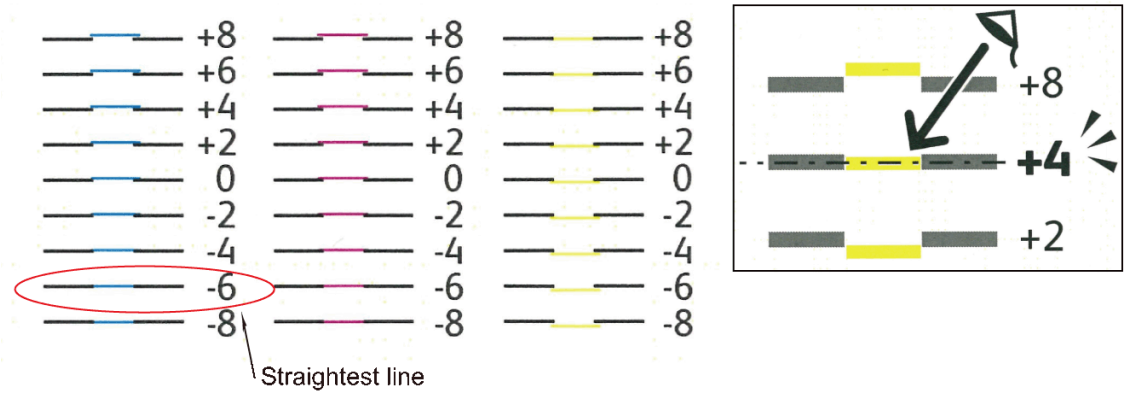
Fast Scan

On the Chart 1 of the color registration chart, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (**Y**, **M**, and **C**). If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (**-9** to **+9**) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is **0** for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the fast scan.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the value is not **0**, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values."



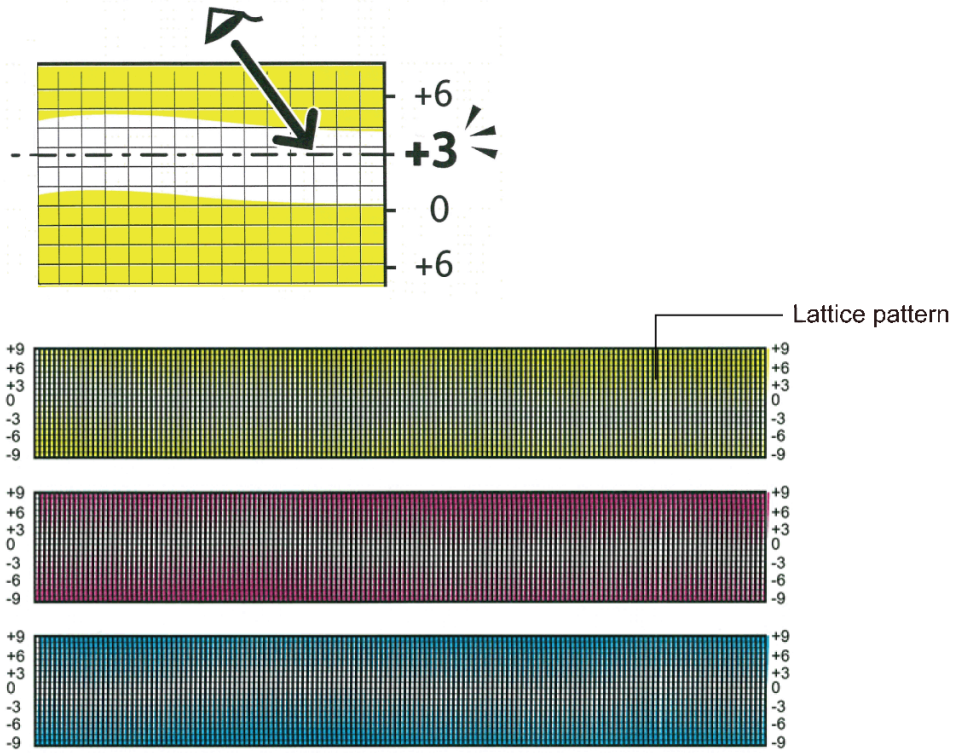
Slow Scan

On the Chart 2 of the color registration chart, find the medium line within the range of white area for each color pattern (**Y**, **M**, and **C**). If you find the medium line, make a note of the value (**-9** – **+9**) indicated by the medium line for each color.

When the value is **0** for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the slow scan.

When the value is not **0**, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Entering Values

When Using the Operator Panel

Using the operator panel, enter the values found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1. Press the **(Menu)** button.
2. Press the down arrow button until `System Setup` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
3. Press the down arrow button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
4. Press the down arrow button until `Maintenance` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
5. Press the down arrow button until `Color Reg Adjust` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
6. Press the down arrow button until `Enter Number` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Ensure that `LY` is highlighted and press ^ or v button to specify the values.

8 Press > button to move the highlight to the next value.

9 Press the ✓ **(Set)** button.
`RY` is highlighted.

10 Repeat steps 7 to 9 to enter the desired values, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

NOTE: You can specify each value for process, left, and right colors (LY, LM, LC, RY, RM, RC, PY, PM, and PC) by repeating the steps 7 to 9.

11 Press ^ to highlight `Color Reg Chart`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

12 Press ^ button to highlight `Yes`, and then press the ✓ **(Set)** button.

The color registration chart with the new values is printed.

If the straightest line is not at the value of 0, adjust the values again. Checking the charts before and after the adjustments will help you to determine the values to enter.

When Using the Tool Box

NOTE:

Using the Tool Box, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 2155 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Names**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Color Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Color Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.

4 Select the value with the straight line, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

6 Adjust till all straight lines are at the value of 0. Show image of before and after adjustment will help.

After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

NOTE: If 0 is not next to the straightest lines, determine the values and adjust the printer again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

29

Removing Options

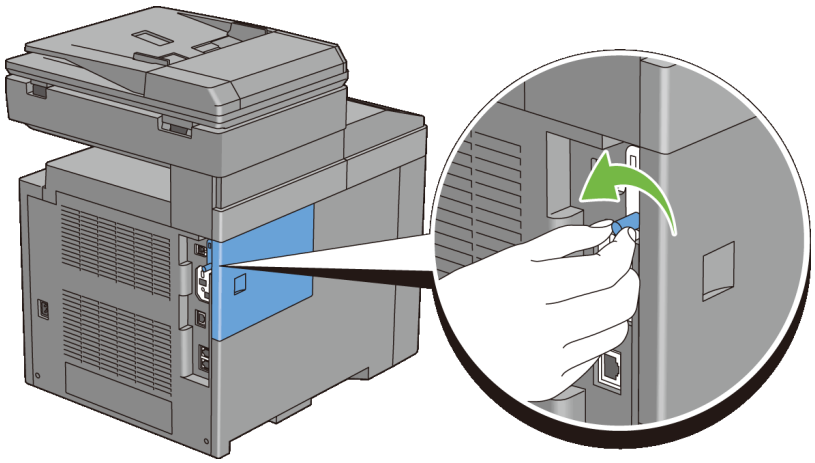
If the printer location needs to change or the printer and print media handling options need to be shipped to a new location, all print media handling options must be removed from the printer. For shipping, pack the printer and print media handling options securely to avoid damage.

Removing the Optional Memory Module

⚠ CAUTION: When you remove the optional memory module, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

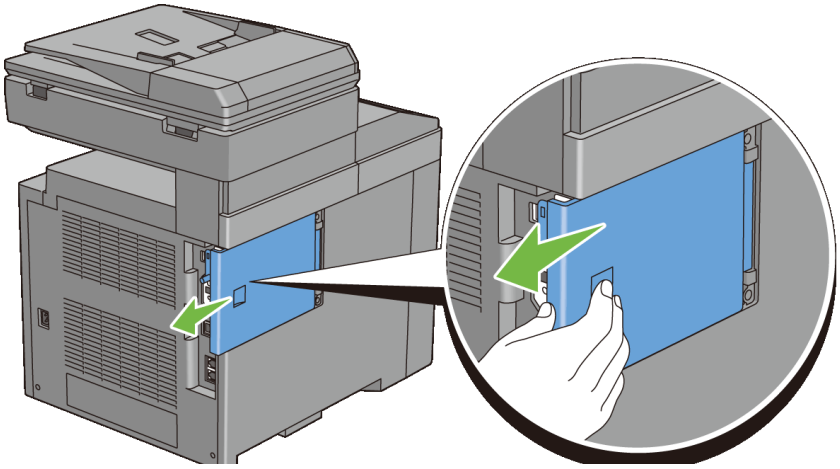
1 Ensure that the printer is turned off and unplug all the cables including the power cable from the back of the printer.

2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

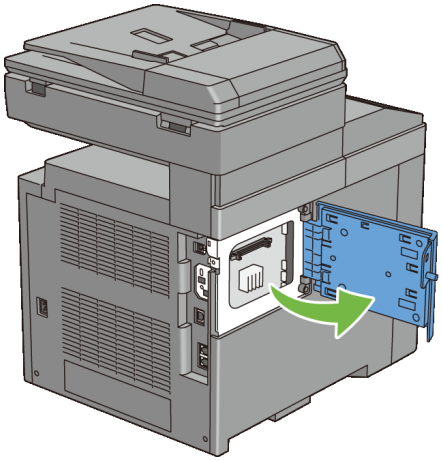


3 Slide the control board cover towards the back of the printer.

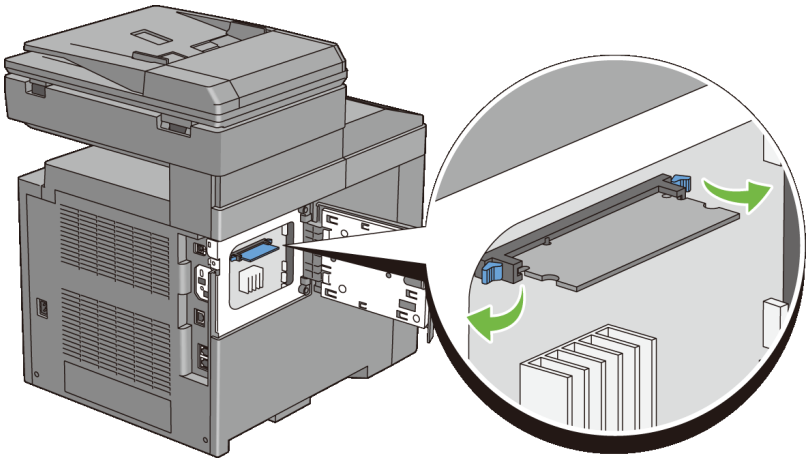
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4 Open the control board cover completely.

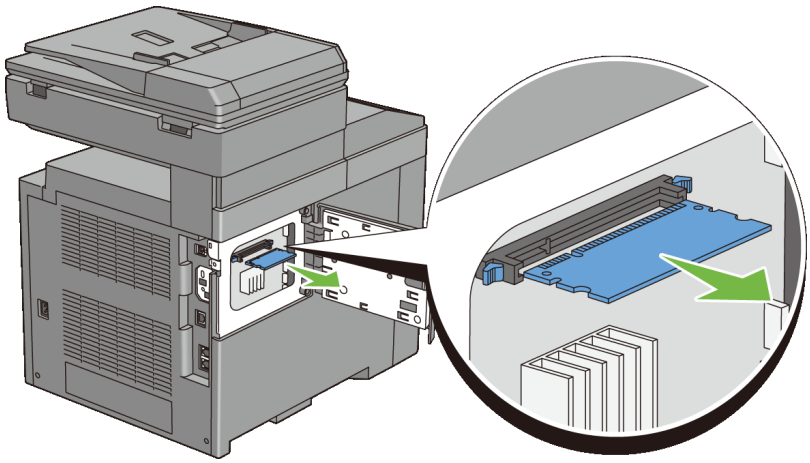


5 Push the clips on both sides of the slot outward to raise the memory module up.

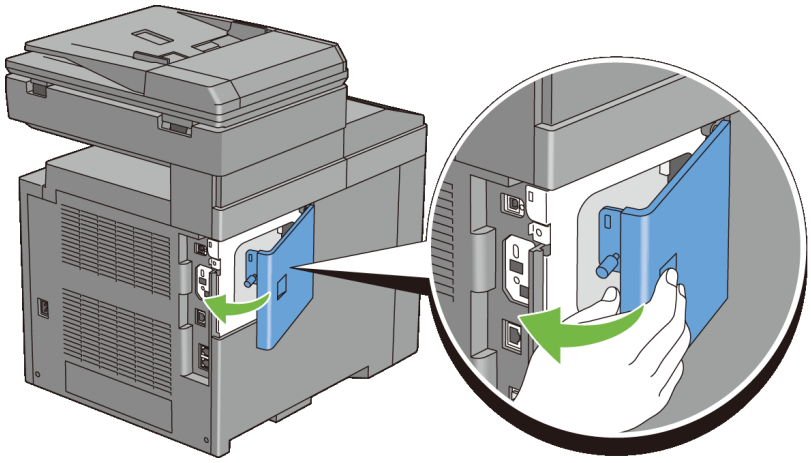


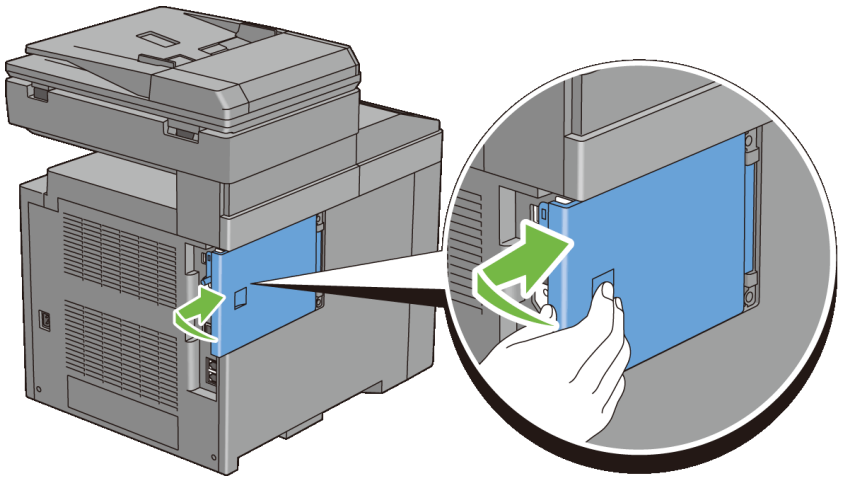
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6 Hold the memory module and pull it straight out.



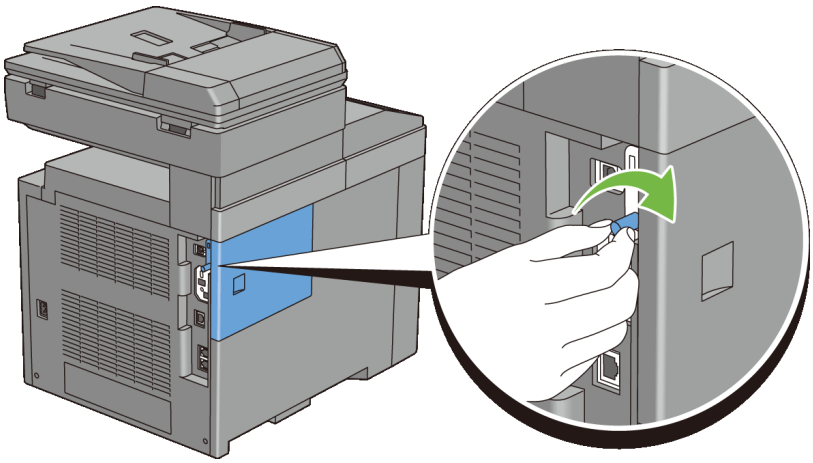
7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8 Turn the screw clockwise.



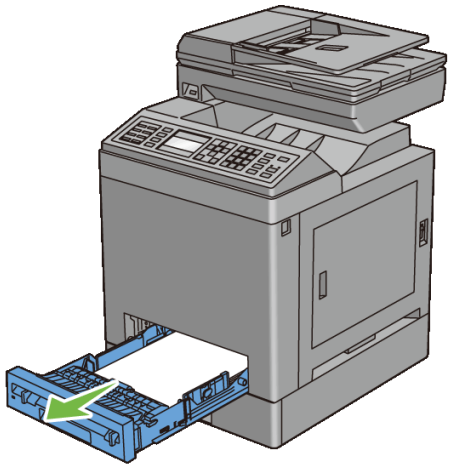
9 Turn on the printer.

Removing the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder

CAUTION: When you remove the optional 250-sheet feeder, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

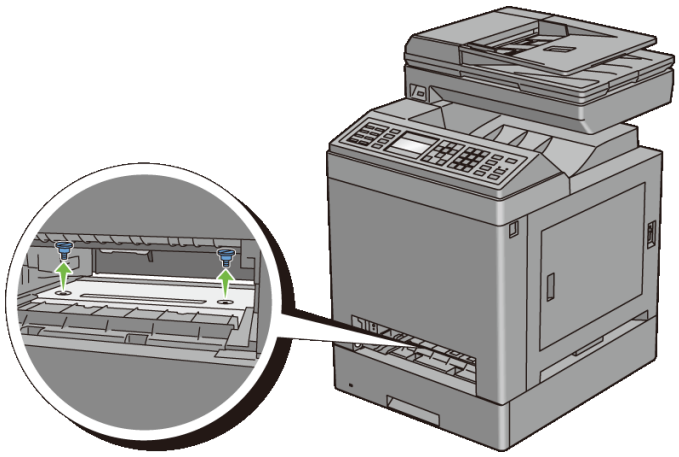
1 Turn off the printer and unplug the power cable. Then, disconnect all cables from the back of the printer.

2 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



3 Remove the two screws joining the printer and the optional 250-sheet feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.

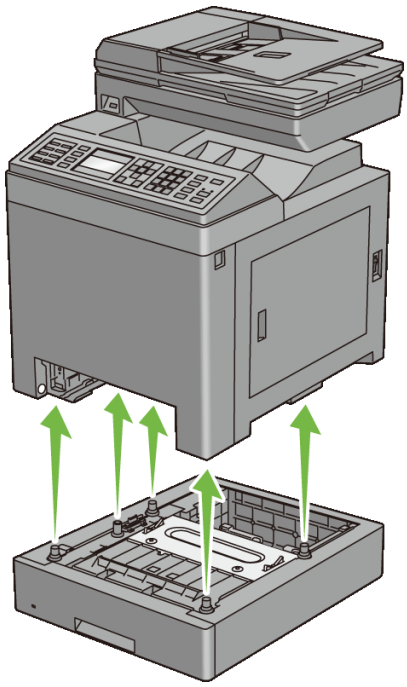
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTE: The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

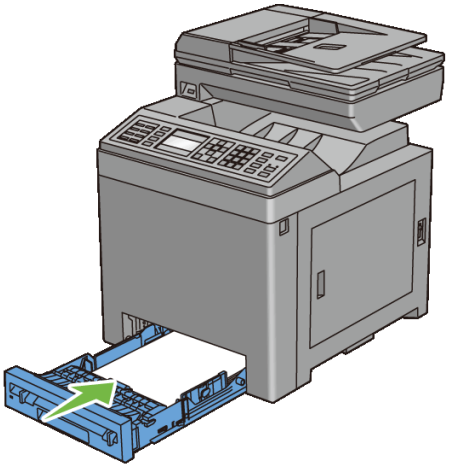
4 Gently lift the printer off the tray module, and place it on a level surface.

CAUTION: Two people are required to lift the printer. The printer should be lifted holding the front and back. Never lift the printer from its sides.



5 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTICE: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

6 Reconnect all cables including the power cable into the back of the printer and turn on the printer.

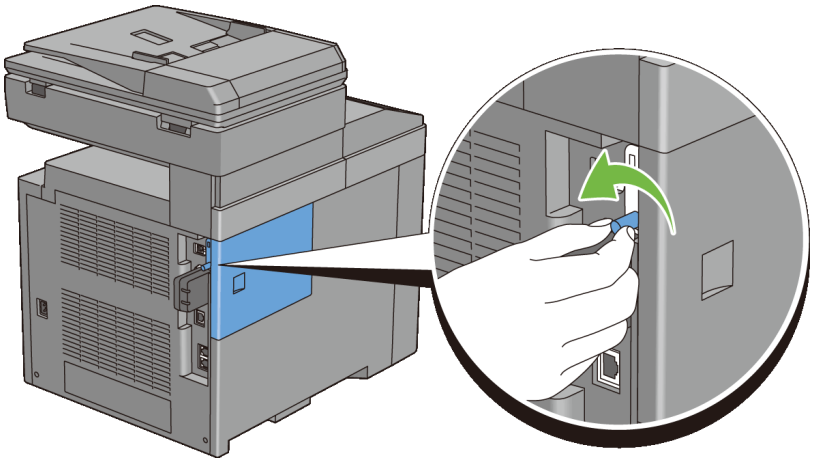
Removing the Optional Wireless Adapter

CAUTION: When you remove the optional wireless adapter, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

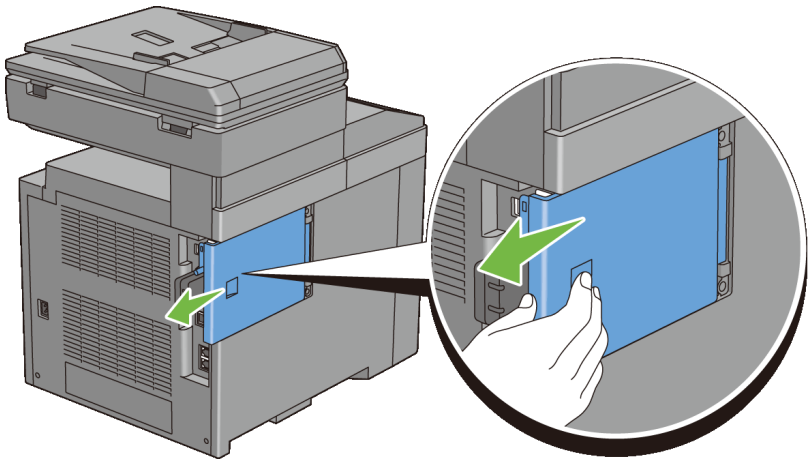
2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

NOTE: Loosen the screw. You do not need to remove the screw.

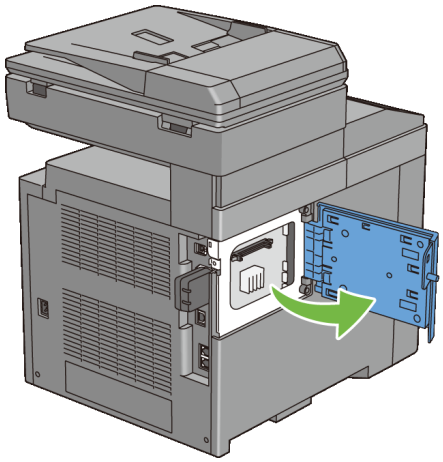


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 Slide the control board cover towards the back of the printer.

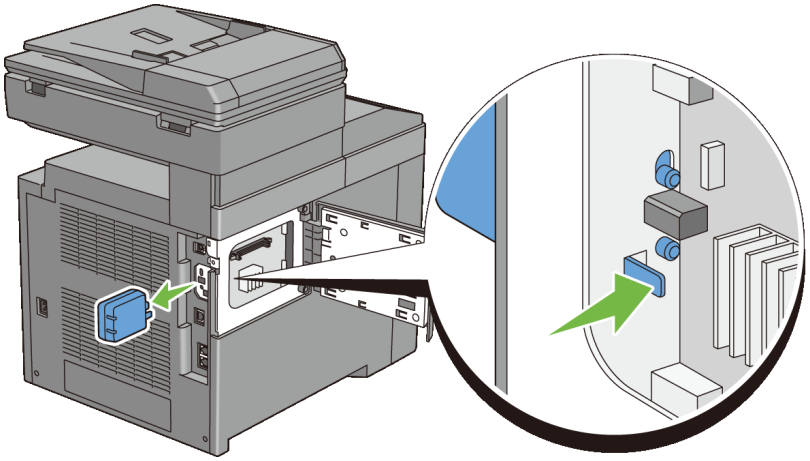


4 Open the control board cover completely.

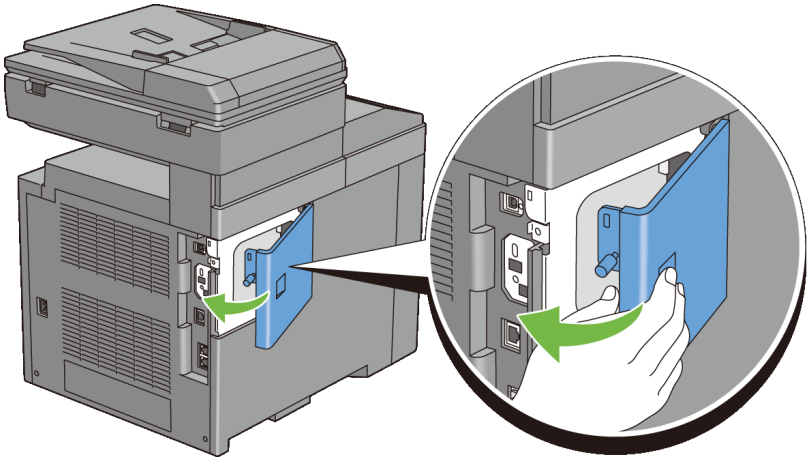


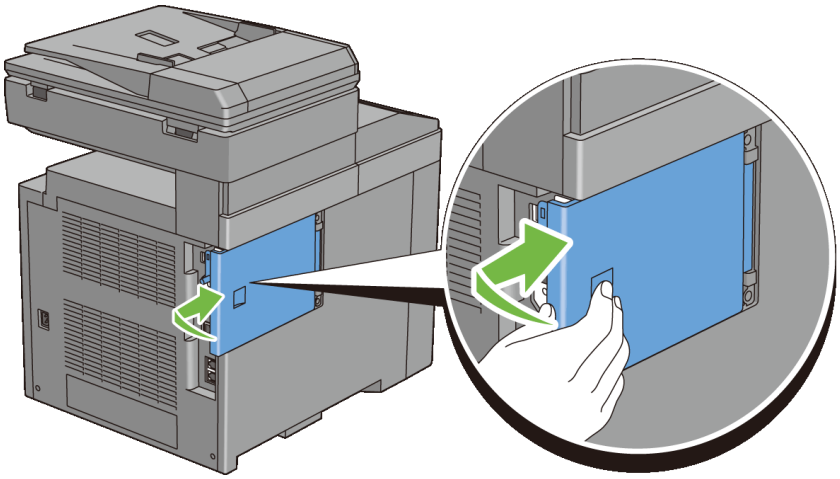
5 Remove the wireless adapter from the printer by releasing the adapter's hook while pushing the wireless adapter towards the front of the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



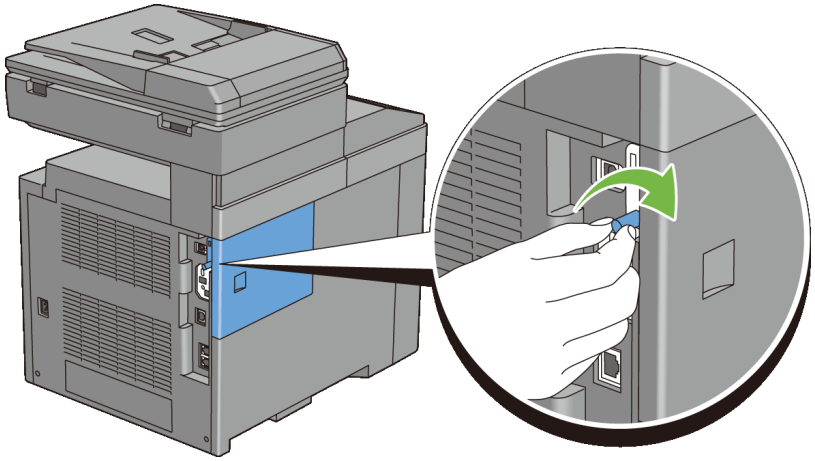
6 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.





7 Turn the screw clockwise.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



8 Turn on the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

30

Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid paper jams. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.

NOTE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended to try a sample first.

Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.
- See "Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the SSF" to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the print media stack height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load-line labels in the tray.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the single sheet feeder.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media when using the standard 250-sheet tray and the optional 250-sheet feeder. Also, the recommended print side should be face down when using the single sheet feeder.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."
- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.

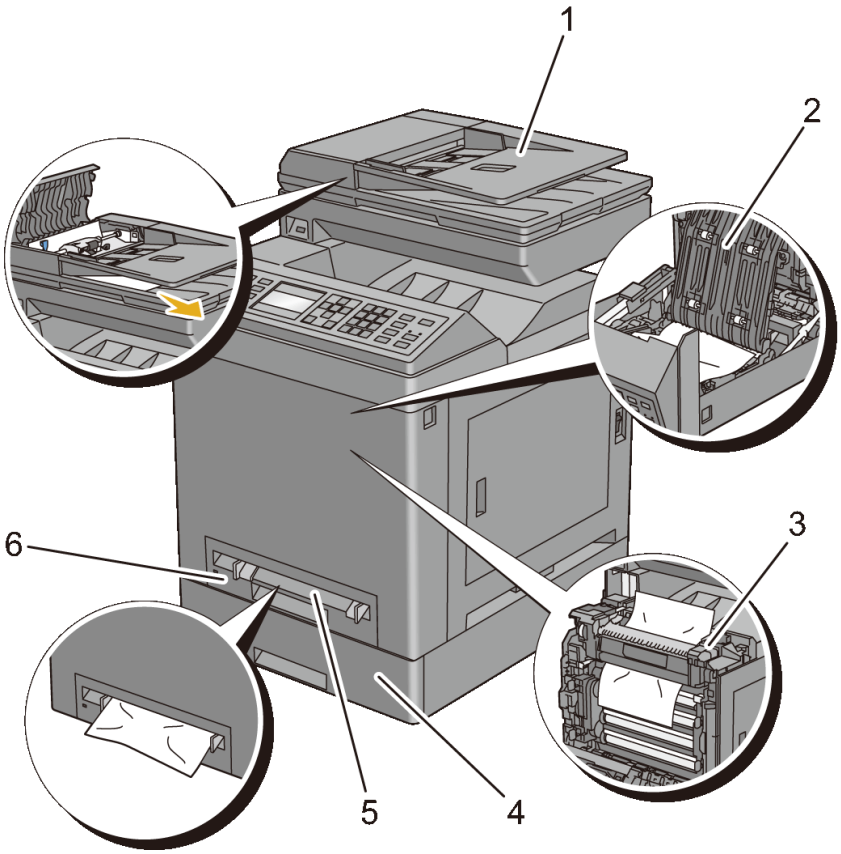
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.
- Wipe the retard rollers in the tray or single sheet feeder with a cloth that is slightly dampened with water if jams caused by misfeeding paper occur frequently.

Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
2	Duplexer (2155cdn only)
3	Fuser
4	Optional 250-Sheet Feeder

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5	Single Sheet Feeder (SSF)
6	Standard 250-Sheet Tray

Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF

When a document jams while it passes through the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), remove the jam according to the following procedure.

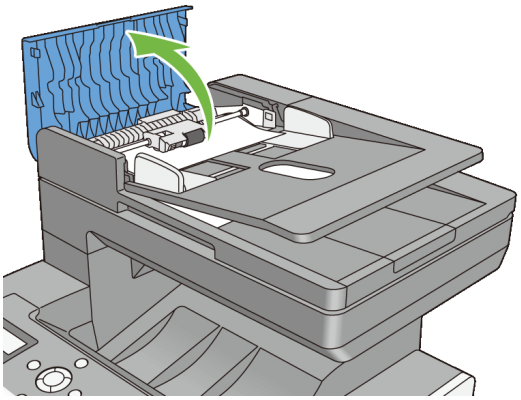
NOTE: To prevent document jams, use the document glass for thick, thin, or mixed documents.

NOTICE: Protect the drums of the Print Head Device (PHD) against bright light. If the front cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

1 Remove the remaining documents from the ADF.

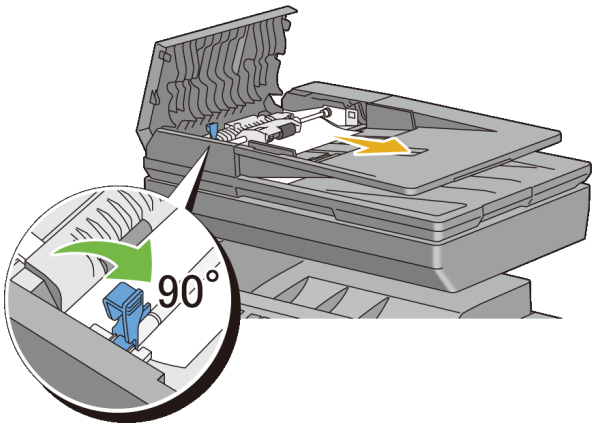
If the document is jammed in the paper feed area:

a Open the ADF cover.



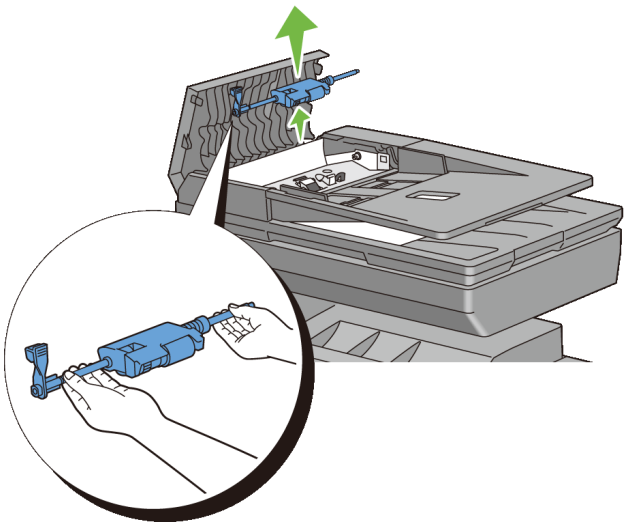
b Lift the release lever 90 degrees and remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it to the right.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



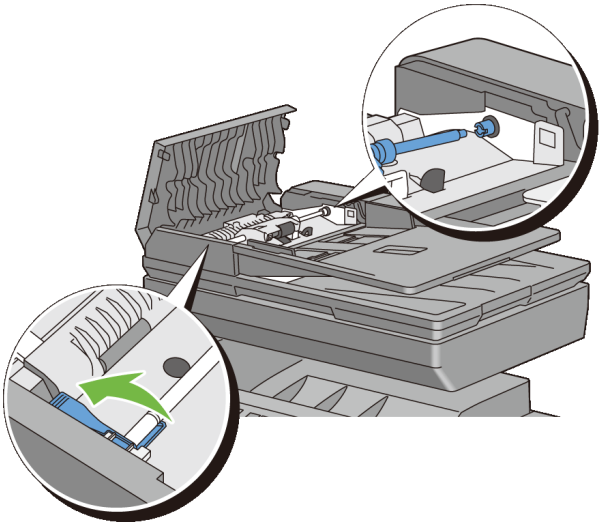
If you find it difficult to pull the document:

c Remove the release roller assembly and remove the document by gently pulling it straight up.



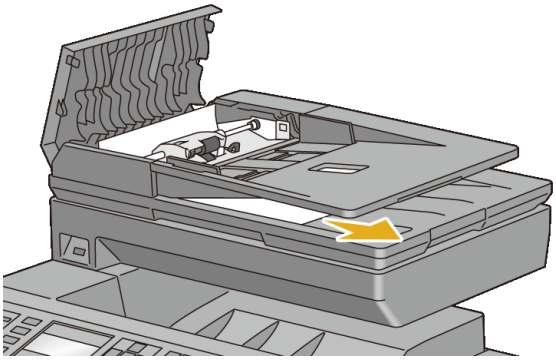
d Insert the release roller assembly and press down the release lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If the document is jammed in the paper exit area:

e Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.



f Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

2 If you cannot see the jammed document or the jammed document do not move when you pulled, open the document cover.

3 Remove the document from the ADF feeder roller or the feed area by carefully pulling it to the right.

4 Close the document cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.

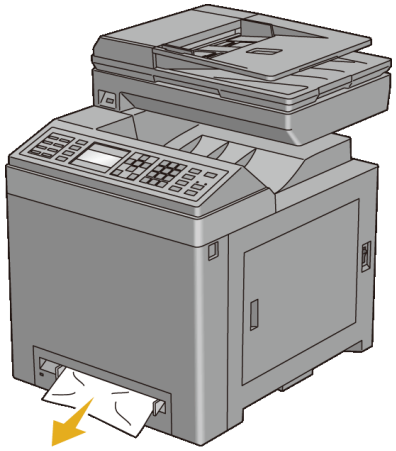
Clearing Paper Jams From the SSF

NOTICE: Protect the drums of the Print Head Device (PHD) against bright light. If the front cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

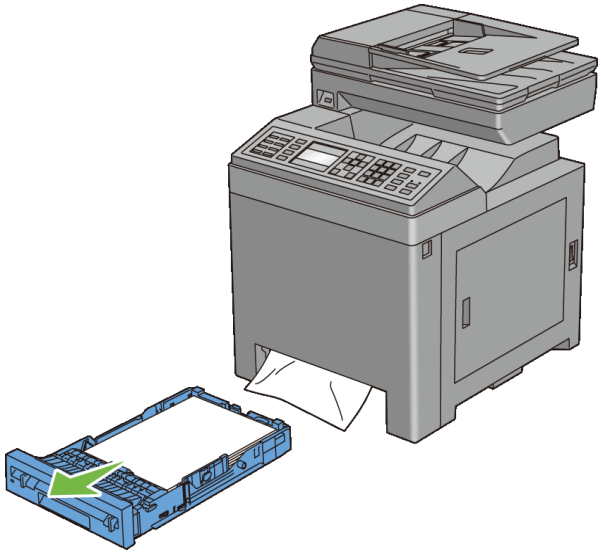
NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Pull the jammed paper out of the single sheet feeder. If no jammed paper can be found or you are unable to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the printer.

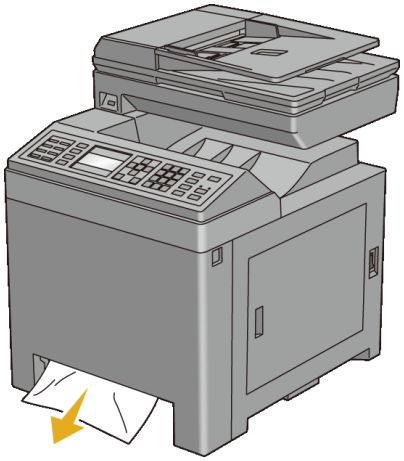
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



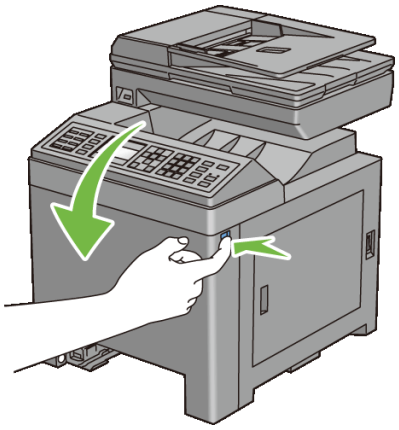
2 Remove the standard 250-sheet tray from the printer, and then pull out the jammed paper remaining inside the printer. If no jammed paper can be found or you are unable to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the printer.



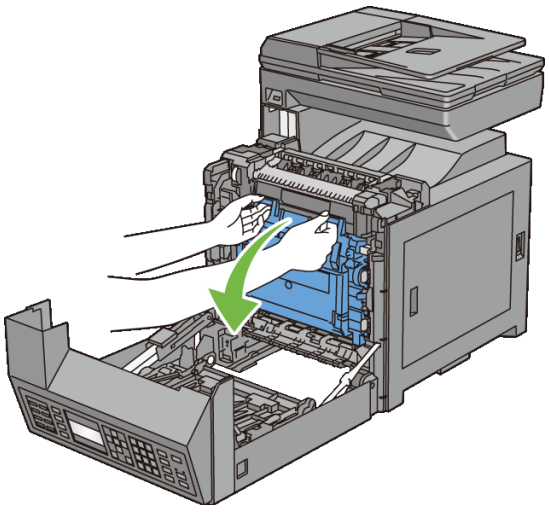
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



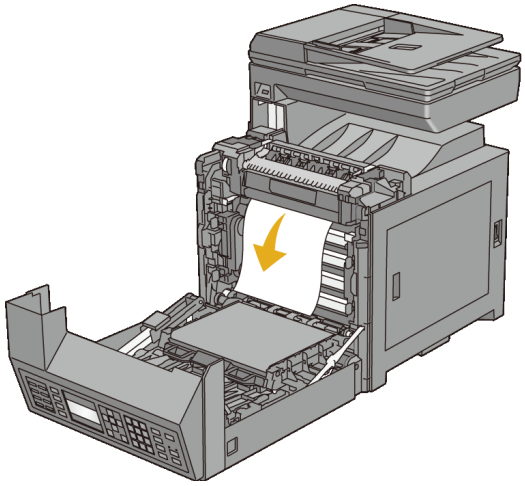
3 Push the side button to open the front cover.



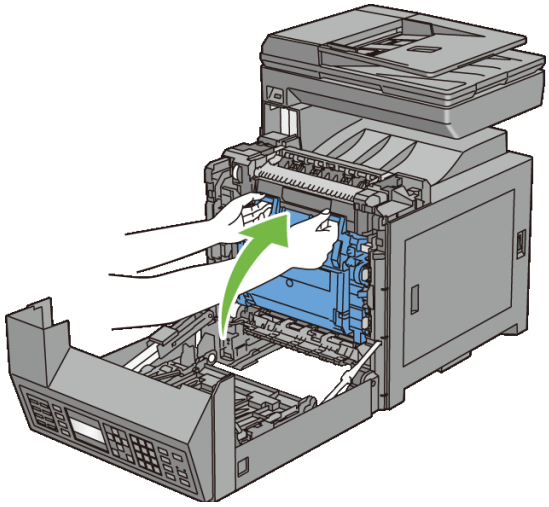
4 Open the belt unit until it stops and remove the jammed paper. Confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the printer.



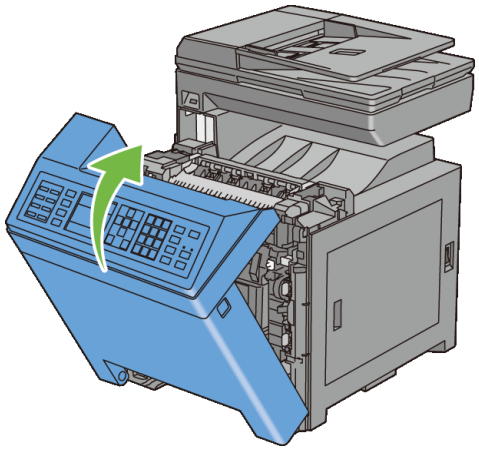
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5 Close the belt unit, and push at the top of the unit until it clicks.

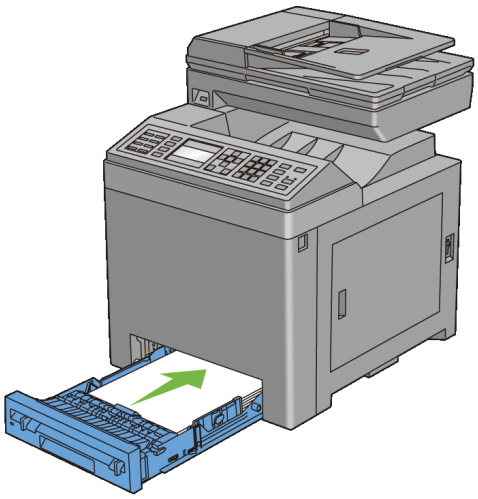


6 Close the front cover.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



NOTICE: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

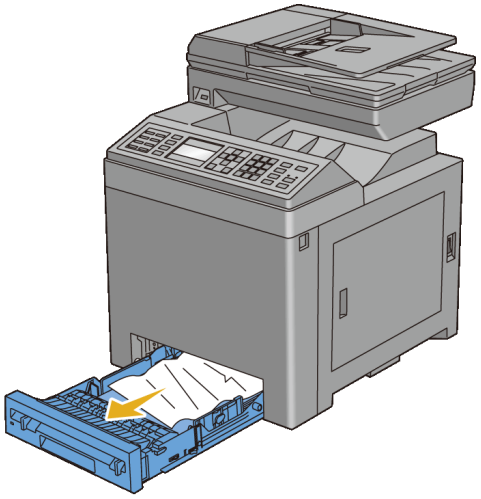
Clearing Paper Jams From the Standard 250-Sheet Tray

NOTICE: Protect the drums of the Print Head Device (PHD) against bright light. If the front cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

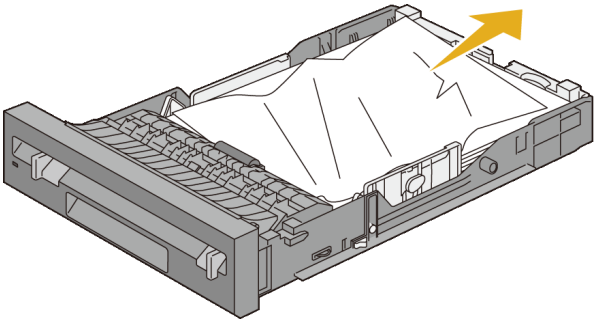
NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Pull the standard 250-sheet tray out of the printer carefully. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the printer.

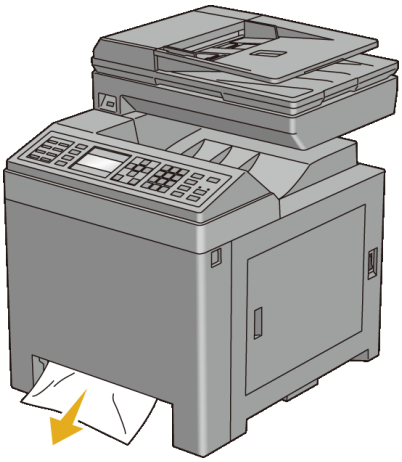
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2 Remove all the jammed and/or creased paper from the tray.

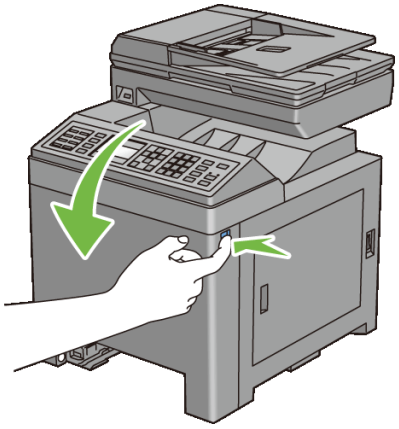


3 Pull the jammed paper out carefully to avoid tearing it. If you are still unable to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the printer.

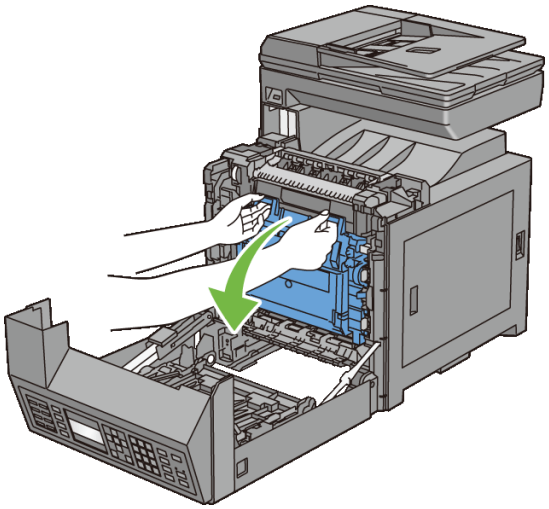


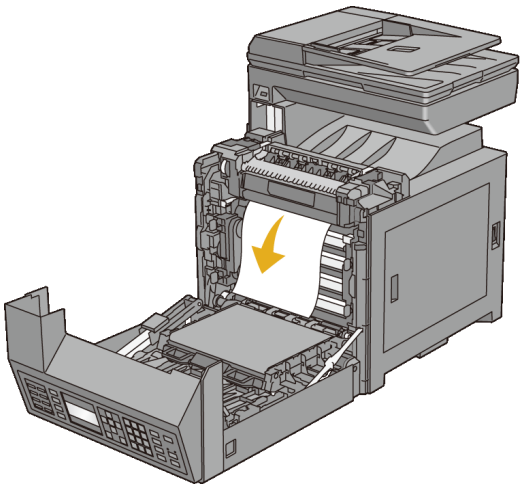
4 Push the side button to open the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



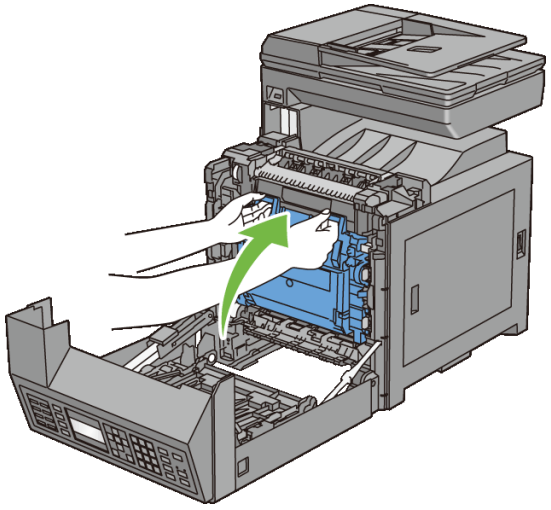
5 Open the belt unit until it stops and remove the jammed paper. Confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the printer.



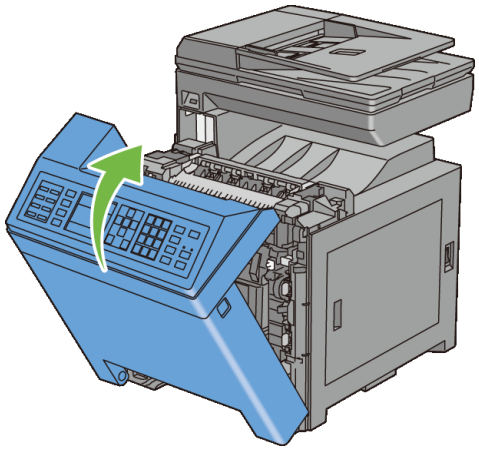


6 Close the belt unit, and push at the top of the unit until it clicks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

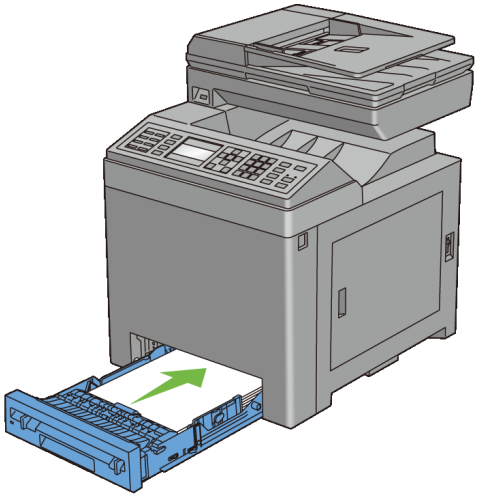


7 Close the front cover.



8 Insert the standard 250-sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTICE: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

Clearing Paper Jams From the Fuser

NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the belt unit may reduce print quality.

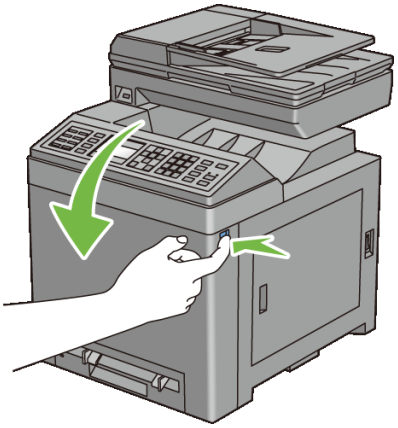
NOTICE: Protect the drums of the Print Head Device (PHD) against bright light. If the front cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

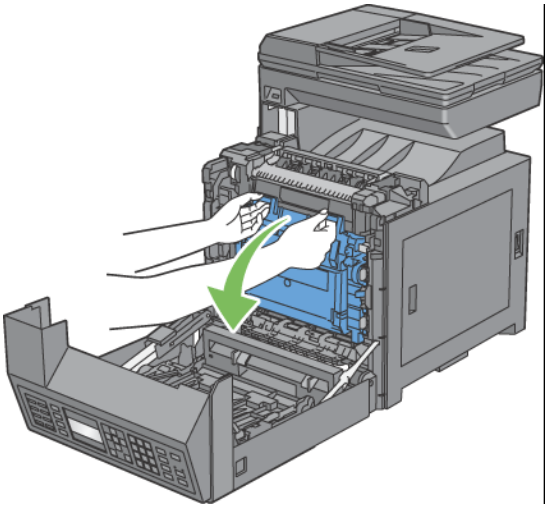
1 Turn off the printer and wait for 30 minutes.

2 Push the side button to open the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

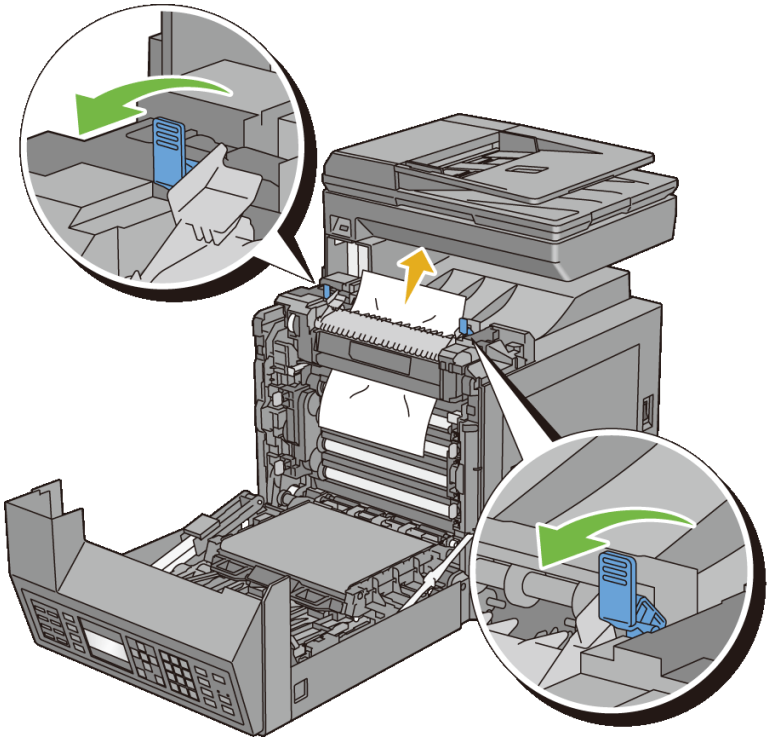


3 Open the belt unit.



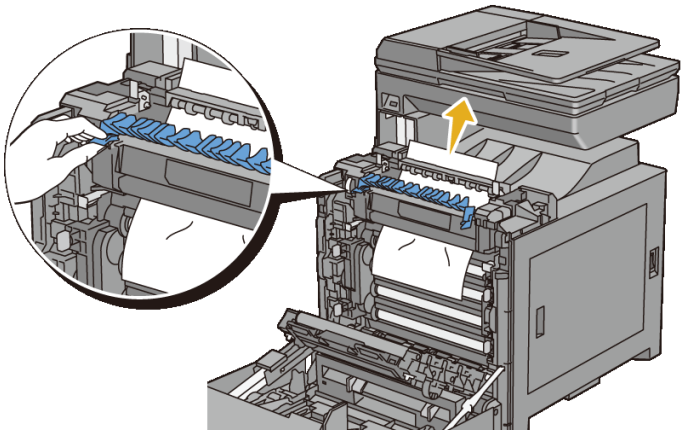
4 Lift the levers at both ends of the fuser, and remove the jammed paper. If you are still unable to remove the paper, go to the next step.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



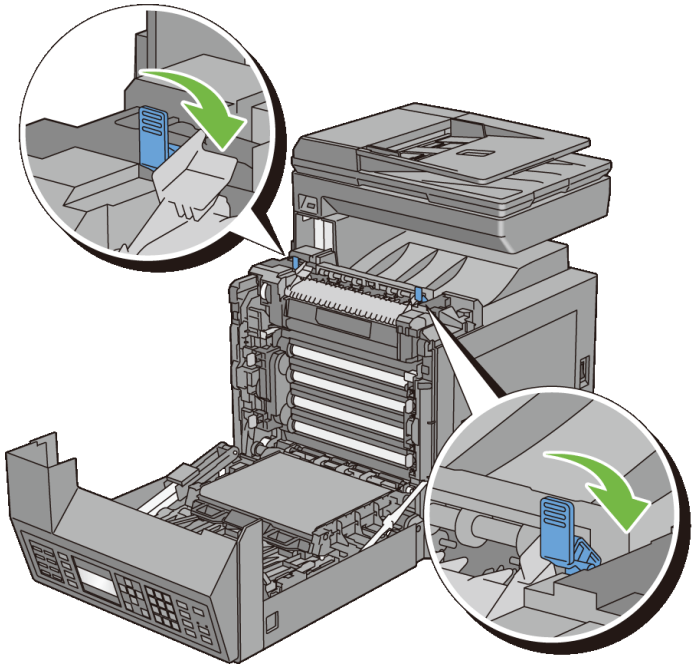
CAUTION: The fuser is hot. Do not touch it, doing so may cause burns.

5 Open the cover of the fuser and remove the jammed paper.

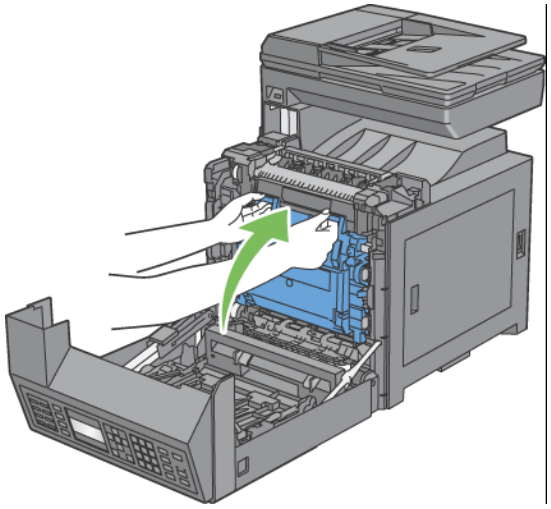


6 Close the cover of the fuser and press down the levers at both ends of the fuser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

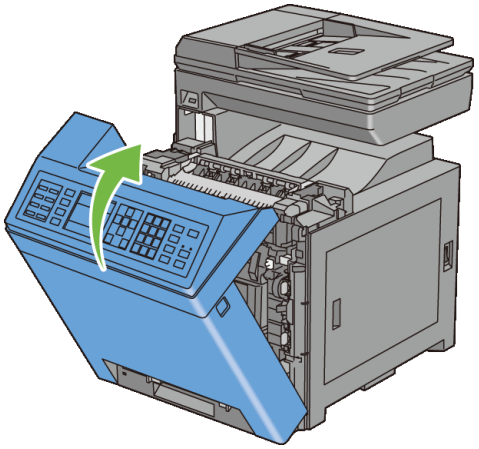


7 Confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the printer, and then close the belt unit.



8 Close the front cover.

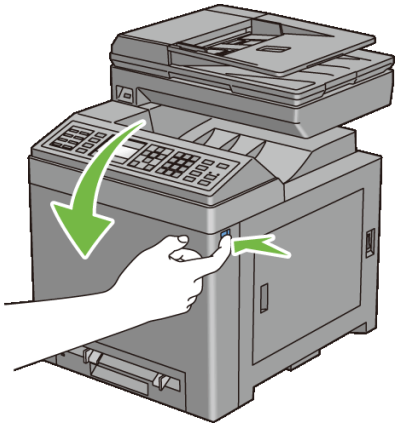
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Clearing Paper Jams From the Duplexer

NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

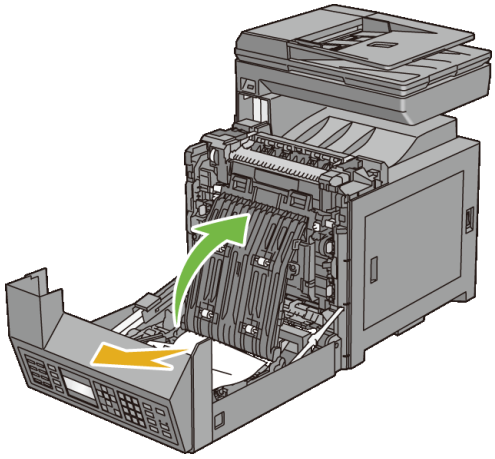
1 Push the side button to open the front cover.



2 Open the cover of the duplexer.

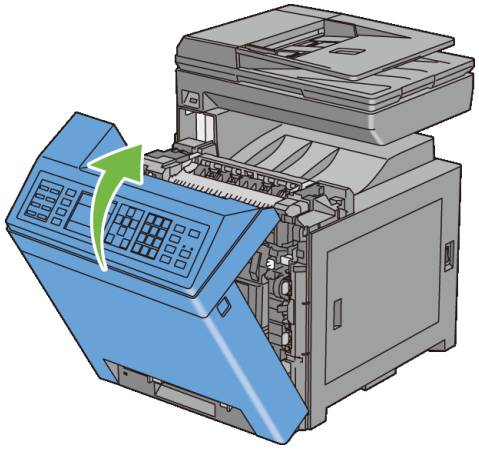
3 Remove the jammed paper from the duplexer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4 Close the cover of the duplexer.

5 Close the front cover.



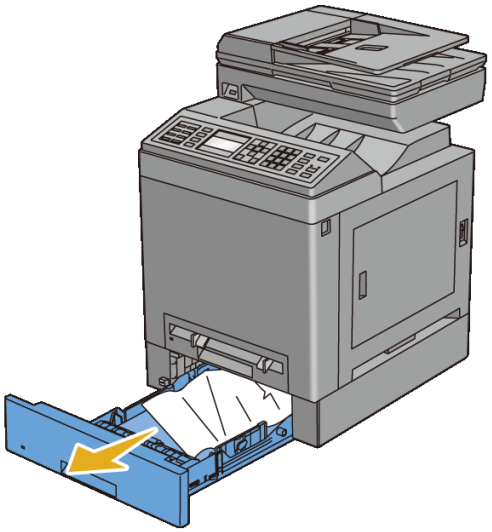
Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder

NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

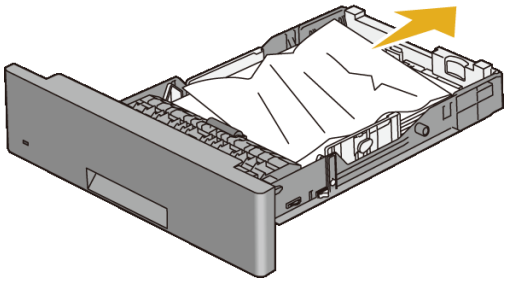
1 Pull the optional 250-sheet feeder out of the printer carefully. Hold the feeder with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Paper in the optional 250-sheet feeder feeds to the printer from the front of the standard 250-sheet tray, therefore paper jammed in the standard 250-sheet tray can block the optional 250-sheet feeder in the printer, preventing you from opening it. Look for the jammed paper sequentially, starting with the optional 250-sheet feeder.

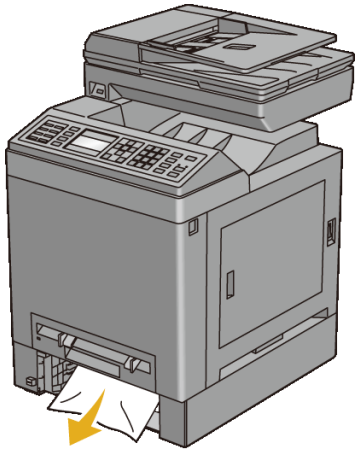


2 Remove all jammed and/or creased paper from the feeder.

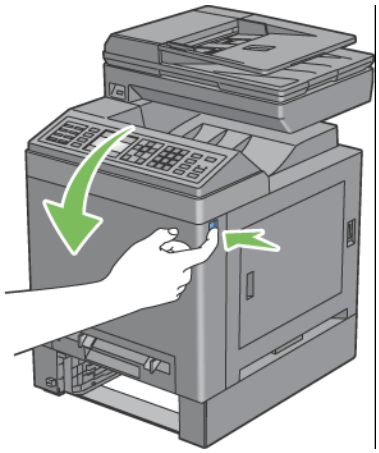


3 Pull the jammed paper out carefully to avoid tearing it. If you are still unable to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the printer.

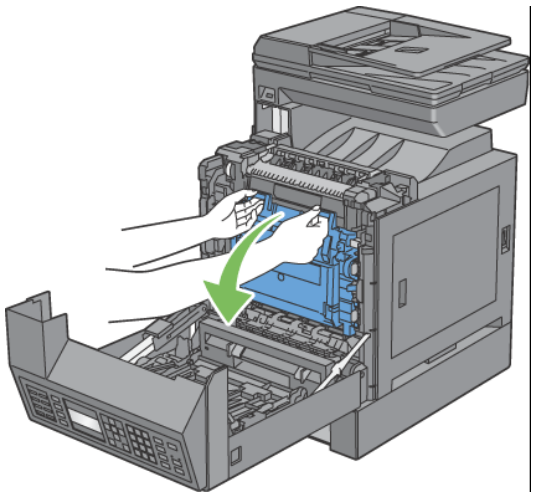
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



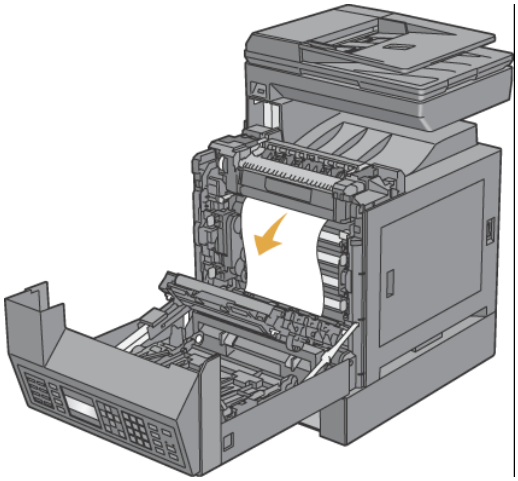
4 Push the side button to open the front cover.



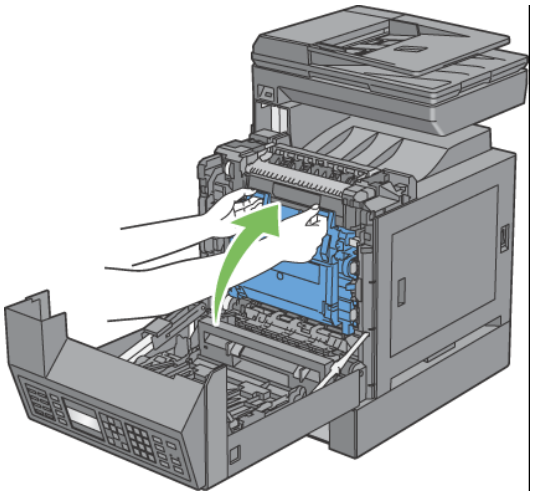
5 Open the belt unit until it stops and remove the jammed paper. Confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the printer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

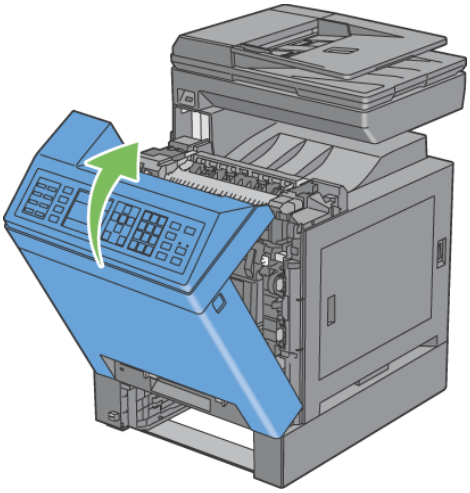


6 Close the belt unit, and push at the top of the unit until it clicks.



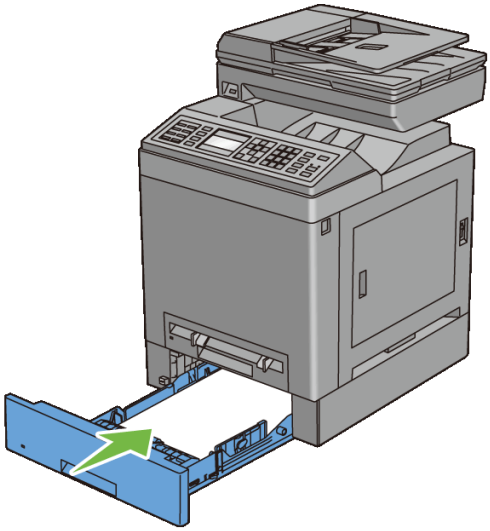
7 Close the front cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTE: If the paper jam message is not cleared after closing the front cover, pull out the standard 250-sheet tray and check if there is a jammed paper in the opening of the tray.

8 Insert the optional 250-sheet feeder into the printer, and push until it stops.



NOTICE: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Troubleshooting

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

31

Troubleshooting Guide

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easily resolved. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

The power cable is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.

- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet are working.
- Optional memory is properly installed.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
After the printer is turned on, the display on the operator panel is blank, keeps showing **Please wait...**, or the back light is not lit.	• Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and turn on the printer. • Self Test Message appears on the operator panel. When the test is completed, `Ready` is displayed.
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the printer driver, or the printer utilities are overriding the settings made on the operator panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing Problems

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that the top menu appears on the operator panel before you send a job to print. Press the (**Menu**) button to return to the top menu.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded in the printer. Press the (**Menu**) button to return to the top menu.
	Verify that the printer is using the correct page description language (PDL).
	Verify that you are using the correct printer driver.
	Ensure that the correct USB or Ethernet cable is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the printer's interface from the `Admin Menu`. Determine the host interface you are using. Print a panel settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the standard 250-sheet tray or single sheet feeder.	Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. See "Supported Paper Types" for more information.
	Fan the print media before loading it in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Ensure that the width and length guides of the print media sources are adjusted correctly.
	Ensure that the standard 250-sheet tray is securely inserted.
	Do not overload the tray.
	Do not force print media into the single sheet feeder when you load it; otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Face the recommended print side up or down appropriately for the type of print media you are using. See "Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" for more information.
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix reams of print media.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load print media only when the tray is empty.
	Wipe the retard rollers in the standard 250-sheet tray or single sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water.
The envelope is creased after printed.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray or single sheet feeder as instructed in "Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" or "Loading an Envelope in the SSF."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Action
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for **Time-Out** on the operator panel, the Tool Box, or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Print media does not stack neatly in the output bin.	Turn the print media stack over in the tray.
Cannot perform manual duplex printing.	Select **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge** from the **Duplex** menu on the **Paper/Output** tab in the printer driver.
Cannot print from the standard 250-sheet tray because the print media in the tray is curled.	Load the print media into the single sheet feeder.

Print Quality Problems

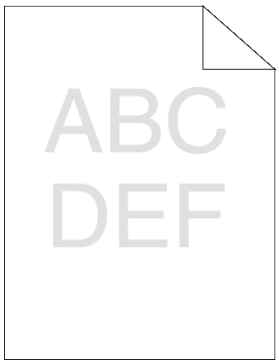
NOTE: Some of the following procedures that use the Tool Box can also be performed using the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. For information on how to use the operator panel and Dell Configuration Web Tool, see "Understanding the Tool Box Menus" and "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- The output is too light
- Toner smears or print comes off
- Random spots/Blurred images
- The entire output is blank
- Streaks appear on the output
- Part or the entire output is black
- Pitched color dots
- Vertical blanks
- Ghosting
- Light-induced fatigue
- Fog
- Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)
- Jagged characters
- Banding

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Auger mark
- Wrinkled/Stained paper
- Damage on the leading edge of paper

The output is too light



Action		Yes	No
1	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge. a Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor. b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, disable the **Non-Dell Toner** option. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Non-Dell Toner** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. b Ensure that the **On** check box is not selected. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Disable the **Toner Saving Mode** in the printer driver. a On the **Advanced** tab, ensure that the **Toner Saving Mode** check box is not selected. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
4	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick. a On the **Paper/Output** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.
6	Ensure that the eight yellow ribbons are correctly removed from the Print Head Device (PHD) unit. See "Removing the Print Head Device (PHD) Ribbons" and "Installing a PHD Unit." If not, remove the ribbons. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 7.
7	Ensure that the developer motor functions properly. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Machine Check** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Select **Main Motor Operation Check** from the drop-down list box and click the **Start** button. c Click the **Play of Sound** button to check the motor sound. Does the motor function properly?	Go to action 8.	Contact Dell.

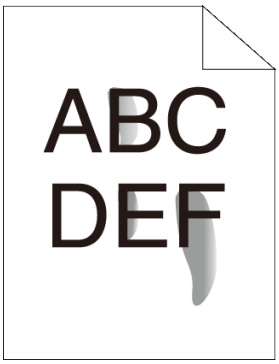
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
8	Ensure that the dispense motor for each toner cartridge functions properly. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Machine Check** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Select **Dispense Motor Check (Yellow)**, **Dispense Motor Check (Magenta)**, **Dispense Motor Check (Cyan)**, or **Dispense Motor Check (Black)** from the drop-down list box, and click the **Start** button. c Click the **Play of Sound** button to check the motor sound. d Repeat steps b and c to perform Dispense Motor Check for the rest of the toner cartridges. NOTE: You can perform Dispense Motor Check for CMYK in any order you desire. Does the dispense motor function properly?	Go to action 9.	Contact Dell.
9	If printing many low density images, execute the Toner Refresh Mode. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Refresh Mode** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Yellow** button under **Toner Refresh Mode**. c Repeat step b for **Magenta**, **Cyan**, and **Black** buttons. CAUTION: Using the Refresh Mode consumes extra toner. d After you complete the **Toner Refresh Mode**, select **Chart Print** from the list on the **Diagnosis** tab. e Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 10.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action	Yes	No
10 Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Toner smears or print comes off

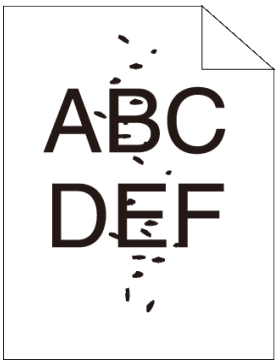


Action	Yes	No
1 The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick. a On the **Paper/Output** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
3	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, test print your document again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Random spots/Blurred images

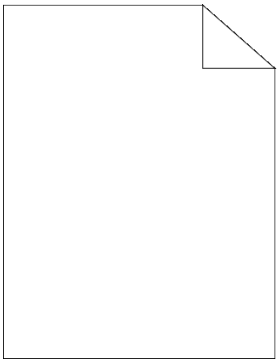


Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Ensure that the PHD unit is installed correctly. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action	Yes	No
3 Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

The entire output is blank



Action	Yes	No
1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge. a Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor. b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, disable the **Non-Dell Toner** option. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Non-Dell Toner** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. b Ensure that the **On** check box is not selected. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

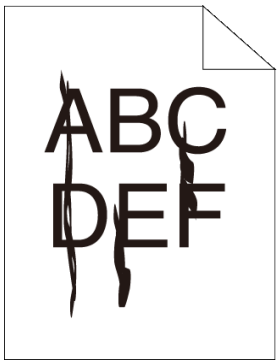
Action		Yes	No
3	Disable the **Toner Saving Mode** in the printer driver. a On the **Advanced** tab, ensure that the **Toner Saving Mode** check box is not selected. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick. a On the **Paper/Output** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.
6	Ensure that eight yellow ribbons are correctly removed from the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." If not, remove the ribbons. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 7.
7	Ensure that the developer motor functions properly. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Machine Check** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Select **Main Motor Operation Check** from the drop-down list box and click the **Start** button. c Click the **Play of Sound** button to check the motor sound. Does the motor function properly?	Go to action 8.	Contact Dell.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
8	Ensure that the dispense motor for each toner cartridge functions properly. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Machine Check** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Select **Dispense Motor Check (Yellow)**, **Dispense Motor Check (Magenta)**, **Dispense Motor Check (Cyan)**, or **Dispense Motor Check (Black)** from the drop-down list box, and click the **Start** button. c Click the **Play of Sound** button to check the motor sound. d Repeat steps b and c to perform Dispense Motor Check for the rest of the toner cartridges. NOTE: You can perform Dispense Motor Check for CMYK in any order you desire. Does the dispense motor function properly?	Go to action 9.	Contact Dell.
9	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Streaks appear on the output

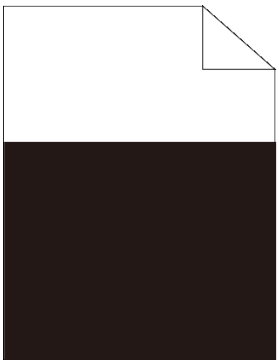
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Action		Yes	No
1	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge. a Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor. b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, disable the **Non-Dell Toner** option. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Non-Dell Toner** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. b Ensure that the **On** check box is not selected. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Part or the entire output is black

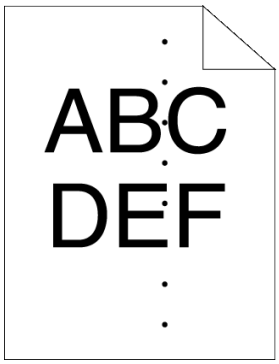
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure **Output Color** is set to **Color (Auto)** in the printer driver. a On the **Graphics** tab, ensure that the **Output Color** is set to **Color (Auto)**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Pitched color dots

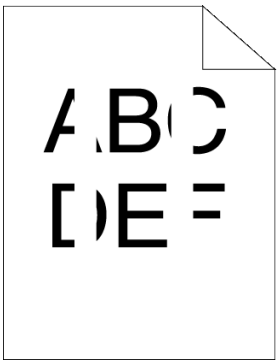
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Action	Yes	No
1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. c Compare the pitch of the color spots on your output with that on the Pitch Configuration Chart, and locate the cause of the problem. Is the cause of the problem located?	Proceed to the action corresponding to the location of the problem: • PHD unit - 2 • Fuser - Contact Dell and replace the fuser. • Main unit of the printer - Contact Dell.	Contact Dell.
2 Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Vertical blanks

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure the light path is not covered. a Remove the PHD unit, and keep it in the dark place. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit." b Check the light path, and then remove the shielding. c Re-install the PHD unit. See "Installing a PHD Unit." d Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. e Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

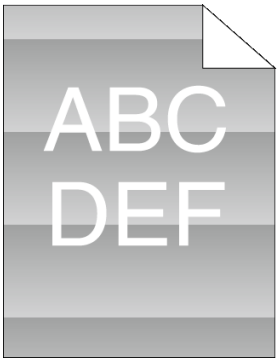
Ghosting

Action		Yes	No
1	Locate the cause of the problem using the Ghost Configuration Chart. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. Is the type of the problem identified?	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of ghosting. Positive ghost - 2a Negative ghost - 2b	Contact Dell.
2a	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
2b	If you are using non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	Go to action 3.	Go to action 2a.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
3	Adjust the transfer bias. a On the operator panel, press the (**Menu**) button and select `System Setup`→ `Admin Menu`→ `Maintenance`→ `Adjust BTR`. b Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. c Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. d Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Light-induced fatigue

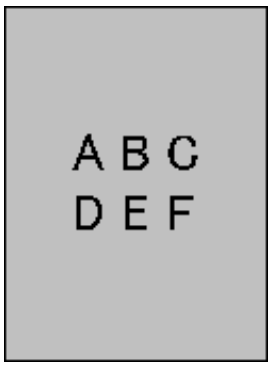


Action		Yes	No
1	Check the light fatigue pattern using the Pitch Configuration Chart. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does the pattern on the output match with that on the Pitch Configuration Chart?	Go to action 2.	Contact Dell.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
2	Execute the PHD Refresh Mode. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Refresh Mode** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b After you start the **Drum Refresh Mode**, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Fog

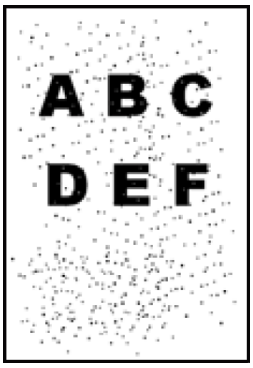


Action		Yes	No
1	Execute the PHD Refresh Mode. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Refresh Mode** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b After you start the **Drum Refresh Mode**, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action	Yes	No
2 Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **4 Colors Configuration Chart** button. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

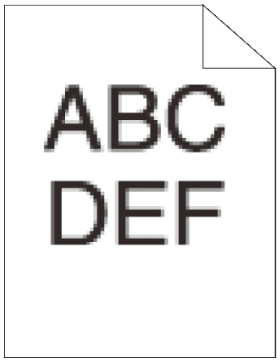
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)



Action	Yes	No
1 If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Adjust Altitude** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. b Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

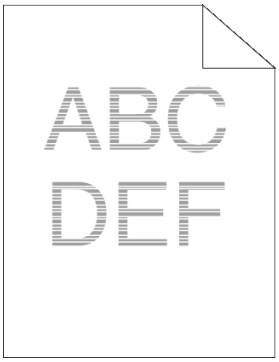
Jagged characters



Action		Yes	No
1	Set **Screen** to **Fineness** in the printer driver. a On the **Advanced** tab, set **Screen** under **Items:** to **Fineness**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Set **Print Mode** to **High Quality** in the printer driver. a On the **Graphics** tab, select **High Quality** from **Print Mode**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Enable **Bitmap Smoothing** in the printer driver. a On the **Advanced** tab, set **Bitmap Smoothing** under **Items:** to **On**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	Enable **Bitmap Text Smoothing** in the printer driver. a On the **Advanced** tab, set **Bitmap Text Smoothing** under **Items:** to **On**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	If using a downloaded font, ensure that the font is recommended for the printer, operating system, and the application being used. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

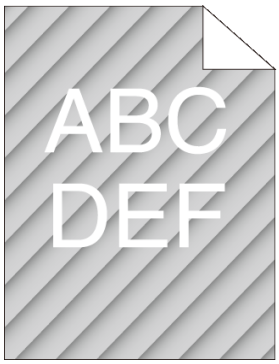
Banding



Action	Yes	No
1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Is the cause of the problem located?	Proceed to the action corresponding to the location of the problem: • PHD unit - 2 • Fuser - Contact Dell and replace the fuser. • Main unit of the printer - Contact Dell.	Contact Dell.
2 Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b After you replace the PHD unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. c Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Auger mark

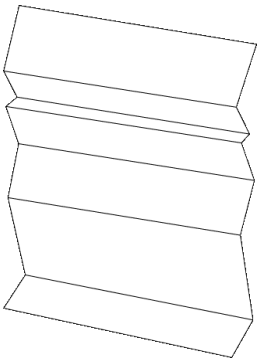
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Action		Yes	No
1	Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does the output match with the pattern for auger mark?	Go to action 2.	Contact Dell.
2	Execute the **Clean Developer**. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Clean Developer** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Start** button. c After you execute the **Clean Developer**, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. d Click the **Pitch Configuration Chart** button. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Wrinkled/Stained paper

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

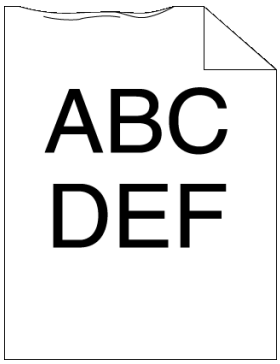


Action		Yes	No
1	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	If printing on an envelope, go to action 2a. If printing on print media other than envelopes, go to action 2b.
2a	Check the wrinkle. Is the wrinkle within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope?	This type of wrinkle is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.	If the envelope is 220 mm or longer (C5 or Envelope #10), go to action 3a. If the envelope is shorter than 220 mm (Monarch or DL), go to action 3a or 3b.
2b	Execute the **Paper Wrinkle Check Mode**. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Paper Wrinkle Check Mode** on the **Diagnosis** tab. b Click the **Start** button. Is the paper wrinkled?	Contact Dell.	Contact Dell to replace fuser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
3a	Load the envelopes in the standard 250-sheet tray in the short edge feed orientation with the flap closed and print side up. For details, see "Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
3b	Load the envelopes in the standard 250-sheet tray in the long edge feed orientation with the flap open and print side up. For details, see "Monarch or DL." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Damage on the leading edge of paper



Action		Yes	No
1	When you use the SSF, reverse the paper and then try again. When you use any of the trays, change the paper and then try again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	(SSF) Go to action 2. (trays) Contact Dell.
2	Change the paper with another one and then try again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Use any of other tray in place of the SSF. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

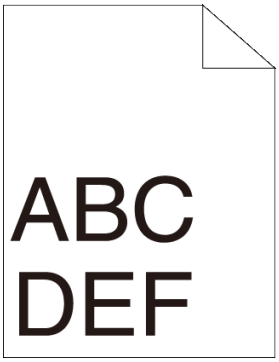
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jam/Alignment Problems

NOTE: Some of the following procedures that use the Tool Box can also be performed using the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. For information on how to use the operator panel and Dell Configuration Web Tool, see "Understanding the Tool Box Menus" and "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- The top and side margins are incorrect
- Color registration is out of alignment
- Images are skewed
- Standard 250-Sheet Tray Misfeed Jam
- SSF Misfeed Jam
- Optional 250-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam
- Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)
- Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)
- Standard 250-Sheet Tray/Optional 250-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam
- SSF Multi-feed Jam

The top and side margins are incorrect



Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Color registration is out of alignment

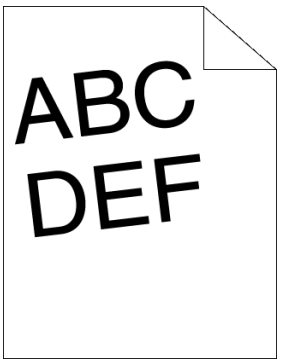
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
1	Execute auto color registration adjustment. a On the operator panel, press the ☰ (**Menu**) button and select `System Setup`→ `Admin Menu`→`Maintenance`→`Color Reg Adjustment`→`Auto Correct`→ `Yes`. OR a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Color Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. b Click the **Start** button under **Auto Correct**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Do you have a spare PHD unit?	Go to action 3a.	Go to action 3b.
3a	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. a Replace the PHD unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit" and "Installing a PHD Unit." b Launch the Tool Box, and click **Color Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. c Click the Start button under **Print Color Regi Chart**. The Color Regi Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action	Yes	No
3b Print the Color Regi Configuration Chart and manually correct the color registration. a Launch the Tool Box, and click **Color Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. b Click the **Start** button under **Print Color Regi Chart**. The Color Regi Configuration Chart is printed. c Identify the offset values from the chart and enter them in **Color Registration Adjustment (Process)** and **Color Registration Adjustment (Left)**. See "Adjusting Color Registration" for details. d Click the **Apply New Settings** button. e Click the **Start** button under **Print Color Regi Chart** to print the Color Regi Configuration Chart again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Images are skewed



Action	Yes	No
1 Adjust the paper guides properly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Standard 250-Sheet Tray Misfeed Jam

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the standard 250-sheet tray is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: • Thick - 2a • Thin - 2b • Coated - 2c • Envelope - 2d If performing manual duplex printing, go to action 2e. If using paper other than the above or if not performing manual duplex printing, go to action 2f.
2a	Use thick paper that is 216 g/m^2 or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b	Use thin paper that is 60 g/m^2 or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2c	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d	Ensure that the envelope is properly loaded in the Standard 250-sheet tray as instructed in "Loading Envelopes in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3c.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
2e	Ensure that the print media is not curled. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2f	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3d.	Go to action 3a.
3a	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b	Wipe the retard roller in the standard 250-sheet tray with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
3c	If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
3d	Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
4a	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
4b	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

SSF Misfeed Jam

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the SSF is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: • Thick - 2a • Thin - 2b • Coated - 2c • Envelope - 2d If performing manual duplex printing, go to action 2e. If using paper other than the above or if not performing manual duplex printing, go to action 2f.
2a	Use thick paper that is 216 g/m^2 or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b	Use thin paper that is 60 g/m^2 or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2c	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d	Ensure that the envelope is properly loaded in the SSF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the SSF." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3c.
2e	Ensure that the print media is not curled. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
2f	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3d.	Go to action 3a.
3a	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b	Wipe the retard roller in the SSF tray with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
3c	If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
3d	Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
4a	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
4b	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Optional 250-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the optional 250-sheet feeder is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Ensure the right hand cover is closed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: Thick - 3a Thin - 3b Manual Dup - 3c Others - 3d

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
3a	Use thick paper that is 105 g/m^2 or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
3b	Use thin paper that is 60 g/m^2 or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
3c	Ensure that the print media is not curled. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
3d	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 4c.	Go to action 5.
4a	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
4b	Wipe the retard roller in the optional 250-sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
4c	Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
5	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.

Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the PHD unit is installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. See "Replacing the Print Head Device (PHD) Unit." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure the fuser is installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Standard 250-Sheet Tray/Optional 250-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the tray is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	If using coated paper, go to action 2. If using other type of print media, go to action 3.
2	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
3	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Wipe the retard roller in the tray where the multi-feed occurred with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

SSF Multi-feed Jam

1	Ensure the media type you are using. If using coated paper, go to action 2. If using other type of print media, go to action 3.	-	-
2	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
3	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Wipe the retard roller in the tray where the multi-feed occurred with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Noise

Action		Yes	No
1	To specify the cause of the noise, perform the Auto Registration Adjustment. Does this solve your problem?	Go to action 2.	Go to action 3.
2	Replace the PHD unit if you have a spare unit. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
3	Replace the toner cartridge (K). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (K) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 4.
4	Replace the toner cartridge (Y). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (Y) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 5.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5	Replace the toner cartridge (M). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (M) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 6.
6	Replace the toner cartridge (C). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (C) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Contact Dell.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
	Ensure that the release lever is properly positioned.

Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.
	Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line."
	Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
	Diagnose the FAX connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly.
	Print a Phone Book list.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin.
	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	The `FAX` mode should be selected.
	Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.
	Check to see if the display shows `Memory Full`.
	If the time interval specified for the following features is too long, change the time interval shorter such as 30 seconds. • Auto Rec Fax • Auto Rec TEL/FAX • Auto Rec Ans/FAX
	Diagnose the FAX connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."
The printer does not send faxes.	`Sending` should show up on the display.
	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
	Check the dialing type for Tone or Pulse.
	Ensure that the document is loaded in the ADF or on the document feeder glass.
	Diagnose the FAX connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor quality.	Check your printer by making a copy.
	The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
	A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Set the fax modem speed to a slower speed.
	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your scan glass for marks and clean it. See "Cleaning the Scanner."
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the display shows a `Memory Full` message, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. See "Print Media Guidelines."
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Ensure that the country code is set correctly. Press the (**Menu**) button and select `System Setup`→ `Admin Menu`→ `Fax Settings`→ `Country`.
	Check the dialing type for Tone or Pulse.
	Check that the cables are connected properly.
	If the telephone line cord is connected to the printer via any device such as an answering machine and a computer, remove the device and directly connect the telephone line cord to the printer.
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed. the (**Menu**) button and select `System Setup`→ `Admin Menu`→ `Fax Settings`→ `Modem Speed`.
The printer receive faxes, but it does not print.	Check the toner level.
	Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.
	Ensure that Sent Fax Fwd is set to off.
	Ensure that Junk Fax Setup is set to off.
	Ensure that Secure Receive Set is set to disabled.
	Execute Reset Defaults.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Ensure that you place the document to be scanned facing down from the document feeder glass, or facing up in the ADF.
	There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Prescan function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.
	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	Ensure that the USB or Ethernet cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.
	If using the network TWAIN (WIA) driver, check that the Ethernet cable is connected properly and the IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."
	Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.
	Ensure that the scanner sharing feature is disabled when you use Mac OS X before you scan documents via an ICA compatible application such as Image Capture. The printer does not support the scanner sharing feature of Mac OS X. Select a printer which is directly connected to the computer via USB or wired /wireless LAN and scan documents.
The printer scans very slowly.	Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the `Scan to E-mail` or `Scan to Network` feature.
	Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.
	Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).	Check whether the ADF roller assembly is installed properly.
	Ensure the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. See "Supported Paper Types" for more information.
	Check whether the document is properly loaded in the ADF.
	Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF.
	Ensure that the document is not curled.
	Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.
Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.	Clean the ADF glass.
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean the document glass.
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the ADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Message appears on your computer screen: • "Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want." • "Port is being used by another program." • "Port is Disabled." • "Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed, try again." • "Invalid handle." • "Scanning has failed."	There may be a copying or printing job in progress. When the current job is complete, try the job again. The selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again. The cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off. The scanner driver is not installed or an operating environment is not set up properly. Ensure that the port is properly connected and the power is turned on. Then restart your computer. Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the **Scan to E-mail** or **Scan to Network** feature.	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. **Scan to Network** Check the following settings under **Address Book→ Server Address:** • **Server Address** • **Share Name** • **Server Path** • **Login Name** • **Login Password** **Scan to E-mail** Check the following setting under **Address Book→ E-Mail Address:** • **Address**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cannot scan using WIA on a Windows Server 2003 computer.	Enable WIA on the computer. To enable WIA: 1 Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Services**. 2 Right-click **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**, and then click **Start**.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer. To install Desktop Experience: 1 Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**. 2 Under **Features Summary**, click **Add Features**. 3 Select the **Desktop Experience** check box, click **Next**, and then click **Install**. 4 Restart the computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problems With Installed Optional Accessories

If an option does not operate correctly following installation or stops working:

- Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. If this does not fix the problem, unplug the printer, and check the connection between the option and the printer.
- Print the system settings report to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, re-install it. See "Printing System Settings Report."
- Ensure the option is selected in the printer driver you are using.

The following table lists printer's option and corrective action for related problem. If the suggested corrective action does not correct the problem, call customer service.

Problem	Action
250-sheet feeder	• Ensure the 250-sheet feeder is correctly installed on the printer. Re-install the feeder. See "Removing the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" and "Installing the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder." • Ensure the print media is loaded correctly. See "Loading Print Media in the Standard 250-Sheet Tray and the Optional 250-Sheet Feeder" for more information.
Memory module	• Ensure the memory module is securely connected to the memory connector.
Wireless printer adapter	• Ensure the wireless printer adapter is securely inserted to the correct slot.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	Ensure that the power of your printer is on.
	Ensure that the scanner driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the scanner driver when the printer is connected using a USB cable.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	If using the network connection, check that IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."
	Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scanner driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from ScanButton Manager.	Install the scanner driver. If the scanner driver is installed, uninstall it and then re-install it again. After the installation of the scanner driver is completed, re-install the ScanButton Manager.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Action
Failed to scan your document on the printer via ScanButton Manager.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
	Network connection cannot be used. Connect with the USB cable.
	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** (**Programs and Features** in Windows Vista and Windows 7) on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to create an image file via ScanButton Manager.	Ensure there is sufficient space in your hard disk.
	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to initialize ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to execute ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.
An unexpected error occurred on ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.
"CTD Sensor Error Error 009-340 Code:xx Restart Printer", "Check CTD Unit 092-910 Clean CTD Sensor", or "Check CTD Unit 092-310" is displayed.	Clean the CTD sensor. See "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."
"No Documents" is displayed on the operator panel when you are selecting a file for Printing from USB Memory feature.	Confirm that there are files with the supported file formats (PDF, TIFF, or JPEG) in the USB memory.
	If the target file is in a deep hierarchy in the USB memory, move the file to the root directory on your computer.
	Shorten the target file name in the USB memory on your computer, and try printing again.
"Authentication error has occurred. The account is not registered. Please contact the system administrator. 016-757" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Contact your system administrator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Action
"Function unavailable. It is a function that cannot be used. Please contact the system administrator. 016-758" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Contact your system administrator.
"Printable page limit reached. Printable page limit reached, cannot print. Please contact the system administrator. 016-759" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Contact your system administrator.
"Multifunction printer error. Check the PHD unit and the Toner Cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. 093-919" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Replace the toner cartridge of the color displayed on the operator panel. Replace the PHD unit. Contact Customer Support.
"Multifunction printer error. Check the PHD unit and the Toner Cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. 093-920" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Replace the toner cartridge of the color displayed on the operator panel. Replace the PHD unit. Contact Customer Support.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Action
"Multifunction printer error. Check the PHD unit and the Toner Cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. 093-921" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Replace the toner cartridge of the color displayed on the operator panel. Replace the PHD unit. Contact Customer Support.
"Multifunction printer error. Check the PHD unit and the Toner Cartridge. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. 093-922" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Replace the toner cartridge of the color displayed on the operator panel. Replace the PHD unit. Contact Customer Support.
"An internal temperature of the printer became a high temperature. 042-700" is displayed on the Status Monitor.	Please wait for a while until falling in temperature.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message that appears.

You need to know the model type and service tag of your printer. See the label located inside the side door of your printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Appendix

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Appendix

Dell™ Technical Support Policy

Technician-assisted technical support requires the cooperation and participation of the customer in the troubleshooting process and provides for restoration of the operating system, software program and hardware drivers to the original default configuration as shipped from Dell, as well as the verification of appropriate functionality of the printer and all Dell-installed hardware. In addition to this technician assisted technical support, online technical support is available at Dell Support. Additional technical support options may be available for purchase.

Dell provides limited technical support for the printer and any Dell-installed software and peripherals. Support for third-party software and peripherals is provided by the original manufacturer, including those purchased and/or installed through Software & Peripherals (DellWare), ReadyWare, and Custom Factory Integration (CFI/DellPlus).

Online Services

You can learn about Dell products and services on the following websites:

www.dell.com

www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)

www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)

www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

www.dell.ca (Canada only)

You can access Dell Support through the following websites and e-mail addresses:

- Dell Support websites

  support.dell.com

  support.jp.dell.com (Japan only)

  support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Dell Support e-mail addresses

  mobile_support@us.dell.com

  support@us.dell.com

  la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

  apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

- Dell Marketing and Sales e-mail addresses

  apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

  ftp.dell.com

  Log in as user: `anonymous`, and use your e-mail address as your password.

Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Computer Corporation ("Dell") manufactures its hardware products from parts and components that are new or equivalent to new in accordance with industry-standard practices. For information about the Dell warranty for your printer, see **support.dell.com**.

Recycling Information

It is recommended that customers dispose of their used computer hardware, monitors, printers, and other peripherals in an environmentally sound manner. Potential methods include reuse of parts or whole products and recycling of products, components, and/or materials.

For specific information on Dell's worldwide recycling programs, see **www.dell.com/recyclingworldwide**.

Contacting Dell

You can access Dell Support at **support.dell.com**. Select your region on the WELCOME TO DELL SUPPORT page, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

You can contact Dell electronically using the following addresses:

- World Wide Web

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

www.dell.com

www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)

www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)

www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

www.dell.ca (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

  ftp.dell.com

  Log in as user: anonymous, and use your email address as your password.

- Electronic Support Service

  mobile_support@us.dell.com

  support@us.dell.com

  la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

  apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  support.jp.dell.com (Japan only)

  support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

- Electronic Quote Service

  apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Symbols

(All Clear) button, 286

(Back) button, 287

(Backspace) button, 286

(Cancel) button, 286

(Color Mode) button, 286

(Contacts) button, 286

(Copy) button, 285

(Fax) button, 285

(Menu) button, 287

(Redial / Pause) button, 286

(Scan) button, 287

(Set) button, 286

(Speed Dial) button, 286

(Start) button, 286

Numerics

1000BASE-T Full-Duplex, 223

100BASE-TX Full-Duplex, 223

100BASE-TX Half-Duplex, 223

10BASE-T Full-Duplex, 223

10BASE-T Half-Duplex, 223

2 Sided, 183, 186, 191, 203

2Sided, 429, 431, 453, 459

4 Colors Configuration Chart, 464

802.1x, 220, 243

A

A4, 270

A5, 270

About printer, 39

Access List, 244

Address Book, 164, 170, 194, 248

Address Book Editor, 560

Address Books, 561

ADF glass, 642

Ad-Hoc, 236

Adjust Altitude, 192, 214, 425, 442

Adjust BTR, 191, 210, 513

Adjust Fuser, 192, 210, 514

Adjusting color registration, 643

Adjusting the Language, 309

Admin Menu, 471

Administrator Account, 235

Alert Tone, 181, 196, 423, 436

Alignment Chart, 464

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All Tones, 181, 196
Altitude, 607
Answer Machine/Fax, 205
Appendix, 739
Apply New Settings, 172
Asset Tag Number, 162, 178
Assigning IP address, 103
Audio Tone, 435
Authenticate Error Trap, 234
Auto, 431
Auto Clear Alert, 436
Auto Clear Alert Tone, 181, 196, 423
Auto Correct, 211, 441
Auto Expo. Level, 428, 430, 451, 455
Auto Exposure, 185, 190, 202, 208, 428, 430, 451, 455, 540, 547
Auto Exposure Level, 185, 190, 202, 208
Auto IP, 487
Auto Log Print, 181, 196, 424, 437, 506
Auto Rec Ans/Fax, 431, 460, 491
Auto Rec Fax, 431, 460, 490
Auto Rec Fax/Tel, 431, 460
Auto Rec Tel/Fax, 491
Auto Receive Answer/Fax, 188, 205
Auto Receive Fax, 188, 205
Auto Receive Tel/Fax, 188, 205
Auto Reg Adjust, 515
Auto Registration Adjustment, 192, 211, 425, 441
Auto Reset, 180, 195, 422, 434
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), 40-41, 660
Avoiding jam, 291, 659

B

B&W / Color LED, 286
B5, 270
Banner Sheet, 437
Banner Sheet Insert Position, 182, 196, 424
Banner Sheet Specify Tray, 182, 196, 424
Base memory, 605
Base Tone, 181, 196, 423, 436
Basic Information, 222
Basic printer problem, 685
Belt unit, 41
Bitmapped font, 583
Black & White Button, 190, 208
Blue plug, 41, 95

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bonjour (mDNS), 219, 223
BOOTP, 487

C

C5, 270
Cable, 607
Canceling a print job, 292
Canceling print job
From your computer, 293
Carbonless copy paper, 263
CCP, 263
Certificate Details, 241-242
Change printer settings, 306
Changing the settings of menu item, 172
Clean Developer, 212, 467
Clear Storage, 213
Clearing jam, 659
From ADF, 661
From duplexer, 676
From fuser, 672
From optional 250-sheet feeder, 677
From SSF, 664
From standard 250-sheet tray, 668
Clock Settings, 192
Coated, 191-192, 210-211, 514-515
Coated Thick, 191-192, 210-211, 514-515
Collated, 183, 185, 201, 428, 449
Color, 185, 190-191, 201, 208, 427, 429, 431, 448, 454, 458
Color Balance, 428-429, 452
Color Button, 190, 208
Color Button Set, 454
Color Button Set (Black & White Button), 429
Color Button Set (Color Button), 430
Color Mode, 466
Color Mode Limitation, 247
Color Reg Adjust, 515
Color Regi Chart, 212
Color Registration Adjustments, 211-212
Color registration chart, 643
Color Saturation, 185, 202, 428, 451, 540
Color Test Page, 194, 427, 470
ColorCount (Limit), 247
ColorTrack Error Report, 193, 246, 424, 438
ColorTrack Mode, 193, 246
Community Name, 232-233
Completed Jobs, 163, 179
Confidential jobs, 531
Configure 802.1x, 244
configuring wireless adapter, 69

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Connecting local printer, 92
Connecting printer, 91
Connecting to the Network, 94
Connection specification, 91, 607
Connection type, 91, 607
Conserving supplies, 613
Contact Dell Support at, 165, 171
Contact Person, 169
Contacting service, 732
Contrast, 190, 208, 430, 455, 546
Control board, 41
Control board cover, 41
Control Panel, 435
Control Panel Tone, 195, 422
Copy Color Balance, 186, 202
Copy Completed, 435
Copy Completed Tone, 181, 423
Copy Defaults, 185, 427
Copy Printer Settings, 164, 170, 245
Copy Printer Settings Report, 245
Copy Settings, 186
Country, 189, 207, 433, 463, 499
Cover, 177
Covers, 191-192, 210-211, 514-515
Covers Thick, 191-192, 210-211, 514-515
Cumulative Color Page Count, 247
Cumulative Monochrome Page Count, 248
Custom Reduce/Enlarge, 202, 450
Custom Size - X, 182, 197
Custom Size - Y, 182, 197

D

Data LED, 285
Date & Time, 425
Date Format, 192, 425, 439
Default Color, 183, 198, 479
Default Print Paper Size, 181, 196, 424, 438
Default Setup, 249
Delayed Start, 187, 204, 430, 457, 549
Dell ColorTrack, 193, 246
Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, 304
Page display format, 168
Dell ScanCenter, 560
Dell Service Tag Number, 178
Dell Supplies Management System, 557
Dell support website, 33

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dell technical support policy, 739
Details, 177
Determining Values, 644
DHCP, 487
Dimensions, 605
DIMM Size, 605
Direct connection setup, 115
Direct Fax, 396
Disabling Panel Lock, 554
Discard Size, 189, 207, 432, 462, 498
Dispense Motor Check, 465
Display of EWS, 447
Display problem, 685
DL, 270
DNS, 217, 225
Document cover, 641
Document glass, 641
Document Size, 185, 190, 202, 208, 322, 428, 430, 450, 454, 545
Draft Mode, 183, 198, 479
Driver, 31
Drivers and utilities CD, 31
DRPD, 205
DRPD Pattern, 189, 206, 432, 461, 495
Drum Refresh, 212
Drum Refresh Configuration Chart, 464
Drum Refresh Mode, 467
Duplex Print, 189, 206, 432, 462, 497
Duplexer, 40, 660

E

ECM, 189, 207, 432, 462, 498
Edit Print User Registration, 246
E-Mail Address, 249-250
E-Mail Alert, 165, 171, 223, 229, 488
E-Mail Alert Settings, 221, 231
E-Mail Alert Setup, 161
E-mail Alert Setup Page, 220
Email From Field, 425, 438
E-Mail Group, 249, 251
E-Mail Server Settings, 221, 229
Emulations, 606
Encryption, 237
End Time, 201
Entering Values, 646
Envelope, 191-192, 210-211, 267, 514-515
Envelope #10, 270
Environment, 606

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

environment settings of your web browser, 165
Error History, 194, 427, 470
Error-Code, 590
Ethernet, 215, 223, 607
Ethernet port, 41, 92, 94
Event Panel, 169
EWS, 488
EWS Settings, 222
Executive, 270
Expiration Mode, 201
Expiration Time, 201
Express Service Service Code, 178

F

fast scan, 644
Fault Time-Out, 180, 195, 423, 436
Fault Tone, 181, 196, 423, 435
Fax Activity, 189, 194, 207, 433, 462, 499
Fax Broadcast, 189, 207, 433, 463, 500
Fax Cover Page, 189, 206, 432, 461, 495, 550
Fax Defaults, 187, 203, 430, 553
Fax Forward Number, 189, 206
Fax Fwd Number, 432, 462, 497
FAX Group, 249, 257-258
Fax Header, 188, 206, 432, 461, 494
Fax Header Name, 188, 206, 432, 461, 494
Fax Menu, 548
Fax Number, 188, 206, 432, 461, 494
Fax Pending, 194
Fax Protocol, 189, 207, 433, 463
Fax Settings, 188, 204
FAX Speed Dial, 249, 258
Fax to, 548
Fax Transmit, 189, 207, 433, 463
Feed Roll Operation Check, 465
File Format, 190, 208, 429, 454, 544
Finding Information, 31
Firmware Version, 178
Flip on Long Edge, 296
Flip on Short Edge, 297
Folio, 270
Font, 182, 197, 581
  PCL 5/PCL 6, 585
  Pitch, 582
  Point size, 582
  Style, 581
  Typefaces and fonts, 581
  Weight, 581
Font Pitch, 183, 197, 477

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Font Size, 183, 197, 476
Form Line, 183, 198, 477
Front cover, 40
FTP Client, 219, 235
Function Enabled, 199, 520
Function Enabled - Copy, 199
Function Enabled - Fax, 199
Function Enabled - Scan, 199
Fuser, 660
Fuser Motor Operation Check, 465

G

Gateway Address, 225, 427, 447, 487
Generate Self-Signed Certificate, 241
Generate Signed Certificate, 241
Get Environment Sensor Info, 467
Ghost Configuration Chart, 464
Group Dial, 472

H

Hex Dump, 183, 198, 478
Host I/F, 178-179
Host Name, 178-179, 231, 239
How to install option, 53
How to remove option, 649
How to replace retard roller, 627
How to set up, 33
How to use printer, 32
HTTP, 218, 227
HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication, 241

I

ID, 178-179
Identifying print media, 270
Identifying print paper, 270
Image Compression, 190, 208, 430, 456
Image Enhancement, 183, 198
Impression Number, 179
Infrastructure, 236
Init Print Meter, 518
Initialize NIC NVM and restart printer, 238
Initialize Print Meter, 443
Installing optional 250-sheet feeder, 59
Installing retard roller in tray, 629
Installing the optional accessories, 53
Installing toner cartridge, 50
Installing wireless adapter, 64

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interfaces, 606
Invalid Key, 435
Invalid Key Tone, 180, 195, 422
IP Address, 103, 162-163, 169, 216, 225, 234, 239, 243-244, 427, 446, 487
IP Address Mode, 427, 446
IP Filter, 220, 244
IP filter setup, 227
IPP, 218, 223, 226
IPsec, 242
IPSec Settings, 220, 243
IPv4, 234, 243
IPv6, 169, 217, 225, 234, 243

J

Job Completed, 435
Job Completed Tone, 181, 196, 423
Job History, 194, 427, 470
Job List, 163, 178
Job Name, 178-179
Job Status, 178
Job Submitted Time, 178-179
Job Time-Out, 180, 195, 424, 437
Job Type, 178-179
Junk Fax Setup, 188, 206, 432, 461, 493

L

Label, 191-192, 210-211, 268, 425, 440, 514-515
Landscape, 474
Layout, 183, 191, 431, 459, 553
LCD panel, 287
LDAP Server, 239-240
Left frame, 170
Legal, 270
Letter, 270
Letterhead Duplex Mode, 182, 197, 424, 438
Lighter/Darker, 185, 187, 190, 202, 204, 208, 428, 430, 451, 455, 457, 539, 546, 549
Line Monitor, 188, 205, 431, 460, 491
Line Termination, 183, 198, 479
Line Type, 188, 206, 431, 460, 492
Link Channel, 236
Link Quality, 236
LLTD, 219, 223
Loading an envelope in the SSF, 281
Loading letterhead, 278

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Loading paper, 109
Loading print media, 273
SSF, 280
standard 250-sheet tray and optional 250-sheet feeder, 273
Location, 169, 177
Login Attempts, 200
Login Error, 200
Low Toner Alert, 436
Low Toner Alert Msg, 182, 197, 424, 438
Low Toner Alert Tone, 181, 196, 423
LPD, 217, 223, 226, 488

M

MAC Address, 236
Machine Check, 465
Machine Digital Certification, 241
Machine Ready, 435
Machine Ready Tone, 181, 195, 423
Main Motor Operation Check, 465
Maintenance, 613
Manual Registration Adjustments, 441
Margin Left/Right, 186, 190, 203, 208, 429-430, 453, 456, 541, 547
Margin Middle, 186, 190, 203, 208, 429-430, 453, 456, 542, 547
Margin Top/Bottom, 186, 190, 203, 208, 429-430, 453, 455, 541, 547
Max E-Mail Size, 190, 208
Max Email Size, 430, 456
Maximum memory, 605
Memory, 605
Memory Capacity, 178
Memory connector, 605
Memory module, 649
Memory speed, 605
Menu item, 173
Menu Settings, 179
MIB compatibility, 606
mm/inch, 181, 196, 424, 438
Modem Speed, 189, 207, 432, 462, 498
Monarch, 270
MonoCount (Limit), 247
Monthly Settings, 201
MQ Chart, 464
Multiple Up, 614
Multiple-Up, 186, 203, 429, 453, 541

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

N

NCR, 263

Network, 94

Network connection setup, 118

Network Firmware Version, 178

Network TWAIN, 218, 223, 227

Network Type, 236

New Password, 199

No Account User Print, 193, 246

No carbon required, 263

No. of Sheets, 179

Non-Dell Toner, 192, 425, 443, 518

Numeric keypad, 286

O

OCR, 263

One Touch Dial button, 285

OnHook, 549

Online Help, 165, 171

Operation, 606

Operator panel, 41

Operator Panel Buttons, 285

Optical character recognition, 263

Optional 250-sheet feeder, 40, 660

Order Supplies at, 165, 171

Ordering supplies, 44, 614

Orientation, 182, 197, 474

Original Type, 202, 428, 450, 539

OS, 606

OS compatibility, 605

Other problems, 730

Out of Paper, 436

Out of Paper Alert Tone, 423

Out of Paper Tone, 181, 196

Output Color, 183

Output Result, 179

Output Size, 183

Output Tray, 177

Owner, 178-179

P

Page display format, 168

Page orientation, 266, 279

Panel, 487

Panel Language, 182, 197, 424, 439, 530

Panel Lock Set, 184, 199, 519

Panel Settings, 194, 426, 469

Panel Settings page, 194, 287

Paper, 261
- Characteristics, 261
- Curl, 261
- Fiber content, 262

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Grain direction, 262
Moisture content, 262
Smoothness, 262
Weight, 261
Paper Density, 191, 209, 425, 513
Paper jam location, 660
Paper Size, 182, 197, 466, 472
Paper Tray, 182
Paper Type, 271, 466
Paper Used, 246
Parts name, 39
Password, 227, 235, 238, 240, 244
PCL, 472
Font, 475
PCL 5/PCL 6, 585
PCL Fonts List, 194, 426, 469
PCL Macro List, 194, 427, 469
PCL printer driver, 115, 118
PCL Settings, 182, 197
PDF Fonts List, 194, 427
PDL, 606
Peer-to-Peer, 136
Phone Book, 249, 471
Phone connector, 41, 92, 95, 607
Pitch Configuration Chart, 464
Plain, 191-192, 210, 425, 440, 514-515
Plain Thick, 191-192, 210, 514-515
Play of Sound, 465
Point and Print, 133
Polling Receive, 550
Port Settings, 222
Port Status, 223
Port9100, 217, 223, 226, 488
Portrait, 474
Power connector, 41
Power On Wizard, 213
Power Saver Time, 501
Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep, 180, 195
Power Saver Time - Sleep, 180, 195
Power Saver Timer, 434
Power Saver Timer Deep Sleep, 422
Power Saver Timer Sleep, 422
Power Saver Wake Up, 422, 434
Power Saver Wake Up - OffHook Wake Up, 180, 195
Power supply, 605
Power switch, 40
Prefix Dial, 189, 206, 432, 462, 497
Prefix Dial Num, 432, 462, 498
Prefix Dial Number, 189, 206
Premier, 193
Print cartridge level, 176

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Print Color Regi Chart, 441
Print Drivers / Remote Client Account, 235
Print from USB, 199
Print from USB Defaults, 191, 431
Print ID, 182, 196, 424, 437, 507
Print media, 261, 614
Source, 266, 279
Print Meter, 194, 427
Print Mode, 183
Print quality guarantee, 606
Print Server Reports, 215
Print Server Settings, 164, 170, 215, 222, 447
Print Server Setup Page, 215
Print side, 266, 279
Print Text, 182, 196, 424, 437, 507
Print User Settings, 247
Print Volume, 164, 170, 245
Printer Bitmap, 169
Printer Driver, 147, 149
Printer Events, 177
Printer Information, 164, 171, 177
Printer Jobs, 163, 170, 178
Printer Maintenance, 209
Printer Page Count, 246
Printer paper, 261
Printer Revision Levels, 178
Printer Serial Number, 178
Printer Settings, 164, 179, 195
Printer settings utility, 559
Printer software, 557
Printer specification, 605
Printer Status, 163, 170, 176
Printer Status Window, 557
Printer Type, 177
Printing, 291
Printing on letterhead, 265
Printing problem, 686
Printing Speed, 177
Problems with Optional Accessories, 727
Processor Speed, 178
Product Information Guide, 32
Proof Print, 533
Protocol Monitor, 194, 427, 470

Q

Quantity, 183, 198, 478
Quick Launch Utility, 559
Quick Reference Guide, 32

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R

RAM Disk, 182, 196, 424, 437, 508

RARP, 487

Ready / Error LED, 285

Rear side, 466

Receive Mode, 188, 205, 431, 460, 490

Recommended paper, 262

Recurrence, 201

Recycled, 192, 210, 514-515

Red Hat, 147

Red Hat Enterprise Linux, 147, 605

Redial Attempts, 188, 206, 432, 461, 493

Redial Delay, 188, 206, 432, 461, 493

Reduce/Enlarge, 185, 201, 428, 449, 537

Re-enter Password, 199

Refresh, 172

REGI CLUTCH Operation Check, 465

Registration Adjustments, 441

Regular, 193

Relative humidity, 606

Remote Rcv Tone, 432, 461, 494

Remote Receive, 188, 206, 432, 461, 494

Remote Receive Tone, 188, 206

Removing a optional memory module, 649

Removing optional 250-sheet feeder, 652

Removing options, 649

Removing paper jam, 659
- From ADF, 661
- From duplexer, 676
- From fuser, 672
- From optional 250-sheet feeder, 677
- From single sheet feeder, 664
- From tray, 668

Removing retard roller in tray, 628

Removing toner cartridge, 616

Removing wireless adapter, 654

Replacing the retard roller, 627

Reports, 194

Resend Delay, 188, 206, 432, 461, 493

Reset Defaults, 213, 442

Reset Print Server, 238

Resetting Defaults, 308

Resident font, 585

Resident scalable fonts, 585

Resolution, 187, 190, 204, 208, 430, 454, 457, 544, 548

Restore Settings, 172

Result, 465

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Return policy, 740
Right frame, 171
Ring Tone Volume, 188, 205, 431, 460, 492
RSA BSAFE, 28

S

Safety information, 32
Scalable font, 583
Scan Defaults, 190, 429
Scan to Application, 543
Scan to E-mail, 542
Scan To Network, 429
Scan to Network, 190, 208, 235, 454, 543
Scan to USB Memory, 542
ScanButton Manager, 560
Search PhoneBook, 548
Secure Print, 530
Secure Receive, 521
Secure Receive Set, 200
Secure Settings, 184, 198
Security, 238
Security Settings, 237
Select Reorder URL, 193
Select Tray, 185, 191, 201, 427, 431, 448, 458, 534, 551
Selecting letterhead, 264
Selecting paper, 263
Selecting preprinted form, 264
Selecting pre-punched paper, 264
Sending print job, 292
Sent Fax Forward, 189, 206
Sent Fax Fwd, 432, 462
Server Address, 194, 249, 253
Server Address Book, 425, 438
Server Phone Book, 425, 438
Service code, 33
Service tag, 33
Set Available Time, 200
Set Date, 192, 425, 440
Set Password, 165, 171, 238
Set Time, 192, 425, 440
Shared printing, 131
Sharpness, 185, 190, 202, 208, 428, 430, 451, 455, 540, 546
Side button, 40
Single Sheet Feeder, 661
Single Sheet Feeder (SSF), 40
slow scan, 644-645
SMB, 219, 223
SMB Client, 220, 235
SNMP, 219, 223
SNMP Configuration, 232
SNMP UDP, 488

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Software update, 558

Speed Dial, 194

SSF Paper Size, 185, 191, 201, 317, 428, 431, 448, 458, 535

SSF Paper Type, 185, 191, 201, 318, 428, 431, 449, 459, 536

SSID, 236

SSL/TLS, 220, 241

Standard 250-sheet tray, 40, 661

Start, 465-466

Start Time, 200

Status Monitor Console, 557

Status Monitor Console for Linux, 571

Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh, 565

Status of printer supplies, 613

Status Window, 560

Storage, 607

Storage humidity range, 607

Stored Documents, 194, 427, 471

Storing consumables, 615

Storing print media, 269, 291, 614

Straightest lines, 644

Subnet Mask, 427, 446, 487

Substitute Tray, 182, 196, 424, 438, 508-509

Supported print paper, 270

SUSE, 605

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, 150

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11, 154

Symbol Set, 182, 197, 476, 586
For PCL 5/PCL 6, 586

System Settings, 180, 194-195, 222, 422, 426, 469

System Settings page, 194

System settings report, 56, 61, 67

T

TCP/IP, 224

TCP/IP Settings, 216, 224

Telephone, 205

Telephone/Fax, 205

Telnet, 219, 223, 227

Temperature, 606

TIFF File Format, 190, 208, 430, 456

Time Format, 192, 425, 439

Time Zone, 192, 425, 440

Time-Out, 226-227, 240, 503

Tone/Pulse, 188, 206, 431, 461, 492

Toner access cover, 40

Toner cartridge, 50

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Toner Refresh, 212
Toner Refresh Mode, 467
Tool Box, 560
Top frame, 168
Trap Notification, 234
Tray 1 Custom Size - X, 193, 259, 426, 445
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y, 193, 259, 426, 445
Tray 1 Display Popup, 259, 426, 445
Tray 1 Paper Size, 193, 259, 426, 444
Tray 1 Paper Type, 193, 259, 426, 444
Tray 2 Display Popup, 259, 426, 445
Tray 2 Paper Size, 259, 426, 445
Tray 2 Paper Type, 259, 426, 445
Tray Settings, 164, 171, 193, 259, 426, 526
Troubleshooting, 560, 685
Typeface, 581

U

Unacceptable paper, 263
UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS, 28
Update, 560
Update Address Book, 219, 223, 227
Upper Limit for Color Print, 247
Upper Limit for Monochrome Print, 248
USB, 607
USB Port, 182, 197
USB port, 41, 92-93
USB printing, 115
User Registration, 246
User setup disk creating tool, 558
Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, 163

V

Verifying IP settings, 106

W

Wall jack connector, 41, 92, 94, 607
Warranty, 740
Warranty information, 32
Web Link Customization, 193, 214
Web Services on Devices, 601
Weekly Settings, 201
WEP, 237

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

White sheet, 641
Width guide, 110, 275
WINS, 217, 226
Wired Network
Ethernet, 482
IP Filter, 489
Protocol, 487
Reset LAN, 489
TCP/IP, 486
Wireless Adapter, 64
Wireless adapter socket, 41
Wireless Settings, 216, 236
WPA-PSK, 237
WSD, 218, 223, 226, 601

X

XPS printer driver, 115, 120

Y

Yellow terminator, 96

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine